

293 k 20

*Tho: THE Austin de Baffa.*  
**BRITISH  
HISTORY,**

Translated into *ENGLISH*  
From the *LATIN* of

*Jeffrey of Monmouth.*

With a large Preface concerning the  
Authority of the History.

By **AARON THOMPSON**, *late of*  
*Queen's College, Oxon.*

*Datur hac venia antiquitati, ut miscendo  
humana divinis, primordia urbium au-  
guſtiora faciat. Liv.*

**L O N D O N :**

Printed for *J. Bowyer* at the *Rose* in *Ludgate-  
Street*, *H. Clements* at the *Half-Moon*, and  
*W. and J. Innys* at the *Princes-Arms* in  
*St. Paul's Church-Yard*. **MDCCLXVIII.**

THE HISTORY OF

THE





# THE PREFACE.



THE most ancient Historians, those especially that treat of the Original of any Nation, will always preserve their just Value among the Curious, however simple and void of Ornament their Relations of Matters may be. And though modern Writers may deliver the same Accounts, with greater Accuracy of Judgment, and such Politeness of Stile, as is more agreeable to the Taste of their own Times; yet in all Matters of Testimony, the Original and most ancient Historians will constantly be esteemed and referred to as most authentick. The most ancient Writer now extant of the Affairs of this Nation is undoubtedly *Cæsar*, who wanted no Qualifications that form a perfect Historian, and especially with Respect

to the Majesty, Politeness and Simplicity of his Style, is not inferior to any Author whatsoever, whether ancient or modern. But as he only relates one particular Transaction in the Course of our Affairs, *viz.* His attempt to reduce this Island under the Roman Power, and says nothing of any Occurrences here before his own Time, nor of the Original of our People, unless from such uncertain Reports and Conjectures as are not to be depended on, we must look elsewhere for Satisfaction in these Particulars, which indeed most of all excite our Curiosity.

II. The ancientest Book now extant, that pretends to give any regular and continued Account of these Matters, is the History before us; which though writ at a Time when polite Learning did but very little flourish, is notwithstanding entertaining enough, both for the Manner of relating Things, and the Importance of the Matters treated of. And yet for Reasons which I shall hereafter consider, very few *English* Historians of the last Century, which are now most esteemed and read, have given any Account of the Matters related in it. It is true that from the Time this Book was first published, which is near six hundred Years ago, till about the Beginning of the last Century, all or most of our Writers, not excepting *Polydore Virgil* himself a great Adversary to this History, who have

---

*The* P R E F A C E iii

---

have undertaken to trace our Affairs from the first peopling of this Island, have interwoven the Subject of this Book with what Collections they could make from other Authors, in Order to compleat their Histories. But these by Reason of their obsolete Stile, or too great Voluminousness, are now but little looked into by the Generality of Readers. And as for the last Century, no *English* Historian of any Note, (the *Welsh* I do not here consider,) has condescended to give any Account of these Affairs, especially of what happened before *Cesar's* Coming, excepting *Milton*, *Tyrrel*, and Sir *Bulstrode Whitlock*; and they too so very short, and with such Reflections upon the History itself, as rather serves to raise than satisfy ones Curiosity of knowing what it contains. But the Book is now grown so very scarce, that many who have a Desire to read it, cannot; besides that the Stile of the *Latin* Translation of it by *Jeffrey of Monmouth*, which is the only one yet published, is barbarous and in many Places obscure. So that excepting our Antiquaries, very few have any Knowledge of this Book; which yet for the most Part is a pleasant, and in many Places a true History of a very brave People, for about two thousand Years together, that is, during the whole Time they were able to maintain their Authority and Government in this Kingdom;

and so far it is properly a Part of the general History of *England*.

III. Upon these Considerations was the following Translation of it made some Years ago, to gratify some particular Friends at whose Request I first undertook it. In the composing of which I made use of two Editions of *Jeffrey of Monmouth's Latin Translation*; one of which was published in *Quarto* by *Ascensius* at *Paris*, *A. D.* 1517, and abounds with Abbreviations of Words which sometimes render their Reading ambiguous; the other in *Folio* by (a) *Commeline* at *Heidelberg*, *A. D.* 1587, which is much the fairer and correcter Edition, and to which is annexed the Abridgment of the first six Books of this History by *Ponticus Virunnius*, together with *Gildas*, *Bede*, and some other of our ancient Historians: These two, which were printed from different Manuscripts, and are the only Editions that I can find have yet been made, I compared together, that I might better judge of the Errors of each, especially in the Orthography of Persons and Places. And in this Point I found a great Diversity both between the two Editions, and also the several ancient Abridgers of this History, viz. *Alfred of Beverley*, *Radulphus de Diceto*, *Matthew of Westminster*, *Higden*, *Ponticus Virunnius*, and others; but have

---

(a) See *Rerum Britannicarum Scriptores vetustiores & præcipui*.

---

## The PREFACE.

---

v

have for the most Part followed *Commelines* Edition, and suppressed the Variations I at first noted between them, as thinking them not material. The first Edition divides the whole History into seven Books, the other into twelve, though perhaps neither of them truly according to the Original Copy, if (b) *Leland*, (c) *Pitts* and (d) *Vossius* inform us right. However judging this Nicety of no great Consequence, so long as the History is entire, I have followed *Commelines* Edition in the Division both of the Books and Chapters; and that especially because I found it warranted by several ancient Manuscripts I have seen of this History in the *Cottonian* and other Libraries, and also by the Abridgment of *Ponticus Virannius*. Whereas the former Edition was (as *Commeline* observes) mangled and changed at the Editors Pleasure.

IV. *Merlins* Prophecy, for the Nonsense and unintelligible Jargon it contains, should have been omitted, but that *Jeffrey* has so connected it with the History, that the Thred of the Story would not be entire without it. This Prophecy had sometimes a considerable Influence upon the Counsels of the ancient *Britains*; and we are told, (e) the final Subjection of the Principality of *Wales* to the Crown of *England* was partly  
a 3 owing

---

(b) *Comment. de Script. Britan.* (c) *De illustr. Angl. Scriptor.*  
(d) *De Hist. Lat. L. II. Cap. 52* (e) *Daniels History of England.*

owing to it ; since *Llewellyn* the last Prince of *Wales* was, by the Conceit of a Passage in it, *viz.* that he should be Crowned with the Diadem of *Brutus*, encouraged to carry on a War against King *Edward* the first to his own Destruction. The *Latin* Translation of it by *Jeffrey* was published not only with this History, but also that of *Matthew* of *Westminster*. *Alanus de Insulis*, who was in his Time a very famous *German* Divine, dignified by the Schoolmen with the Title of *Doctor universalis*, published it also with a learned Commentary ; (f) and indeed has given as much Light to it as so dark a Subject seems capable of. His Explication was at least of some Use to me in the Translating of it, since it served to Correct some Errors in the other Editions.

V. I am not insensible that I expose my self to the Censures of some Persons, by publishing this Translation of a Book, which they think had better been suppressed and buried in Oblivion, as being at present generally exploded for a groundless and fabulous Story, such as our modern Historians think not worthy relating, or at least mention with Contempt. And though it is true, several Men, and those of Learning too, censure this Book who have but little considered it, and whose Studies no ways qualify

---

(f) In *Octavo* at *Frankfort*. A. D. 1603.

qualify them to judge of it; yet I own this Consideration has for a long Time deterred me from publishing it; and I should not at last have been able to surmount this Difficulty, without the Importunity and Encouragement of others, to whom I owe a singular Regard. I had indeed before I entered upon the Work perused the principal Writers both for and against this History, the Effect of which upon my own Judgment, as to the Swaying it to the one Side more than the other, was but very small; and I must confess, that I find the most learned Antiquaries the most modest in their Opinions concerning it, and that it seems to me to be a Piece of great Rashness, to judge peremptorily upon a Matter, whereof at this great Distance of Time there are no competent Witnesses on either Side. At least I cannot but think it a sufficient Apology for my publishing this Book, to consider only, That though it seems to suffer under a general Prejudice at present, yet it has not long done so; but that upon its first appearing in the World, it met with an universal Approbation, and that too from those who had better Opportunities of examining the Truth of it, as there were then more Monuments extant, and the Traditions more fresh and uncorrupted concerning the ancient *British* Affairs, than any Criticks of the present Age can

pretend to ; That it had no Adversary before *William* of *Newburgh* about the End of the Reign of *Richard* the First, whose virulent Invective against it, we are told, proceeded from a Revenge he thought he owed the *Welsh* for an Affront they had given him ; That his Opposition was far from shaking the Credit of it with our succeeding Historians, who have most of them, till the Beginning of the last Century, confirmed it with their Testimonies, and copyed after it, as often as they had Occasion to treat of the same Affairs ; That its Authority was alledged by King *Edward* the First and all the Nobility of the Kingdom, in a Controversy of the greatest Importance, before *Boniface* the Eighth ; That even in this Learned Age, that is so industrious to detect any Impositions, which through the Credulity of former Times had passed upon the World, the Arguments against this History are not thought so convincing, but that several Men of equal Reputation for Learning and Judgment with its Adversaries, have written in Favour of it ; That very few have at last spoken decisively against it, or absolutely condemned it ; And that it is still most frequently quoted by our most Learned Historians and Antiquaries. All these Considerations, I say, if they do not amount to an Apology for the History itself, shew at least that it deserves to be better known than

than at present it is; which is sufficient to justify my undertaking the publishing of it.

VI. I will venture to say farther, that we see in this History the Traces of venerable Antiquity, obscured indeed and perplexed with a Mixture of Fable, as are all the profane Histories of those ancient Times. But where we want sufficient Light to Distinguish Truth from Fiction, the Reverence due to one should make us bear with the other, and it can be no warrantable Zeal that would destroy both together. We see here what our Ancestors esteemed a great Glory to this Nation, that it can recount the Series of its Affairs from so high an *Epocha*; that it can boast such a long and uninterrupted Succession of Glorious Kings; that it produced Hero's in those early Times of Antiquity, whose great Actions intitle them to the highest Place in the List of Fame; and that it can derive its Original from a People as noble and famous as any in ancient Story. But some of our modern Criticks would allow it no share of this Glory; but endeavour to vilify and extinguish its most ancient Traditions and Records; make a blank Table in Chronology of all that passed here in that vast Tract of Time before the coming of *Cesar*; and instead of that Heroick Beginning which this History ascribes to the *British* Nation, are better  
contented

contented to have their own Conjectures pass concerning it; which yet are as opposite to one another, as they are destitute of any Solid Foundation in ancient History. So that they leave their Readers in Perplexity or an absolute Uncertainty about this Matter.

- VII. For as to this particular Point concerning the Origin of the *British* Nation, which is the Thing in this History that is now most of all controverted, it is most certain that whatever Account has been given of it, different from what this History relates, has no other Grounds at best than probable Conjecture; and that will never weigh in the Balance against an Historical Account of it, where there is a greater Probability to support that History. And could we but, as *Camden* (g) himself also observes, be once satisfied that the History of *Brutus* were true, there would be no Occasion for any laborious Search into Antiquity after the Original of the *British* Nation. Now whatever new Light the present Age may boast of, it must be owned our Historians for several Ages together, before the Beginning of the last Century, thought themselves eased of the Trouble of this Enquiry, by acquiescing in, and as much as they were able corroborating this Account.

---

(g) *Britannia* published by *Gibson*. p. VI.

count. Even *William* of *Newburgh*, the first and greatest Adversary of this History, makes no Objection on this Score. *Giraldus Cambrensis*, who was very learned in the *British* Antiquities, though upon other Accounts he calls this the fabulous History of *Jeffrey*, yet every where allows the Story of *Brutus*, and the Descent of the *Britains* from the *Trojans*. It was not opposed by any Body in *England* before (h) *John* of *Wethamstede*, an obscure Writer of the fifteenth Century; and as for any Reflections foreign Writers formerly made upon it, it cannot be supposed their Knowledge of our Affairs should be equal to that of our own Antiquaries; and perhaps too some little Emulation with Respect to National Glory was the true Ground of their Censures. For indeed the famous *Polydore Virgil*'s contempt of it has been (i) shewn to proceed from his Vanity in extolling his Countrymen the *Romans*, whom he would by no means allow the *Britains* to rival either in Valour or Nobility of Descent. And as for *Buchanans* Objections, they only shew his Ignorance of the Story he undertakes to confute; though where it makes for the Glory of his own Nation, he can allow some Truth in some other Parts

(h) *Nicols*'s *English Hist. Library*. 2d. Edition Part. I. ch. 5. (i) *Prisei Defensio Hist. Britan.*

Parts of this History, which are notwithstanding by others equally doubted of.

VIII. Now we cannot reasonably object either Ignorance or Credulity to our own Historians and Antiquaries, of those Times, that assert this Story. Every one must readily acknowledge the great Industry, Learning and Judgment of *Leland*, as well as the singular Opportunities he had by the Encouragement of his Patron King *Henry the Eighth*, towards setting this and all other Parts of our History and Antiquities in a clear Light: Not to mention *Humphrey Llwyd*, *Sir John Price*, *Dr. Caius*, *Dr. Powel*, and many other grave and learned Men, all strenuous Assertors of this Story. Since then its Credit had been for so many Ages and so well established, how comes it that our modern Antiquaries tire themselves in the Labyrinth of Antiquity, with tracing out the Original of the *Britains*, when they have here a copious, regular, Historical, and not a broken and conjectural Account of it? How comes it that a Story which in former Ages met with so general an Approbation, is now so much condemned and exploded?

IX. This Revolution in Opinion, one would expect, should be owing, not to a bare Suspicion of the Story, but such an evident Detection of its Falsity as is incontestable. And yet among the many modern Writers that express their Contempt of it,

one

one shall find but little said by them by Way of Argument to disprove it: And I have Reason to believe, not a few have run it down without Examination, as thinking themselves secure in following the Opinion that is most in Vogue. The most specious Reasons against it, that I can meet with, are offered by (k) *Camden*, and that with a Candour becoming so great a Man. For he declares for his own Part, that he is so far from labouring to discredit this History, that he assures us he has often strained his Invention to the utmost to support it; and that absolutely to reject it would be to make War against Time, and to fight against a received Opinion. And therefore the Arguments he proposes are not his own, but such as, he says, other Learned and Judicious Men attacked him with, to invalidate this Relation, when he offered to defend it. And at last he even Apologizes, for having laid before Us the Observations and Opinions of other Men towards impairing its Credit. Men of *Camden* or (l) *Seldens* Pitch of Learning, must be contented to deliver their Sentiments humbly and modestly concerning it; and it is only for the profounder Judgment of a *Dutch* (m) Antiquary to pronounce it peremptorily,

---

(k) *Britan. P. VI.* (l) Notes on *Draytons Polyolbion.* (m) *Schrievers Antiqu. Batavia* cited by *Sheringham de Anglorum Orig. Cap. I.*

peremptorily, a great, heavy, long, thick, palpable, and most impudent Lie, and that so manifest as to need no Proof; or for a great Statesman (n) to say, That it is a Tale forged at pleasure, by the Wit or Folly of its first Author, and not to be regarded.

X. At the same Time it must be owned, that as Camden has not given any Answers himself to the Objections he mentions against this History, but rather thought them of that Force, as to be Ground enough for him to propose a new (o) Conjecture of his own, concerning the Original of the British Nation, which indeed he has supported with great Learning, we are not to reckon him in the Number of its Advocates. On the contrary, it is more probable, that his speaking of it with such Indifference, has by Reason of the Deference paid to his great Learning and Judgment in these Affairs, been the chief Reason of its losing its former Credit, and of the present general Prejudice against it. And as this History was the great Obstruction in his Way, to the promoting his own Conjecture, we need not much doubt, but that, notwithstanding his Modesty, the Arguments against it were such as he approved of; and that he has presented in all its strength the Sum of what can be said to invalidate

---

(n) *Temple's Introduction to the History of England.* (o) *Britan* p. X, &c.

---

The PREFACE IV

---

invalidate this History. Now the Regard that is due to Truth and the Veneration paid to ancient History, may I hope serve for my Apology, if I take upon me to offer some Observations upon the principal Objections against this Story, especially those made Use of by this Learned and Judicious Antiquary. My Design in which is not to thwart the general Opinion of this Age concerning it, but only, for the Sake of Truth, candidly and impartially to represent the Substance of what may be said as well for it as against it. The Sum of what is said to invalidate this Account concerning the Original of the *Britains*, is that this Book wherein it is delivered, is as to the main of it very fabulous; and that there is Reason to believe, the whole to be nothing else but the Forgery of *Jeffrey of Monmouth*, the pretended Translator of it. And the regular Method of proceeding in this Dissertation is, First, To examine upon what Grounds *Jeffrey* is charged with Forgery or Imposture in this Matter; And Secondly, admitting his Innocence, that is, admitting there was a History extant before his Time, giving a regular Account of the Succession of the *British* Kings from *Brutus* to *Cadwallader*, to examine whether that History is altogether so fabulous, as it is now commonly esteemed.

XI. Before I proceed to consider the Objections against *Jeffrey's* Integrity, it will be requisite for the Readers Information, to relate what he himself and his Advocates say concerning the Publication of this History, which has, in this last Age especially, occasioned so much Controversy among Learned Men. Now the Story as collected from himself, *Leland*, *Bale*, and *Pitts* is, That *Walter Mapaus*, alias *Calenius*, Archdeacon of *Oxford*, who flourished in the Reign of *Henry I.* and of whom *Henry of Huntington* and other Historians as well as *Jeffrey* himself make honourable mention, being a Man very curious in the Study of Antiquity, and a diligent Searcher into ancient Libraries, and especially after the Works of ancient Authors, happened while he was in *Armorica* to light upon a History of *Britain*, writ in the *British* Tongue, and carrying Marks of great Antiquity. And being overjoy'd at it, as if he had found a vast Treasure, he in a short Time after came over to *England*; where enquiring for a proper Person to translate this curious but hitherto unknown Book, he very opportunely met with *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*, a Man profoundly versed in the History and Antiquities of *Britain*, excellently skilled in the *British* Tongue, and withal (considering the Time) an elegant Writer both in Verse and Prose; and so recommended this Task

Task to him. Accordingly *Jeffrey* being incredibly delighted with this ancient Book, undertook the Translating of it into *Latin*, which he performed with great Diligence, approving himself, according to *Matthew Paris*, a faithful Translator. At first he divided it into four Books, writ in a plain simple Stile, and dedicated it to *Robert* Earl of *Gloucester*, a Copy whereof is (p) said to be at *Bennet* College in *Cambridge*, which was never yet published; but afterwards he made some Alterations, and divided it into eight Books, to which he added the Book of *Merlin's* Prophecies, which he had also translated from *British* Verse into *Latin* Prose, prefixing to it a Preface, and a Letter to *Alexander* Bishop of *Lincoln*. A great many fabulous and trifling Stories were inserted in the History: But that was not his Fault; his Business as a Translator was to deliver them faithfully such as they were, and leave them to the Judgment of the Learned to be discussed.

XII. To prove the Truth of this Relation, and to answer at once all Objections against *Jeffrey's* Integrity, one need no other Argument than an Assurance, that the Original Manuscript which *Jeffrey* translated, of whose Antiquity the Curious are able to  
b judge

---

(p) *Pitts & Voss. in loc. supra citatis.*

judge in a great Measure by the Character, or any ancient and authentick Copy of it, is yet extant. And indeed Archbishop (*q*) *Usher* mentions an old *Welsh* Chronicle in the *Cottonian* Library, that formerly was in the Possession of that learned Antiquary *Humphrey Lhwyd*, which he says is thought to be that which *Jeffrey* translated. But if that is the Original Manuscript, it must be acknowledg'd *Jeffrey* was not meerly a Translator, but made some Additions of his own; since as that most learned Prelate informs us, the Account that we have in this History of the *British Flamens*, and *Arch-flamens*, is no where to be found in it. But besides this there are several Copies of it in the *Welsh* Tongue, mentioned by the late Ingenious and Learned Mr. *Lhwyd* in his *Archaeologia Britannica*. And I my self have met with a Manuscript History of our *British* Affairs, writ above a hundred Years ago by Mr. *John Lewis*, and shortly to be published, wherein the Author says, That he had the Original of the *British* History in Parchment written in the *British* Tongue before *Jeffrey's* Time, as he concludes from this Circumstance, that in his Book *Jeffrey's* Preface was wanting, and the Preface to his Book was the second Chapter of that published

---

(*q*) *Britan. Eccles. primordia, Cap. 5.*

published by *Jeffrey*. My Ignorance of the *Welsh* Tongue renders me unqualified for making any Search into these Matters; and and though the Search should be attended with never so much Satisfaction, to those who are able to judge of the Antiquity of Manuscripts; yet to the Generality of Readers other Arguments would perhaps be more convincing.

XIII. Were it true, that *Alfred* of *Beverley* made his Abridgment of the *British* History, from a Copy of it which was different from that published by *Jeffrey*, and extant before his Time; that alone would be an unanswerable Proof of *Jeffrey's* Integrity. Mr. *Hearne*, in his Preface to *Alfred's* Annals by him lately published, favours this Opinion; for the support of which he alledges, that *Alfred* never once mentions *Jeffrey's* Name, but distinguishes the Author of the *British* History by the feigned Name of *Britannicus*, and that *Jeffrey* was a later Writer than he. As to *Jeffrey's* being a later Writer, that seems grounded upon a Mistake, *Camden* and other learned Men have run into, concerning the Time of *Jeffrey's* publishing this History, which I shall hereafter endeavour to rectify. And as to *Alfred's* Silence of *Jeffrey's* Name, one can safely conclude no more from that than this, that he perhaps thought him of less Regard, as being not the Author, but only

the Translator of the History. To me the common Opinion of learned Men, viz. that *Alfred's Annals* were chiefly *Galfredi Deflorationes*, seems much better supported. For before *Jeffrey's* Translation appeared, the *British* History was wholly unknown to the World, there being no Copy of it extant but in the *British* Tongue, and that too but lately discovered; so that *Jeffrey* (r) forbids his Contemporaries, *William* of *Malmesbury*, and *Henry* of *Huntington*, to treat of the ancient *British* Kings, for want of the Book which *Walter* brought over from *Armorica*, and whereof he now published the Translation. But *Alfred* says nothing of its being writ in the *British* Tongue, nor of its being so scarce a Book. On the contrary he (s) speaks of it as a Book so well known, that it was in his Time esteemed a Mark of rustick Ignorance not to be acquainted with it, and that he himself was ashamed till he had read this History which others had even got by Heart. If therefore the *British* History which *Alfred* abridged, was different from this published by *Jeffrey*, and yet was so generally well known at that Time; one might very well ask, what became of it? What Author has made the least Mention of it? Or in what Language

---

(r) *British Hist.* B. XII. Ch. 20. (s) *Alfred Beverl. Anales.* p. 2.

Language was it written? If it was in *British*, it could not have been so generally understood by *Englishmen*, nor in all Probability by *Alfred* himself, who yet mentions his Desire of transcribing it: If in *Latin*, then the Question is, wherein did that History and *Jeffrey's* pretended Translation differ? For I observe that wherever *Alfred* does not abridge, but quote the very Words of the *British* History, he does it *Verbatim* according to *Jeffrey's* Translation. Nor does his Abridgment in the least differ from *Jeffrey's* larger History of the Times before the Coming of *Cæsar*, saving in the Orthography of some Persons and Places, wherein scarce any Writers since his Time have perfectly agreed, and in a Quotation (t) which he has added out of another Author, concerning the High ways of *Belinus*; nor yet in the Times after the Coming of *Cæsar*, saving in some Additions he made to it, as he himself (u) owns, out of the *Roman*, *English*, and other Historians.

XIV. Despairing therefore of clearing *Jeffrey's* Integrity by this Argument, let us try whether it may not be done, by the Consideration of other Circumstances, and the Answers that may be given to the Objections of his Adversaries. And in the first

b 3

Place

---

(t) *Aluredi Beverl. Annales.* p. 17. (u) *Ibid.* L. II. p. 25.

Place it has been thought by *Jeffrey's* Advocates a very great Hardship, that he has not the Privilege of being believed upon his own Word, viz. That he was only the Translator of the *British* History, who was in his own Time of that Credit and Esteem, as to be promoted afterwards to the Bishoprick of *St. Asaph*, and as (x) some relate (though I believe on no good Grounds) to the Dignity of a *Cardinal* also: When other Authors, who have intermixed with their Histories as gross Fables as any that are here to be found, are yet allowed that Privilege in Matters of greater Importance. And they think this Treatment of him the more injurious, since the Learned Men of his own Time, who had the best Opportunity, and wanted no Abilities to expose the Forgery, had it really been so, were far from questioning his Veracity in this Point. Now as (y) *Sir John Price* with great Zeal for *Jeffrey's* Cause urges, no humane Argument is so strong a Support to the Faith of the Gospel as this, that when it was first published to the World, none of its Adversaries were found so impudent, as to endeavour destroying the Belief of the Facts it relates. And so, says he, ought it to be an Argument for our Purpose, that there

---

(x) *Sir Winstone Churchil's Divi Britannici* from *Alphonf. dē Gatto de Gestis Pontif.* (y) *Defens. Hist. Britan.* p. 29.

there was no Body, when this History was first published, that attempted to disprove it, or assert it to be the Forgery, instead of the Translation of *Jeffrey of Monmouth*. On the contrary, it was received with general Approbation, and was no sooner published, than Abridgments and Translations were made of it into other Languages.

XV. For *Henry of Huntingdon*, whom *Jeffrey* mentions as his contemporary Historian, though he had treated of the Original of the *Britains*, and of *Brutus* the Founder of their Race, in the History he had published before he had seen the *British History*; yet afterwards happening, as he (z) says, to light upon *Jeffrey's* Translation at the Abbey of *Bec* in *Normandy*, he, to compleat his Account of the ancient *British* Affairs, and as it were to testify to the World his Esteem for the *British History* when published, made an Abstract of it, which he subjoined as an Appendix to his former History. About the same Time also *Alfred of Beverley*, whom I mention'd before, and now assert to be a later Writer than *Jeffrey*, shew'd himself so well satisfied that the *British History* was genuine, that in his Abridgment of it he has omitted mentioning *Jeffrey's* Name; which, as

b 4

I have

---

(z) *Epist. 2da. ad Warinum. M. S. in Bibliotheca Harleyana.*

I have already observed, he in all Probability did for no other Reason, than that he thought him less worthy his Regard, as being no farther concerned in the Work than in the Translating of it; though the Author of it, as being unknown, he calls by the feigned Name of *Britannicus*. Much about the same Time also *Walter Mapæus*, who first discovered the Book, and gave it to *Jeffrey* to translate, did himself translate it out of *British* into *Latin*, and in his latter Days out of *Latin* into *British* again, that is, as I suppose, into more modern *Welsh* that it might be more generally understood. And this *Walter* himself testifies at the Conclusion of his Book, which is still to be seen in the Archives (a) of *Jesús Colledge Library in Oxford*. Mr. *Lhuyd* (b) says, that after comparing these Translations with that which was made by *Jeffrey*, he found *Jeffrey's* History more elegant and perfect than the other. There are also several other Manuscript Copies of this History translated into *Welsh*, but of what Antiquity, or whether all done by the same Hand I have not yet been able to inform my self. And the Learned Bishop of *Carlisle* (c) mentions an old *English* Translation of it made by one *Lazimon* or *Lazamon*,  
a Priest

---

(a) *Wynne's* Preface to the Hist. of Wales. (b) *Archæol. Britan.* p. 265. (c) *Engl. Hist. Libr.* Part I. ch. 3.

a Priest born at *Ernlere* on the *Severn*, the Copy of which being yet extant in the *Cottonian* Library, he conjectures must be near as ancient as *Jeffrey's* Time. And though the Translator pretends to have had the Original from its prime Author, one *Wate*, (or *Walter*) a *French* Clergyman, who, as he says, first presented his *Latin* Composure to Queen *Eleanor*, King *Henry* the Second's Consort; yet, says my Lord of *Carlisle*, the Truth is, as Mr. *Wanley* has made it very plain to us, this *Laximon's* Book, and *Monmouth's* are the very same; and the former seems only to have translated *Jeffrey's* Book into *Norman English*, in which Condition we have it twice in the *Cottonian* Library. It would be tedious to recount that long Catalogue of *English* Historians, who succeeded from the Twelfth to the Sixteenth Century, and that have either abridged or enlarged upon the *British* History, without any Suspicion of Forgery on *Jeffrey's* Part, wherewith he now commonly stands charged.

XVI. But besides the general Approbation this Book met with at its first appearing abroad, and which it so long preserved, it may be alledged farther, that there is all the Improbability of any Cheat on *Jeffrey's* Part that can be imagined. For he produces for a Voucher of his Sincerity *Walter* Archdeacon of *Oxford*, from whom he professes

---

xxvi      *The PREFACE.*

---

fesses to have received the Copy of the *British* History ; and at the same Time clears *Walter* of Forgery, by mentioning the Antiquity of the Book. But admitting they were both jointly concerned in this Contrivance, which is all that can be objected in this Case, it is hardly credible that *Jeffrey* would hazard the exposing of his Character so far, as to publish to the World so gross a Forgery, and presume to dedicate it to a Person so celebrated for his Learning, and withal of so great Eminence and Authority in the Kingdom, as was at that Time *Robert* Earl of *Gloucester*, the Natural Son of King *Henry* the First. He had just Reason to fear, that a Person of such eminent Quality, and so curious in Matters of Learning, and especially that which so much concerned a Statesman, the History of this Kingdom, would not bear such a scandalous Imposition with his Name at the Head of it, if by any Enquiries made into it he could have been detected. But besides the Earl of *Gloucester*, he had the Confidence also to venture imposing upon the Credulity of *Alexander* Bishop of *Lincoln*, to whom he dedicates *Merlin's* Prophecies, and mentions his Translation of the *British* History. This Prelate is also celebrated by *Henry* of *Huntington*, and other Historians, as well as *Jeffrey* himself, for the greatest Patron of Learned Men in that Time, and for being himself a great Scholar

---

*The* **P R E F A C E.**    xxvii

---

Scholar and Statesman. And if he had any Concern either for Truth or for his own Honour, we cannot doubt but he was well satisfied of *Jeffrey's* Integrity, when he desired him to translate *Merlins* Prophecies, (as *Jeffrey* says he did,) and had the Opportunity of Discourſing him about the Copy of the *British* History, the Translation whereof he published at the ſame Time with them. But farther, let it even be granted, that not only *Walter* was a Partner in this Contrivance, but alſo that the Earl of *Glouceſter* and the Biſhop of *Lincoln* were both ſo regardless of their Honour, as to ſuffer their Names at the Head of a Translation, without any Scruple or Enquiry whether it was real or pretended; yet it can never with any Reaſon be thought, but that a History, which gave ſo ſurprizing an Account of the ancient *British* Affairs, and which (as *Alfred* of *Beverley* tells us,) was at the Time of its firſt Appearance very much the Subject of publick Diſcourſe, ſo that it was then eſteemed a Mark of ruſtick Ignorance for any Perſon to be unacquainted with it, could have paſſed without Censure from other Learned Men, had there been the leaſt Grounds for it. And yet, as I have already obſerved, it paſſed current with all the Writers of Note in our Country till *Camden's* Time; and met with no Oppoſition excepting from *William* of *Newburgh*,

*burgh*, who may very well be thought too distant in Time, too much sway'd by Resentment and Prejudice; too full of absurd Stories himself, and to have too little Appearance of Reason on his Side, to be capable of doing it any Injury with an impartial and considerate Reader.

XVII. Notwithstanding both (d) *Polydore Virgil*, and (e) *Camden* object the Authority of this Writer, as an Argument against *Jeffrey's* Integrity, and that too of the greatest Weight of any that they offer upon this Point, which makes it the more worthy our Consideration. *Camden*, or which is much the same Thing, the learned and judicious Men who attacked him with their Objections, introduces the Argument with great Force, by asserting, that *William* of *Newburgh*, in this rough Language, fixed the Charge of Forgery upon *Jeffrey*, the Compiler of the *British* History, as soon as ever he had published it. "A certain Writer started up in our Days, who hath devised strange and ridiculous Tales concerning the *Britains*, and with a sort of impudent Vanity, hath extolled their Gallantry above that of the *Macedonians* or *Romans*. His Name is *Jeffrey*, &c." From the Manner in which *Camden* allows these

---

(d) *Hist. Angl.* L. I. (e) *Britannia* p. VIII.

these learned Men to propose their Objection, a Reader would hardly imagin that *Newburgh* delay'd making this Charge against *Jeffrey*, till above forty Years after the *British* History was published; and yet so much it was at least according to the most favourable Supposition: That is, allowing *Jeffrey* to be living at the Beginning of *Henry* the Second's Reign, or the Year 1155. For in his Reign *Camden* (f) says *Jeffrey* published this History, and it was at least 1197, before *Newburgh* published his Invective, his History not ending before that Year. But indeed the Mistake is yet much greater. For by some Accounts, I find *Jeffrey* died two Years before *Henry* the Second began his Reign; at least it is certain (g) he was made Bishop of *St. Asaph* in 1151, and that his two Patrons *Robert* Earl of *Gloucester* and *Alexander* Bishop of *Lincoln*, (to the former of which he dedicates the History he Translated, to the other *Merlins* Prophecies,) died the one in the Year 1146, the other the Year following: And it is equally certain, that *Jeffrey* published his Book before he was made a Bishop, and also before the Death of either of his Patrons. As to the exact Time when this Book was published I cannot be positive; though most probably

---

(f) *Britain*. p. V. (g) *Mat. Paris Hist. maj. ad An. 1151.*

probably it was between the Year 1123, in which *Alexander* was made Bishop of *Lincoln*, and 1128 when *Alfred* of *Beverly* the Abridger of the History (*b*) is thought to have died. *Langhorn* says in his (*i*) *Antiquitates Albionenses* that *Henry* of *Huntington* saw this History at the Abbey of *Bec* in *Normandy*. A. D. 1109. But this certainly is a Mistake, as might be made appear from several Circumstances. *Huntingtons* Second Letter to *Warin*, which *Langhorn* quotes on this Occasion, was (as far as I can find) never yet Printed; and the M S. which I saw of it in the *Harleyan* Library, says only, that *Huntington* had met with *Jeffrey's* History in his Journey to *Rome hoc anno*: But the Letter has no Date. However one may very justly reckon at least seventy Years between the Publication of this History, and the Appearance of *Newburghs* Charge against it. And this is such a Distance of Time, that it can hardly be presumed he could be a competent Witness of the Forgery, unless he had given better Reasons for it than he has done.

XVIII. But *Jeffrey's* Advocates say farther, that *Newburgh* was far from being sincere and impartial in his Charge. It is certain his Accusation made no Impression on any of our own Writers, till near the Beginning of the

(b) *Hearne* Pref. ad *Aluredi Annales*. p. 28. (i) p. 39.

the last Century. It was in a short Time answered by one (k) Grey, who according to Pitts was Bishop of *Norwich* and Elect of *Canterbury*, and dy'd A. D. 1217. and has been generally rejected as a groundless Calumny; so much Virulence, especially against a Person of so venerable a Character as that of a Bishop, not being thought to proceed from any other Cause than Passion and Prejudice. And accordingly (l) some *Welsh* Authors discover to Us the true secret Reason of this Bitterness, by telling us from their own authentick Histories, That this *William Petit*, alias *Neubrigensis*, whom the *Britains* call *Guillim. Bach*, did after the Decease of *Jeffrey of Monmouth*, make Suit to *David ap Owen Gwyned* Prince of *North-Wales*, to succeed in the Bishoprick of *St. Asaph*; and receiving the Repulse with some Disgrace, had no other Way to vent his foolish Passion and Resentment, than by railing most scurrilously against the deceased Bishop, as if he had been the Author of a Book, of which he was only the Translator, and decrying the History and Antiquities of the *Britains*, to revenge himself on the *Welsh* their Descendants. So that *Leland* says truly of him, (m) *Gallofridum Arturium Monumetensem tam petulanter*

---

(k) *Nicollons Engl. Hist. Lib. Part. I. ch. 3.* (l) *Powel in Epist. ded. ad Pontic. Virunn. & Joh. Lewis Hist. in M. S. (m) Comment de Britan. Script.*

*petulanter laceffit, tam invidis moribus lacerat, ut conductum ad id facile putes : cujus judicium secutus Polydorus, & saepe & libenter Gallofridum vellicat, alieni operis interpretem. Quare mihi uterque ad partes merito vocandus, nisi essent ex aequo penitioris antiquitatis Britanniae ignari.*

XIX. They think also his Prejudice the more apparent, in that he confidently objects as a Falſity in this History, what they assert to be a most notorious Truth. For he would have the Account here given of the three ancient Metropolitan Sees of the Britains, viz. London, York, and Legions, pass for an incontestable Proof of the Falſity of the History, affirming there were no Archbishops in this Island before *Augustin* the Monk. And indeed that this is a more confident than true Assertion, any one may be convinced from Arch-Bishop *Ushers Primordia*, who has most learnedly discussed this Point, and shewn all the Authorities that corroborate *Jeffrey's* Account of the Establishment and Succession of the *British* Archbishops, from the Time of *K. Lucius* till *Augustins* Arrival. But besides they wonder with what Face he could reproach *Jeffrey* with fabulous Stories, who himself abounds with Falſities and Absurdities rather more gross and incredible. For some Liberty has been always allow'd to Antiquity in these Matters : But this Histori-  
an

---

The PREFACE. xxxiii

---

an makes a Romance of the History of his own Time, and among many other monstrous Stories, tells us one which nothing in this Book, not the Birth of *Merlin*, nor the Transformation of *Uther Pendragon*, nor the most Romantick Exploit of *K. Arthur*, nor *Cadwallo's* Repast in the Island of *Garnareia*, will come up to; and will serve very well to shew that this Authors Indignation against *Jeffrey*, did not proceed from his Aversion to Fables. He says, (n) That in *K. Stephen's* Time at a Place now called *Wolpitt* near *St. Edmunds-Bury* in *Suffolk*, two green Children, a Male and Female, in strange Habits, came out of the *Wolpitts* adjoining, and wandred up and down in the Field in Astonishment, till they were seized by some Reapers, and carried to the Village, whither a great Multitude of People ran together to see them. There they were detained some Days, and refused all manner of Sustenance that was offered them, till at last when near famished they greedily laid hold on some Beans that were accidentally brought them, and lived upon this Food for some Months till they had learned to eat Bread. Their green Colour gradually changed, so that they became in Complexion like other People, learned our

c                      Language,

---

(n) *Neubrig Rerum Angl. L. 1. Cap. 27.*

Language, and were baptized. The Boy, who seemed the younger, died a little while after; but the Girl survived a long Time, and married a Man at *Lynn*. Being asked about their Country and the Manner of their coming hither; they answered, That they came from *St. Martins Land*, which according to their Description, was a Subterraneous Country that had no Sun, but a Light like our Twilight, where notwithstanding the *Christian Faith* was professed: And that they were convey'd from thence to this upper Region in a sort of Extasy, occasioned by hearing a Sound like that of a Bell, while they were feeding their Fathers Cattle in the Field. An Author that could relate this Story for a Truth, was a very improper Person to censure *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth's British History*.

XX. Since then neither the Time when *Newburgh* published this Charge, nor the Impartiality, nor the Credit of the Witness, may be thought to render his Evidence valid; nothing remains to support this heinous Accusation, but the strong Reasons he gives for it. But here they say we are most of all disappointed; for he gives no Reasons at all. The whole Accusation is nothing but scurrilous Railing, without the least Offer of a Proof. He calls *Jeffrey* (o) a Writer of ridiculous Fictions, who with

---

(o) *Neubrig. Proemium Hist.*

with an impudent Vanity extolled the Valour of the *Britains* above that of the *Macedonians* and *Romans*; had published for a true History the old *British* Fables of *K. Arthur*, with an Addition of his own; had yet with greater Impudence published *Merlin's* lying Prophecies, very much also enlarged from his own Stock, as true and authentick; and in his whole *British* History lyes every where saucily and impudently. He also calls those either *Jeffrey's* or other Peoples Fictions, which he relates concerning the great Exploits of the ancient *Britains* before *Cæsars* Arrival; as also from *Cæsars* Time, till the Reign of the Emperour *Honorius*; and will not allow one Word to be true concerning the succeeding *British* and *Saxon* Kings, that is inconsistent with *Bede's* account of them; and in short affirms the whole Story of *Arthur* and his Successors is a bare-faced Lie, either of his own or other Peoples making. And in this Language do's he proceed to inveigh against him more largely, in Relation to the Exploits of *Arthur*, his three pretended Archiepiscopal Sees, and the Prophet *Merlin*; and at last concludes that this Liar with his Fables ought to be forthwith rejected by all. But he do's not at last offer to prove, nor so much as to say, that there was no such ancient History ever extant as *Jeffrey* pretended to translate; nor that *Walter* Archdeacon of

---

xxxvi    *The P R E F A C E.*

---

*Oxford* never delivered any such Book to him; nor that there was a Combination between *Walter* and *Jeffrey* to impose a Forgery upon the World; nor that any Body had detected, or so much as suspected any such Thing. And yet without some Proof of this kind, *Jeffrey*, notwithstanding all *Newburghs* ill manner'd Railing, might be a very innocent Man. But to make his Malice yet more apparent, one might very well ask, To what End was all this bitter Invective? Or which way was it pertinent to his Purpose? For *Newburghs* History begins with *William* the Conquerer, and has nothing to do with the Affairs of those Times whereof the *British* History treats. If that had been his Subject, he had been somewhat more excusable, as preparing his Readers to reject the Errours of that History. Whereas he now goes out of his way to vent his Malice against, and endeavour to ruin the Credit of a Prelate of the Church, who had been a long Time dead, who had hitherto enjoy'd a fair Character, and (which is the greatest Aggravation) had never that I can find done him the least Injury.

XXI. This is the Man upon whose single Testimony (p) *Polydore Virgil* grounds his calumnious Reflections on *Jeffrey* of Monmouth

---

(p) *Hist. Ang. L. 1.*

mouth, and which some of our modern Writers have countenanced so far, as to place him in the infamous Class with *Annius Viterbiensis* and other Impostors. And yet at last *Newburgh* does not say that *Jeffrey* forged the History, but only added to it what he calls doting Tales and Fictions. And this is what *Jeffreys* Advocates do not deny, and what he himself seems to have the Ingenuity to own. For he (q) owns the Addition of *Merlins* Prophecy; and perhaps the Connexion of it with the History, by the Addition of *Merlins* Discourse with *Vortegirn*, (which is almost taken *verbatim* from *Nennius*) must be imply'd. He (r) owns also some Additions to the Story of K. *Arthur*, and therefore does not pretend to have ty'd himself up to a strict Translation. And accordingly besides the Story of the *Flamens* and *Archflamens*, which Archbishop *Usher* (s) says was wanting in that which he supposed to be the Original MS; Dr. *Powel* (t) says he had seen other Copies, wherein were also wanting those wonderful Transformations of *Gorlois* and his Confidants, besides some other Romantick Tales; which indeed might be Traditions among the *Welsh*, and such as *Jeffrey* might think entertaining Stories for the Credulity of those Times.

c 3 I

(q) *Brit. Hist. B. VII. Ch. 2.* (r) *Ibid. B. XI. Ch. 1.*  
(s) *Primordia. Cap. 5.* (t) *Epist. de Hist. Brit. recte in Angli-*  
*genda apud Camdeni Angl. Norman.*

I must not leave this Point, without observing also, (what I have already hinted at) that among all the Lies and Fables *Newburgh* charges *Jeffrey* with, he makes not the least mention of the Story of *Brutus*, or the Descent of the *Britains* from the *Trojans*. It seems this Particular, which was the most material of all, was so well established in his Time, that he did not venture to oppose it: For one would hardly think any other Reason hindred him from mentioning it. To what Purpose therefore does *Camden* produce *Newburgh's* Testimony against the *British* History, as long as the Story of *Brutus* is not injured by it? For let the rest of the History be true or false, his Concern was chiefly about this Part of it, as being repugnant to the Conjecture he was going to propose, concerning the first Inhabitants of this Island.

XXI. It is true, he uses also other Arguments which I proceed to consider; Though his Quotation out of *Giraldus Cambrensis* I cannot think was intended by him for a Proof of *Jeffrey's* Forgery, but only in some Measure to weaken the Authority of the *British* History. As he was very conversant in the Works of this Author, and had published a Part of them, he had certainly more Ingenuity than to wrest the Sense of one particular Passage, contrary to the Tenour and Scope of all *Giraldus's* Wri-

Writings. For though *Giraldus* is so severe with *Jeffrey*, about the Opinions he delivers concerning the Etymology of *Wales*, as to pass this blunt Reflection, (u) *Sicut Fabulosa Gaufredi Arthuri mentitur Historia*, which are the Words *Camden* quotes ; yet it is certain he never intended to charge *Jeffrey* with Forgery or Imposture by them. So far from that, that his Testimonies serve as the greatest Support to this History, in the most material Parts of it. As he was himself a *Welshman*, and withal very learned in the History and Antiquities of the *Britains*, contemporary with *Jeffrey* himself, and an intimate Acquaintance of *Walter* Archdeacon of *Oxford*, he had the best Opportunity of any Writer of that Time, for detecting *Jeffrey's* Imposture : And had he had the least Suspicion, that under Pretence of Translating an ancient *British* Book, he imposed a Forgery upon the World, he that was so severe upon him for such a Trifle as the Etymology of a Word, would never have conceal'd it. But according to the Opinion of Sir *John Price*, (w) *Giraldus* saw the very original Book from whence *Jeffrey* made his Translation ; (so far was he from suspecting him) and only quarrell'd with him about this particular Passage,

---

(u) *Giraldi Cambria Descriptio*, Cap. 7. apud *Camden* Ang. Norman. (w) *Hist. Britan. Defensio*, p. 61.

sage, as being one of *Jeffrey's* Additions. Whereas in the other Parts of his Writings, he has not only approved, but much corroborated the Authority of the *British* History, as we shall see in its proper Place.

XXIII. To proceed therefore to that which is really designed by *Camden* as an Argument against *Jeffrey's* Integrity; he makes his Learned Men assert, (x) "That *Jeffrey ap Arthur* of *Monmouth* was the first Person, that gratified the *Britains* with *Brutus* for the Founder of their Race, and feign'd him not only of a *Trojan*, but also of a Divine Extraction: Before which Time, there was never any the least Mention made of such a Man as *Brutus*." Now this, though it were true, is far from being a direct Argument against *Jeffrey's* Integrity: Because there might have been a History that lay concealed for some Ages before his Time, containing this new and surprizing Account of the ancient *Britains*, which it might be his Fortune first to publish. But there is no Occasion to answer the Argument in this Manner: For the Advocates of the *British* History acquit not only *Jeffrey*, but also his Author, from Forgery with Respect to this Point, by asserting

---

(x) *Britannia*, p. VII.

asserting in direct Contradiction to *Camden*, That there had been frequent Mention made of *Brutus* the Founder of the *British* Race, by Authors extant long before *Jeffrey's* Time; and that there had been a constant Tradition either oral or written concerning him, especially among the *Britains*, even from the first Beginning of the *British* Nation. And this *Camden* himself, who was so learned in Antiquity, could not be ignorant of, whatever groundless Objections he suffers his learned Men to offer. For Sir *John Price's* learned and elegant Defence of the *British* History was published in *Camden's* Time, and could hardly avoid being perused by a Person of so great Curiosity in these Affairs. And this Author had sufficiently answer'd this Objection before ever it appear'd in *Camden's* *Britannia*.

XXIV. It is certain in the first Place, that *Henry of Huntington* had published in the Beginning of his History a short Account of *Brutus*, and made the *Britains* the Descendants of the *Trojans*, before he knew any Thing of *Jeffrey's* *British* History; as may be gathered from what he says in the above-mention'd second Epistle to *Warin*, from what *Jeffrey* himself says at the Conclusion of this History, where he mentions *Henry of Huntington*, as his contemporary Historian, and also from the different

different Relations of the Story it self in some Circumstances: And it is also observable, that he professes to have had this Account from various Authors. Give me Leave to insert the whole Passage in his own Words. (y) *Nunc a quibus & quo tempore inhabitata fuerit (Britannia) dicendum est; quod in Beda non inventum in aliis authoribus reperi; scripserunt enim a Dardano principium emanasse Britonum. Dardanus autem pater fuit Troij, Troius autem pater Priami & Anchisæ, Anchises Pater Æneæ, Æneas pater Ascanii, Ascanius pater Sylvii. Sylvius autem cum uxorem duxisset, & ea pregnant esset, pradixit magus quidam filium unde pregnant erat intersecturum patrem suum. Occiso igitur mago pro vaticinatione illa, natus est filius & vocatus est Bruto. Post multum vero intervallum dum ipse luderet cum pueris, ictu sagittæ occidit patrem non industria sed casu. Quamobrem expulsus ab Italia pervenit in Galliam, ibique condita civitate Turonorum, quæ vocatur Turonis, invasit tractum Armoricanum. De tractu autem Armoricano hac adveniens sibi partes insula ingentis vindicavit, & ex nomine suo Britanniam vocavit. Dicunt autem illi authores, quod quando Bruto regnabat in Britannia, Heli Sacerdos judicabat Israel, & Posthumus*

---

(y) Henry Huntington. Hist. L. 1.

---

The PREFACE. xliii

---

humus sive Sylvius filius Aenez regnabat apud Latinos, cujus nepos erat Bruto. But though as *Huntington* observes, *Bede* makes no express Mention of *Brutus*, it cannot be concluded he was ignorant of his Story; it being Foreign from his Purpose to relate it, since he was to write the Ecclesiastical and not the Civil History of this Country. Notwithstanding it is thought by some, that he hints at the Passage of the *Trojans* or *Britains* through *Gaul*, when he says, (x) *In primis hac insula Britones solum, a quibus nomen accepit, incolae habuit; qui de tractu Armoricano, ut fertur, Britanniam advecti, australes sibi partes illius vindicarunt.* For as Sir (a) *John Price* and (b) *Sheringham* remark, it is evident from this Testimony, that the ancient *Britains* did not inhabit *Gaul*, but only arrived there in their Passage to *Britain*, agreeable to what the *British* History relates. For if the *Britains* had been a People of *Gaul*, and had given their Name to the Island at their Arrival here, they must have bore this Name first in *Gaul*. But the Name of *Britains* is much more ancient in this Island than in *Gaul*, they having been so called long before *Cesar's* Arrival; whereas it was long after *Cesar's* Time that *Armo-*  
*rica*

---

(x) *Beda Hist. Eccles. L. 1. Cap. 1.* (a) *Hist. Brit. Des.*  
P. 46. (b) *De Angl. Gent. Orig. Cap. 1.*

*vica* came to be called *Britain*. And that we ought to understand *Bede* in this Sense is very reasonable, if we consider farther, that it seems to have been the received Tradition of his Countrymen the *Saxons*, when they first arrived here, that the *Britains* were originally *Trojans*; though by Reason of the long Confusion and Distraction of their Affairs, the Ignorance of the Times, and especially the Neglect of the History of Foreign Nations, (among whom they esteem'd the *Welsh*;) when indeed they have hardly deliver'd that of their own, we cannot expect much Mention made of it by them in those early Days. Notwithstanding the *Saxon Verses Wheloc* (c) cites out of an ancient Manuscript at *Trinity College in Cambridge*, are an Instance of the Antiquity of this Notion among them, which I will here add according to his *Latin Translation*.

*Hac unica femina prima*

*Ante omnes sevit Troiani semina belli.*

*Hanc Britones dixere Helenam, sed Dardanus ille*

*Excelsus Bruti pater extitit, unde Britanni*

*Heroum sumpsere genus, fortissimus idem*

*Hunc orbem primus regere & dominari ausus.*

To

---

(c) *Comment. in Bed. Hist. Eccles. L. 1. Cap. 1.*

---

The PREFACE. xlv

---

To which he immediately subjoyns from another Place,

*Insula dicta fuit Britannia nomine Bruti.*

XXV. But we have a much fuller Testimony concerning *Brutus* from *Sigibertus Gemblacensis*, (d) a French Author somewhat more early than *Jeffrey* or *Henry* of *Huntington*; for he died, according to *Belarmine*, in the Year 1112, to which Year he also brings down his *Chronographia*. The whole Passage is too long to be cited here; but the Sum of it is, That according to the Relations given in the History of the *Britains*, *Ascanius* the Son of *Aneas* had by his Son *Sylvius* a Grandson named *Brutus*, who occasion'd his Mother's Death by his Birth, and his Father's in Hunting; that being banished into *Greece* he headed the exiled *Trojans*, conquered *Pandrasus*, married his Daughter, and departing from *Greece* came to the *Tyrrhenian* Shore, where he joined Company with *Corineus*, and then made War upon the *Gauls*, and built the City of *Tours*, where his Nephew *Turonus* was killed: That from hence he sailed to *Britain* called then *Albion*, and inhabited by Giants, and called the People and Country after his

---

(d) *Chronographia apud Vet. Germania Scrips. per Pistorium.*

his Name, and at last left three Sons to succeed him, after he had reigned twenty four Years. And so he passes summarily over the Affairs of the *Britains*, agreeable to the *British* History, till they were driven into *Wales* by the *Saxons*. I am not ignorant that this whole Passage in *Sigibertus* concerning the ancient *Britains*, is suspected by some Learned Men, as an Interpolation of some later Writer, who might take it from the *British* History. But this seems to be a Surmise, grounded rather upon their Prejudice to the *British* History, than any sufficient Reason. The Author, for an Introduction to his *Chronographia*, professes to treat of the Original of nine Nations, viz. the *Romans*, *Persians*, *Franks*, *Britains*, &c. and accordingly having dispatched the first three, delivers the Original of the *Britains* in the Manner I have related. And why this Particular should be an Interpolation more than any of the rest, they ought to shew some better Reason than their Suspicion, or the Omission of it in some one Manuscript, when perhaps all the rest have it. But we need not much insist upon this single Testimony, when there are others more ancient and authentick.

XXVI. For *Nennius* Abbot of the famous Monastery of *Banchor* near *Chester*, who flourished according to some Accounts in

in the seventh Century, or however without all Dispute some Hundreds of Years before Jeffrey's Time, has writ very copiously concerning *Brutus*, recounting his Genealogy from the Patriarch *Noah*, and relating the Sum of his Adventures, in a Manner that differs but in a few Circumstances from the *British History*. And not only so, but indeed the principal Materials of the *British History*, where it is not warranted by the *Roman Authors*, or what we have now remaining of *Gildas*, are taken from this Author's Treatise, and only related in a more elegant Manner, and augmented with more Circumstances: And we cannot reject the most considerable Part of the *British History*, without rejecting *Nennius* also. But to shew from whence he compiled his Account take his own Words. (e)

*Partim majorum traditionibus, partim scriptis, partim etiam monumentis veterum Britanniarum incolarum, partim & de annalibus Romanorum; insuper & de Chronicis sanctorum Patrum, scilicet, Jeronymi, Prosperi, Eusebii; necnon & de historiis Scotorum Saxonumque, licet inimicorum, non ut volui sed ut potui, meorum obtemperans jussionibus seniorum, unam hanc historiunculam undecunque collectam balbutiendo concervavi.* This Passage may partly serve to account for the different Relations

ons

(e) *Nennii Proem. ad Hist. Britonum.*

---

xlvi The PREFACE.

---

ons he gives concerning *Brutus*, making him in (a) one Place a Roman Consul; in (b) another the Son of *Hiscion*, who was the Grandson of *Rhea Sylvia*, and therefore still a Descendent from *Aeneas*, though in a remoter Degree; and in another the same with the common Account, which he most largely insists upon as the most authentick. At the same Time it may be doubted, whether the two former Accounts were not added by his Interpolator *Samuel Britannus*, the Copies we have remaining of this Author being very imperfect, and inconsistent with one another, and so acknowledged by (c) Dr. Gale the first Editor of this small History. At least these different Accounts, as they are mention'd by no Author now extant ancients than this, and by him but transiently too, ought not (as they are by (d) Camden) to be urged as any material Objection against the more known, the more generally received, and the much better grounded Tradition, which the *British* History has delivered concerning *Brutus*. For if an establish'd Tradition is to be rejected upon these Grounds, there is very little in ancient History, that ought to be received: And even *Romulus* must quit his Pretensions of being the Founder of

---

(a) *Hist. Brit.* Cap. 2. (b) *Ibid.* Cap. 12. (c) *Hist. Britann. Scriptores* 15. p. 133. (d) *Britannia* P. IX.

of *Rome*, because the Levity of some Writers have ascribed this Honour to the *Trojans* at their first Arrival in *Italy*, of others, to *Evander* King of *Arcadia*. But now since these different Accounts concerning *Brutus* were first delivered by *Nennius*, and since he's quoted by (e) *Camden* (though very unfairly) in this very Discourse concerning *Brutus*, it is hardly consistent with *Camden's* professed Ingenuity, that he should let this pass as an Objection, that before *Jeffrey's* Time there was never the least Mention made of any such Man. Instead of straining his Invention to the utmost to defend the *British* History, as he pretends to have done; I leave the Reader to judge whether this Conduct does not shew, that he has rather done so to disparage it.

XXVII. But he needed not to have made any profound Search for the Name of *Brutus* before *Jeffrey's* Time, since it occurs in *Merlin's* Prophecy, published with this History, which is of much greater Antiquity than *Nennius's* Time, since he was contemporary with *Vortegirn*. Whether there were two nearly contemporary Writers of this Name, the one surnamed *Ambrosius*, the other *Caledonius*, as most Authors agree; or but one, according to

d

the

(e) *Ibid.* P. VII.

the Opinion of the Learned (f) Bishop of Carlisle; is not my Business to enquire. It is sufficient for me to shew, that this *Merlin Ambrosius*, whom *Nennius* calls also (g) *Embreis Gleutic*, has been represented by a judicious Author, (h) as a Person of extraordinary Wisdom and Learning for the Time he lived in, and that for his Skill in the *Mathematicks*, many Fables were invented of him, by the Vulgar, some of which are recorded in *Nennius*, and in the *British History*. However, as his Compositions were in great Request among the *Britains*, and especially this Prophecy, one may see from thence the Antiquity of the Name of *Brutus*, and of the Notion that this Island derived its Name from him. Sir *John Price*, who understood the *Welsh* Language, and had perused the most ancient Writers now extant of that Country, informs us, (i) that they have also some Verses yet extant of that ancient and (according to his Character) most sublime *British* Bard *Ithaliessin*, calling the *Britains* the Remainder of the *Trojans*, and the Descendants of *Brutus*. But long before all these, and even contemporary with *Claudius* the Emperor, flourished *Gildas* the Poet, distinguished

(f) *Engl. Hist. Library. Part I. Ch. 3.* (g) *Hist. Brit. Cap. 44.* (h) *Humph. Lhwyd Com. Brit. Descript.* (i) *Pricei Hist. Britan. Defens. p. 59.*

guished from the Historian by the Surname of *Cambricus*, who according to *Ponticus Virunnius*, translated from Greek into Latin, the Verses at the Beginning of this (k) History, which contain the Prayer of *Brutus* to *Diana*, and her Answer to him, and wherein *Brutus* is expressly named. And though there are not now remaining among us any Copies of the Poems of this Author, yet I see no great Reason to doubt that some of them were preserved in Italy, since *Ponticus Virunnius* (l) mentions his Poem, entituled *Cambreis*, and quotes a Verse out of the fifth Book of his Epigrams, as the genuine Works of *Gildas*. He is also mention'd by *Lilius Gregorius Gyraldas*; out of whose fifth Dialogue *De Poetarum Historia Leland* (m) quotes this Passage; *Gildam etiam memini me legere Britannicum Poetam, his ut puto longe antiquiorem, cuius tum mihi Elegiacum carmen mirâ facilitate conscriptum visum fuit, nec adeo aspernabile; quem postea etiam citatum reperi in pervetere Britannicâ Historiâ.* But whatever may be the Judgment of Learned Men concerning this Point, *Leland*, who was himself no contemptible Poet, is very positive these Verses were none of *Jeffrey's* Composition:

d 2

Refe-

(k) B. I. Ch. 12. (l) *Virun. Britannicæ Hist. L. IV.* (m) *Comment. de Scriptor. Brit.*

*Referunt enim, says he, (n) aureâ fluentes  
venâ antiquitatis inimitabilem quandam cum  
eloquentiam, tum majestatem, qualem Gallo-  
fridus poeta suo tempore minime malus, —  
cum admiratione facilius potuit suspicere quam  
felicius exprimere.* And *Milton*, a Poet of  
much greater Name than he, (o) owns,  
“ That the *Latin* Verses are much better  
“ than for the Age of *Jeffrey ap Arthur*,  
“ unless perhaps *Joseph of Exeter*, the only  
“ smooth Poet of those Times befriended  
“ him.” But here *Milton* was out in his  
Chronology; for *Joseph of Exeter* did not  
flourish before the Reign of *Richard the*  
*First*, which was long after *Jeffrey’s* Death.  
Admitting then these Verses to carry in  
them a Vein of Antiquity, too elegant and  
smooth for any Monkish Production, as  
they certainly do, I see no great Reason  
to question *Virunnius’s* Account of them,  
nor consequently to doubt that the Name  
of *Brutus*, the Founder of the *British* Race,  
was known in this Island at least a Thou-  
sand Years before *Jeffrey’s* Time.

XXVIII. The Testimonies I have al-  
ready produced are I think sufficient to  
confute the Argument of *Camden’s* Learned  
Men, that the Name of *Brutus* was en-  
tirely the Invention of *Jeffrey of Monmouth*.  
Time

---

(n) Vide *Sheringham de Angl. gentis Orig.* p. 387. (o)  
*Milton’s Hist. of Britain*, B. I.

Time has made such Destruction of Books and the Records of Antiquity, that I know it will be thought ridiculous to pretend, that any Author before the Time of *Claudius* mentions the Name of *Brutus*. It will be in vain therefore to alledge from *Pitts*, (p) that *Nennius* the Brother of *Cassibellaun*, upon Occasion of a Quarrel between him and *Lud* mention'd in this (q) History, for Fear the Memory of *Troy* should be lost in this Island, compos'd a Book in the Language of his Country, which the above-mention'd *Nennius* Abbot of *Bangor* translated into *Latin*, wherein he largely described the Actions of the *Britains*, and their first Entrance into this Island. And to as little Purpose did the Learned *Caius*, Founder of *Caius* College at *Cambridge*, shew from *Stow* and *Languet*, (r) that *Gurguntius* the *British* King, did above three hundred Years before *Christ*, compose his *Deflorationes historiae Britannicæ*, from which *Jeffrey's* History was partly compiled. The learned Men of the sixteenth Century might have Credulity enough to deliver such Stories : But it seems some of our more modern Criticks, who have discovered more of Antiquity by their own Sagacity, than

---

(p) *De illustr. Script. Britan.* (q) *E. I. Ch. 17.* (r) *Caius de antiqu. Cantabr. L. 1.*

than our learned Ancestors were able to do by Records and Monuments, laugh at these as idle Inventions. Notwithstanding there is no Man can pretend to justify the Catalogue of *British* Writers and Books which *Bale* and *Pitts* give us, before the Times of the *Romans*. *Pitts* begins with *Brutus* himself for an Author, because of his Epistle to *Phœdrasus*, which is inserted in this History: But as for his Epistles to the banished *Trojans*, exhorting them to seek some new Place of Settlement, which were pretended to have been translated by *Gildas* the Poet, from *Greek* into *Latin*, and reported to be yet extant in a Manuscript at *Baliol* College in *Oxford*, that upon Enquiry is found to be a Mistake. For a learned Friend, whom I desired to make the Enquiry, has inform'd me, That there is indeed a very fine Manuscript of *Brutus's* Epistles in *Latin*; but if the Original of them was not altogether spurious, and the Fiction of some *Greek* Sophist, they must have been written by the *Roman* and not the *Trojan Brutus*; the Matter of them shewing, that they were written to the People of *Pergamos*, to beg their Assistance towards maintaining the Wars in *Italy*. But what Ruin soever Time may have made of Books, it has not yet been able to destroy the Traditions concerning those ancient Times, and especially concerning the

the Memory of this great Founder of the *British* Nation; as is evident from the general and certain Knowledge the *Welsh* are still famous for in the Genealogies of their great Families, which they deduce in a continual Series from the most ancient to the present Times. And that this universal Tradition of the *Welsh*, has a higher Original than the History published by *Jeffrey*, is evident from *Giraldus Cambrensis*; who, though contemporary with *Jeffrey*, says, (f) "That in his Time the *Welsh* Bards and Singers could repeat by Heart from their ancient and authentick Books, the Genealogy of their Princes from *Roderic* the Great to *Belin* the Great, and from him to *Sylvius*, *Ascanius*, and *Aeneas*, and from *Aeneas* lineally carry up their Pedegree to *Adam*." And accordingly *Mr. Wynne* in the Appendix to his History of *Wales*, has given us the Pedegree of King *Henry VII*, as drawn by the Commissioners appointed by this Prince for that Purpose; wherein they make him the Descendent of *Brutus*, in the Hundredth Degree, and reckon in the Line of Descent most of the ancient *British* Kings mention'd in this History, though

(f) *Gyrald. descript Camb. Cap. 3. apud Camdeni Angl. Norman.*

not taken from hence, but (as they profess) from the old Chronicles of *Wales*.

XXIX. All these Authorities being considered, together with what yet remains to be said concerning the *British* History it self, will render it needless to say much concerning another Allegation *Camden's* learned Men offer against *Jeffrey's* Integrity, viz. (1) That he seems to have contrived this Founder of the *British* Nation, in Imitation of *Hunnibaldus*, a foolish Writer, who in a barbarous and ignorant Age feigned his *Francio* a *Trojan*, and Son of *Priamus*, to be the Founder of the *French* Nation. And this they think the more probable, because about the same Time that *Brutus* was first named, which according to them was not before *Jeffrey's* Time, other Nations, that they might rival each other in Glory, invented their counterfeit Hero's for their several Founders. For of this, though a specious Allegation to captivate the Reader, it is a sufficient Confutation, to have shewn already that the Name of *Brutus* the *British* Founder, was well known and recorded in Books extant several Hundreds of Years before the Time either of *Jeffrey* or *Hunnibaldus*. The Objection in short is no more than this, That

---

(1) *Britan.* P. VII.

---

*The PREFACE.*      lvii

---

That as of old, Nations had Recourse to *Hercules*, in latter Ages to the *Trojans* for their Originals, and several of them falsely; therefore none of them truly: And I do not see why the *Romans* may not be deny'd their Pretensions for the same Reason. It might perhaps have been more justly said, that the Fiction of *Hunnibaldus's* Hero, and of the other counterfeit Hero's *Camden* mentions, was made in Imitation of what the *Britains* related concerning their Founder. But it would be entring upon too large a Field of Antiquity, and too much digressing from our Subject, to consider this particularly. This however may be truly said, that the Notion of *Brutus* has been received with general Approbation in this Island for many Ages together, and but of late questioned, and even yet maintained by several of our most learned Men: Whereas the Fiction of *Hunnibaldus* was too gross, and carried too many palpable Marks of Forgery, ever to be received by the judicious. And in like Manner if other Nations for Want of Grounds to support their pretended Founders, are now ashamed of them; this is no Reason why the *Britains* should despise and destroy their most ancient Records, and give up what their Ancestors esteem'd the Honour of their Nation in a meer Compliment to Foreigners. And such  
were

---

lviii      *The PREFACE.*

---

were all the learned Men Camden (u) mentions as Enemies to our *British* Founder, viz. *Boccacius, Vives, Hadrianus Junius, Polydore, Buchanan, Vignier, Genebrardus, Molinæus, Bodinus* : But of the Writers of our own Nation, whose Authority in this Point would have been much more considerable, he had none to produce but *John of Warhamstede*. And he too, notwithstanding his Obscurity in the learned World, yet being the first Person that could raise Objections against the Story of *Brutus*, must be stiled a Man of excellent Judgment. I might take Notice also how much *Camden's* learned Men are mistaken in Chronology. For Instance, The Story of *Geythelms* and *Scota* Foundress of the *Scotch* Nation, may for ought I know be an Invention; but certainly of much ancients Date than *Jeffrey's* Time, since it is mentioned by so ancient a Writer as *Nennius*. (x) But these Things would lead me too far from my Subject.

XXX. If any one shall object against this Book's lying so long concealed, and think it a Ground for suspecting *Jeffrey* guilty of Forgery, that so curious a History of the *British* Affairs should meet with no Body to publish it before *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth* : Let it be

---

(u) *Britan.* P. VIII. (x) *Histor. Britonum.* Cap. 9.

be considered, that it has been the Fortune of many valuable Books to lay a long Time concealed. One pertinent Instance of this we have in that most polite Historian *Quintus Curtius*, who was wholly unknown to the learned World, or at least (y) mentioned by no Author, till near a thousand Years after his own Time: And yet his Book is esteemed both a genuine and faithful History of the Actions of *Alexander the Great*. And all Circumstances considered, it is no great Wonder, that the History of the *Britains* lay so long concealed from the *English*, who till near the Time this Book was published, were so far from being curious about the Original or History of the *Britains*, that they knew but very little of their own Ancestors the *Saxons*, saving what they found in *Bede*. Let it be also considered, that this was an Interval of Time, wherein all kind of Learning was at the lowest Ebb over all *Europe*; that the Affairs of *England* were in a very distracted Condition, by the continual Contests between the *English* and *Danes*; that the Universities were in the same low State by Reason of the *Danish* Fury and Barbarity, so that very few Writers appeared; and that upon the Settlement of Affairs after the Conquest, when

---

(y) Vide *Præfat.* in *Q. Curt.* per *Tellier*.

when the Study of Letters began somewhat to revive, the *British* Language was still unknown, and among all those Historians that then at once appeared, *viz.* *Florence of Worcester*, *William of Malmesbury*, *Simeon Dunelmensis*, *Alfred of Beverley*, *Henry of Huntington*, and others, not one of them understood the *British* Tongue, nor was consequently capable of translating and publishing the *British* History, when at last it happened to be discovered, beside *Jeffrey of Monmouth*. And so far ought his Character to be from suffering upon this Score, that according to *Leland*, he was the only Person, who by his never to be enough commended Diligence, retrieved from Ruin a very considerable Part of the *British* Antiquity. And after all, though this History might then seem a new Discovery to the *English*, it was not so to the *Welsh*, who knew the greatest Part of it before.

XXXI. Upon considering all these Reasons, I will venture to acknowledge it my Opinion, that one Part of the Charge against the *British* History, *viz.* That it is wholly the Forgery of *Jeffrey of Monmouth*, is entirely groundless; and that upon this Score his Character has been very injuriously treated by some late Writers. But in the remaing Part of this Dissertation I will not pretend to engage as a Party. For to  
use

use *Camden's* Words, (z) " Shall one of my  
" mean Capacity presume to give Sentence  
" in a Point of so much Consequence ? I  
" refer the Controversy entirely to the  
" whole Body of learned Antiquaries ; and  
" leaving every Man freely to the Liberty  
" of his own Judgment, shall not be much  
" concerned at any ones Opinion. " I only  
desire with the same disinterested Freedom,  
to offer what has been or may be said  
by Way of Apology for this History, as he  
does the Reasons of learned Men to invalidate it.

XXXII. And in the first Place, the professed Advocates of this History think it improbable, that the Author of it, whoever he was, intended to obtrude upon the World a Romance for an ancient History, considering how much he has deviated from the *Roman* Historians, and that in several Particulars, wherein neither the Glory of his Country, nor the setting off and adorning his own Story, could tempt him to any such Conduct. For though it is a very common Thing for Writers, out of Partiality to their Country, to relate Things in a quite different Manner, from what Foreigners, and especially their Enemies (and such were the *Romans* to the *Britains*) have done, yet  
in

---

(z) *Britan.* P. VI.

in Matters of Indifference this Disagreement is less common. Where the *Roman* or other Historians were silent there might be room for Invention; but elsewhere nothing could have added more Authority to a feigned History, than to have copied after Authors of established Credit, when there was no Temptation to swerve from them. And therefore this very Disagreement with *Roman* Authors, which is the chief Argument made Use of against the *British* History, is rather an Argument for it, that it was extracted more from *British* than from *Roman* Authors; which though now lost, were in all Probability extant when this History was compil'd. For if it had been compil'd out of *Roman* Authors, why should the Historian have varied from them in so indifferent a Matter as the Names of Persons? As *Androgeus* for *Mandubratius*, *Tenuantius* for *Immanuentius*, *Labienus* for *Laberius*, *Kymbelinus* for *Cunobellinus*, and the like; not to mention those Variations that are easily accounted for from the different Orthography and Pronunciation of the *Britains* and *Romans*; as *Cassivellaun* for *Cassibellaun*, and on the contrary *Trinovantum* for *Trinobantum*. Or why should the *British* Historian make *Tenuantius* or *Immanuentius* the Brother, whom *Cesar* calls the Father of *Androgeus* or *Mandubratius*? As it is conjectured therefore that the Variation found in these mi-

nute and indifferent Matters, was owing chiefly to the Authors copying after *British* Writers; so those that attempt to reconcile this History with the *Roman* Historians, make the Difference between the *British* and *Roman* Names of Persons and Places, the chief Foundation of their Conjectures towards it.

XXXIII. In other Places where the Difference is irreconcilable, they esteem it too great a Partiality to the *Roman* Writers, to think them always in the Right, or that whatever is related here inconsistent with their Accounts of Things, must needs be the Authors own Invention. For the chief Intention of the *Roman* Writers is to celebrate the Exploits of their own People; and that a Fondness for their own Glory has carried them sometimes beyond the Bounds of Truth, should be no difficult Concession. But especially about the Affairs of other Nations, wherein they themselves had no immediate Concerns, they may be allowed to write but very transiently, and often from remote and uncertain Relations. Indeed the Sum of the Story here and in the *Roman* Writers is the same, though they often vary in the Names, Circumstances, and sometimes Events of Things. Thus with Respect to *Cæsar's* Attempt upon this Island, we find here the Substance of his own Story, *viz.* That he made a Descent upon

upon *Britain* ; that *Cassibellaun* was Commander in the War against him ; that his first Expedition was unsuccessful ; that upon his Return again he found a great Army of the *Britains* drawn up upon the Banks of the *Thames*, at the Bottom whereof they had fastened sharp Stakes to render his Passage more difficult ; that after this *Androgeus* desired his Protection against *Cassibellaun* ; and in the Conclusion that *Cassibellaun* moved by his Revolt offered to surrender, and make the Island tributary. Though in the Circumstances of the Story, several Things are mentioned here which *Cæsar* has omitted ; as the Exploits of *Nennius*, *Cassibellaun's* Sacrifice, the Quarrel between *Hirelglas* and *Evelinus*, the Occasion of the Revolt of *Androgeus*, and his treacherous Conduct afterwards to his own Countrymen. Some of these he might omit through Ignorance, some as not pertinent to his Story, and others as not for his Honour to mention. But to say they are all feigned because not mentioned by him, is rather an Effect of Prejudice than just Reasoning. The *Roman* Writers themselves are more impartial. *Asinius Pollio*, (a) thought his Commentaries writ with little either of Diligence or Truth ; and blamed his Credulity in most Things that were transacted

---

(a) *Vide Sueton. de Vita. J. Cæs. Cap. 56.*

acted by others, and his erroneous Account, either through Design or Forgetfulness, of what he did himself. And *Lucan* (b) so far countenances our Author, as to say with him, that *Cæsar's* first Departure from the Island was a downright Flight; a Thing which *Cæsar* himself thought very proper to conceal, and by a long Circuit of artful Words to substitute instead of it, (c) that he hastened his Return to *Gaul*, on Account of his Ships that had been shattered by a Tempest. And upon the whole Matter, that *Cæsar's* Success in this Island was not near so great as he himself makes it, we have the Testimony of that grave and faithful Historian *Tacitus*, who says, (d) *That he did not conquer Britain, but only shew'd it to the Romans.*

XXXIV. But in some other Parts of the History, the Difference is much more wide, wherein the Authority of the Roman Historians is justly preferred. For Instance; what is here said concerning the Sons and Successors of *Kymbelinus*, viz. *Guiderius* and *Arviragus*, as also concerning *L. Hamo*, or of the Exploits of *Claudius* and his so long Continuance in this Island, or of *Arviragus* marrying *Genuissa* the Daughter of *Claudius*, and the like, ought not to be regarded so much

e

as

(b) *Pharsalia*. Lib. 2. (c) *Cæsar de bello Gallico*. L. IV.  
(d) *Vita Fulij Agricolæ*.

as what the *Roman* Writers have delivered, who treat with much more Accuracy about the Transactions of those Times, with which these Accounts are hardly reconcileable. For the immediate Successors of *Cunobellinus* or *Kymbelinus*, were no doubt *Togodumnus* and *Caractacus* : And those that make *Togodumnus* the same with *Guiderius*, *Venusius* with *Arviragus*, and Queen *Cartismandua* with *Genuissa*, whom they suppose the adopted Daughter of *Claudius*, seem to be far from explaining this Difficulty. It is a more probable Conjecture, that these were other Sons of *Kymbelinus*, who might indeed succeed him in the Government, but not immediately, nor till after *Claudius* returned to *Rome* : So that there may be some Footsteps of Truth in this Story, but great Errors both in Chronology and other Circumstances mixt with it. But yet there is no Ground to censure all this for meer Invention, but rather such an irregular Account as the *Britains* were able to preserve of those Times of Distraction and Confusion. In the Reigns of the three following *British* Kings, viz. *Marius*, *Coillus*, and *Lucius*, our Author goes on undisturbed by the *Roman* Historians ; this being an Interval of Time, wherein the little Knowledge we have remaining of *British* Affairs, is preserved by him alone. But yet so many Testimonies are given of this Account by other succeeding Writers, both

both of our own and other Countries, and such Hints of it by *Bede* and others, that may be supposed nearly Contemporary with our Author, as the Reader may see in Archbishop *Usher's Primordia*, that there can be no great Reason to question the Truth of it. But only here, as in many other Points, Authors considerably differ in Chronology; and the most learned Prelate last mentioned (e) reckons up no less than twenty three Opinions, about that most remarkable Time when *Lucius* embraced the *Christian* Faith.

XXXV. But my Design being only to answer general Objections, I shall not attempt to enter into a Comparison of this with other Histories, or to shew particularly in what Instances it may be depended on, and in what not. This is too laborious and difficult a Work, and would make a large Volume; not to mention that, according (f) Dr. *Powel's* Opinion, it requires a perfect Knowledge of the *Welsh* Language: Besides that it has been already done in a great Measure in the Historical Collections made by our two most learned Antiquaries, (g) *Usher* and (h) *Stillingsfleet*; to which if we add *Leland's* (i) *Assertio Arthuri*, and what the Learned and Ingenious Sir *John Price*

e 2

---

(e) *Primordia*, Cap. 3. (f) *Epist. de Hist. Brit. rellig. intel. ligenda*. (g) *Primordia*. (h) *Origines Britannicae*. (i) Published at London. A. D. 1544.

---

lxviii      *The PREFACE.*

---

*Price* has writ, towards the establishing and clearing of (k) *Arthur's Story*, so far as it is justly defensible, there does not much remain to be said in Apology for the *British History*, as to what is related after *Caesar's Time*. But one general Objection is, That this History seems all along to represent this Island as a Monarchy, subject to a long Succession of *British Kings*; whereas it is manifest from the joint Testimonies of *Caesar*, *Tacitus*, *Dion Cassius*, and even *Gildas*, who was a *British* Writer himself, and the most ancient of any we have now extant, that the ancient *Britains* were subject to many Kings, and that the *Romans* at last reduced a good Part of the Island into the Form of a Province. To which it may be very well answered, that the principal Scope of this Author, is to give an Account of the Lineal Succession of *British Kings* from *Brutus* to *Cadwallader*, without Regard to their Extent of Territory, or the Actions of other Princes, that were not in this direct Succession. And yet at the same Time the Author acknowledges what this Objection contends for, by naming very frequently the Kings of *Cornwal*, *Albania*, *Demetia*, *Venedotia*, and other Places; though it was foreign to his Design, to relate the Actions or the Succession

---

(k) *Hist. Britan. Defens.* p. 109, &c.

sion of Princes in those several little Governments ; or to mention all the *Proprators* or *Quaestors*, that were from Time to Time sent hither by the *Roman* Emperors, to govern the Part that was their Province. So that it is no Wonder we have here no Account of the Transactions which *Dion Cassius*, and *Tacitus* have largely related, of such *British* Princes as were not in the Line of Succession. At the same Time we are also to take Notice of a Distinction he frequently makes Use of, *viz.* That though there were many Princes, there was but one crowned Head, to which the rest were in some Measure subordinate. And this is partly acknowledged by *Cæsar*, who says, (1) that the supreme Command was by the common Consent of the *British* Princes given to *Cassibellann*, the same whom our Author also places in the Line of *British* Monarchs. Now this is so far from being a contemptible or groundless Distinction, that upon it chiefly did that wise and great Prince King *Edward* the First, ground his Claim to a Jurisdiction over the Kingdom of *Scotland*. For he alledged that from all Antiquity, even from the Foundation of the *British* Monarchy under *Brutus*, the Kings of *Scotland*, and all the other Princes of the Island, had been subordinate to the Kings of *England* ;

---

(1) *De bello Gallico*. L. V.

as I shall have Occasion to shew more fully hereafter.

XXXVI. Another general Objection, which has been one great Cause of the present Prejudice against this History, is, that it is intermixed with several Stories that are very absurd and incredible. Now this is a Charge which none of its Advocates deny ; but they will not allow the Consequence drawn from it, that therefore these Stories, or even any other Part of the History, were the Invention of the Author : And they think it very great Partiality in learned Men, that they are so severe upon this Author for a Fault, which in the other Writers of that Time they so easily pardon. It is very well known that such fabulous and legendary Stories, were very well receiv'd in those credulous Times, and that the gravest Writers are not exempt from them. I have given one Instance of it already in *William of Newburgh*, and I could produce a vast Number more from *Bede*, *William of Malmesbury*, *Matthew Paris*, and other ancient Historians, which are now in greatest Credit among us. And *Alfred of Beverley*, who in his Abridgment of this History (m) proposes to leave out all that exceeded Belief, has

---

(m) *Alfredi Annales*. L. 1.

---

*The P R E F A C E.* lxxi

---

has notwithstanding inserted the Birth of *Merlin*, the Transformation of *Uther Pendragon*, and several of the most Romantick and incredible Exploits of King *Arthur*; after which I think he could have no great Reason, besides Brevity, for omitting the rest of this Strain. It is certain these Stories, how gross soever they may appear now, were very current Traditions among the *Welsh*, and perhaps too of such established Credit, that our Author or the Translator for him, thought he could not well dispense with the Omission of them, without incurring the Displeasure of his Countrymen. *Buchanan* (n) has told us the Rise or first Occasion of one of these gross Traditions, viz. *Uther's* Transformation; which was, that he seeing the Infamy reflecting on him by Reason of his Wife *Igern*a, could not be concealed; to the End he might extenuate it, they broached a Tale not much unlike that which had been acted in Theatres, about *Jupiter* and *Alcm*ena, That *Uther* by the Art of *Merlin* was changed into the Shape of *Gorlois*, and so had his first Night's Lodging with *Igern*a. And this Instance alone may suffice to shew, that these Tales were not invented at the Pleasure of the

e 4

Author,

---

(n) *Hist. rerum Scot.* L. V.

Author, as are those in Romances; but such as were then vulgarly believed, and handed down to Posterity.

XXXVII. But after all, the Prejudice this History at present lies under, with Respect to what it relates after the coming of *Cæsar*, is but inconsiderable, had the former Part of the Story been but omitted; for it is this chiefly that destroys the Credit of all the rest. The Objections of *Camden's* learned Men are levelled only against this Part; and the chief Intention of this Discourse is to apologize for it. " Their first Objection, says *Camden*, (o) " they draw from the Age wherein the " Things here related, are said to have " been done, and peremptorily assert that " all is purely fabulous (the sacred Histories excepted) whatsoever is delivered " by Historians, as done before the first " Olympiad, *i. e.* the Year 770 before the " Birth of our Saviour. Now the Things " which are told us, concerning *Brutus*, " preceed that Period by above three hundred Years. This Exception they ground " upon the Authority of *Varro*, the most " Learned among the *Roman* Writers, with " whom the first Period of Time, which " was from the Creation to the Deluge, " bears

---

(o) *Britannia*. l. VI.

---

The PREFACE. lxxiii

---

“ bears the Title of Ἀσχυλον, *i. e.* obscure  
“ and uncertain, so called from our Ignorance of the Transactions of those Times.  
“ The second which was from the Deluge  
“ to the first Olympiad, he calls Μυθικόν,  
“ *i. e.* fabulous, because most of those Histories are fabulous, even of the Greek  
“ and Roman Authors, the learned Part of the World, much more among a barbarous and unlearned People, such as were  
“ doubtless, in those Times, all the Inhabitants of these Northern Parts. ” But  
this Objection unfairly represents Varro's Notion; who (*p*) does not say, that most of the Histories of the *Muthick* Age, but only that many Things related in it are fabulous; and much less does he draw such a Consequence or rather Inconsistency from it, as that all is purely fabulous whatsoever is delivered by Historians before the first Olympiad; thus contrary to all the Rules of Logick making the Conclusion more extensive than the Premises. What he chiefly intended was no Doubt the Fables invented by Greek Poets, concerning their Gods and Hero's, in which notwithstanding are preserved some Lines of true History, and at the same Time are couched (according to the Opinion of very learned Men)

---

(*p*) See *Censorinus de die natali*. Cap. 21.

Men) the Mysteries of all Philosophy. But even the true History (setting apart all Fables) of *Greece* it self is, by the Consent of all Writers, allowed to be much antienter than the *Olympiads*; and much antienter still is what they called the *Barbarick* History, viz. of the *Egyptians*, *Scythians*, *Chaldeans*, *Phenicians*, and some other Nations. Otherwise in vain do we set so great a Value upon what *Herodotus*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Justin* and others, who would not be thought Writers of Fables, have delivered concerning those ancient Times.

XXXVIII. And as to the Northern Nations, among whom this Objection supposes a greater Barbarity and Ignorance reigned, it is well known that the *Swedes*, the most Northern of *European* Nations, and most remote from the ancient Seats of Knowledge, pretend to run up their History to the Deluge, or at least to *Eric* the First, whom they suppose to have lived within two hundred Years after it. But let it be granted, that the Vanity of Nations in boasting the Antiquity of their Original, may have carried them into an excessive and unwarrantable Credulity; the People of this Nation at least seem to have a plausible Pretence to some Knowledge of their Original, and of the Transactions of those more ancient Times, since (as I shall presently shew) they

---

*The P R E F A C E.* lxxv

---

they always had among them Men of great Attainments in the most sublime Parts of Knowledge. Admitting also that the Story of those Times is very imperfect, and intermixt with Fables, it is too great a Disregard of Antiquity, to give it up entirely, and represent all that vast Tract of Time as a meer *Chaos*. For that grave and excellent Historian *Livy*, though he (q) owns himself in Suspence, and would neither undertake to assert nor confute, what had been deliver'd concerning the *Roman* History before the Building of *Rome*, as being Traditions which he says are founded rather upon Poetical Fables, than any uncorrupt Monuments of the Actions that were done, did not however think it below him to relate them such as they were. But *Camden* on the contrary (r) builds so much upon the Authority of this misrepresented Notion of *Varro*, concerning the three distinct Periods of Time, that for our Affairs he has assigned a much shorter Period, and would not have our Historians begin their Histories of this Island any higher than *Cesar's* Attempt upon it. And thus he not only excludes the whole List of ancient *British* Kings, but also those of *Scotland* too from the Time  
of

---

(q) *Liv. Præfat. ad Hist.* (r) *Britannia.* p. xxxviii.

---

lxxvi    *The PREFACE.*

---

of King *Fergus*, who was contemporary with *Alexander the Great*; a Crime which the *Scots* will not easily forgive him, who pretend to have very authentick Accounts of their Affairs from the Reign of that Prince, and upon them build (what they so much value themselves upon) the Antiquity of their Royal Line. And though this Advice of *Camden* has been followed by the Generality of our Historians since his Time; yet *Milton* gives no contemptible Reasons for his own Conduct in pursuing the old beaten Tract, by alledging (f) that we cannot be easily discharg'd of *Brutus* and his Line, with the whole Progeny of Kings, to the Entrance of *Julius Caesar*; since it is a Story supported by Descents of Ancestry, and long continued Laws and Exploits, not plainly seeming to be borrowed or devised, which on the common Belief, have wrought no small Impression; and also defended by many, and deny'd utterly by few. And he concludes with saying, " These old and inborn Names of  
" successive Kings, never any to have been  
" real Persons, or done in their Lives at  
" least some Part of what hath been so  
" long remembred, cannot be thought  
" without too strict an Incredulity.

XXXIX.

---

(f) *Milton's Hist. of Britain.* B. I.

---

The PREFACE. lxxvii

---

XXXIX. But in the next Place, *Camden's* learned Men alledge, (1) " That this  
" Relation, *viz.* of *Brutus* and his Suc-  
" cessors in those ancient Times, is not  
" confirmed by the Authority of any pro-  
" per Writer, which in all History must  
" be allow'd to be the Thing most mate-  
" rial. Now they call those proper Wri-  
" ters, who have Antiquity and Learning  
" agreeable ; and in Proportion to those  
" they give more or less Credit. But to  
" all this sort of Authors, as well as to the  
" ancient *Britains* themselves, they confi-  
" dently aver, that the very Name of  
" *Brutus* was perfectly unknown." And  
some have carried this Objection still far-  
ther, by representing the ancient *Britains*  
as a rude, simple, and ignorant People,  
and consequently incapable of transmitting  
the Memory of their Original, or of the  
Transactions of their Times to Posterity.  
In Answer to this, I have shewn already,  
that the Memory of *Brutus* was preserved  
by a *British* Writer as ancient as the Days  
of *Claudius* the Emperor ; and also have  
given Instances of some other Writers that  
are yet extant, by whom it was transmit-  
ted to after Ages. And it has been shewn  
by the Advocates of the *British* History,  
that

---

(1) *Britann.* p. VII.

that it is unreasonable to expect Authors of much greater Antiquity for Vouchers of this Story. For the Beginning of these Transactions was but a few Years after the Destruction of *Troy*, when *Greece* itself had none that could be properly call'd Historians, and only a few Poets, who sung the Praises of their Gods and Hero's. And as the Historians of *Greece* derived their Knowledge of those ancient Times from them; so it is probable the first *British* Historians, whoever they were, took their first Memoirs from the Songs of their *Bards*, whose Business, in like Manner as that of the ancient *Grecian* Poets, was to make Enquiry into the Genealogies and noble Exploits of their great Men, to celebrate them in Heroick Verse, and sing them to their Harps. It would be needless to shew the Antiquity of this Order of Men among the *Britains*, since it is acknowledged by all: And it has been through all succeeding Ages kept up among them, and not yet quite wore out among the *Welsh*.

XL. But besides these Songs of the *Bards*, which all the *Welsh* Writers agree gave an Account of *Brutus* and the succeeding *British* Kings, the Author of this History quotes other Historians, extant before his own Time, for some Part of what he relates. And it is thought the whole History is only a Collection from the Songs of the *Bards*, the Writings

---

*The PREFACE.*      lxxix

---

Writings of *Gildas*, and other *British* Historians. And though these Histories are not now to be found, the Author ought no more to be charged with Forgery or Invention upon that Score, than is *Herodotus* or any other ancient Historian, who at present wants Vouchers as well as he, the former Writers concerning those Times being now lost. And we may upon the same Grounds look upon the History of *Alexander* the Great as a Romance, because the Writers of it, viz. *Curtius*, *Plutarch* and *Arrian*, did not live till several Hundred Years after his Death, and nothing now remains of those ancients Writers from whom they collected it. That there was such a *British* Writer as *Gildas*, who treated of the Contention between *Lud* and *Nennius*, who translated the *Molmutian* Laws out of *British* into *Latin*, and also related other Particulars about the Times before the coming of *Cesar*, and that he was a different Person from *Gildas Sapiens*, cannot reasonable be doubted. The Words of *Nennius* already quoted, shew the ancient *Britains* had both Writings and Traditions concerning their Affairs, and it was from them he extracted his Account of *Brutus*. Why may it not then be thought, that *Gildas* was one of those Writers, especially since some of his Pieces now lost are mentioned by *Hoveden*, *Lilins* *Giraldus*, and *Virunnius*,

---

lxxx The PREFACE.

---

*Virunnius*, and that we have the joint Testimonies of *Leland*, *Bale*, and *Pitts*, that the Treatises ascribed to him in this History were his genuine Works? But in Opposition to all this *Camden* alledges, that the other *Gildas*, surnamed *Sapiens*, who was a *Britain*, and whose small Treatise *de Excidio Britannia* is yet extant, (u) “ declares himself not well satisfied whether the ancient *Britains* had any Records or Writings at all, wherein they had transmitted their History and Original to Posterity. And therefore he plainly confesses, (x) That he took all out of Foreign Writers, and not out of any Writings or Records left by his own Countrymen. For if there had been any such, they were in his Time quite lost, having either been burnt by the Enemy at Home, or carried away by the Exiles into Foreign Parts.” Now admitting this Testimony of *Gildas*, what hinders but that even according to him there might have been some Pieces of the ancient *British* History carried over into Foreign Countries? For this *British* History it self, though writ after the Time of *Gildas*, was brought from *Armorica*, and perhaps originally compiled there

---

(u) *Britann.* p. VII. (x) *Hist. Gildas*, Cap. 2. apud Gale *Hist. Brit. Scriptores* 15.

---

*The* PREFACE. lxxxī

---

there out of ancients Writers, which according to this Testimony might have been carried abroad, and most likely of all to *Armorica* the Seat of the *British* Exiles. Admitting, again, that on Account of the long Wars and Confusions in *Britain*, by the Invasions of the *Romans*, *Picts*, and *Saxons*, great Destruction had been made of Books, Records and Monuments, from whence their History might be deduced; must therefore so much Authority be allowed to the Testimony of this one Man, as to conclude there were none extant, only because they did not come to his Knowledge? Though he had not met with any such in *Britain*, *Nennius* who was his Junior (y) declares he had. It is farther observable, that this is no positive Evidence: He only doubts whether there had been any such Writings or no; for otherwise why does he talk of their being burnt, or destroy'd, or carry'd off into Foreign Countries? But after all there is no great Stress to be laid upon his Testimony: For *Leland's* Character of him seems to me to be very just, (z) That he was indeed a pious Monk, and a learned Divine, but was so far from having a thorough Knowledge of the ancient Affairs

f of

---

(y) *Nennij Prefat. in Hist. Brit.* (z) *Leland Comment. de Script. Brit.*

---

lxxxii    *The P R E F A C E*

---

of *Britain*, that he has only inserted in his little Book a few Things, and those short, obscure and confused, and, as it were, taken off from the Surface.

XLI. And therefore it is unreasonably objected by (a) *Polydore Virgil*, and (b) *Aylet Sammes*, that the former Part of this History relating to *Brutus* and the *British* Kings must be groundless, because of the Silence of this Author concerning them. For in the first Place it is plain to any one that reads his Book, that his Design was not so much to write the History, as to relate the Calamities of his Country, the better to expose the Vices and notorious Wickedness of his Countrymen, and to shew how justly they had brought those divine Judgments upon themselves. The chief Subject of his Book, is in short a very severe Invective against his own Countrymen, and what is historical in him is but an inconsiderable Part of his small Treatise. But besides he professes, (c) that he purposely omits mentioning what had passed in *Britain* before the Time of the *Romans*, and it is only concerning the State of *Britain* after the Invasion of the *Romans*, that he uses the Words *Camden* quotes out of him.

---

(a) *Anglica Historia*. Lib. I. (b) *Britannia antiqua illustrata*. (c) *Gildæ Hist.* Cap. 2.

---

*The PREFACE.* lxxxiii

---

him; from whence therefore no Conclusion can be drawn concerning the Books, the Histories, or the Learning of the *Britains* before that Time.

XLII. There are however very authentic Testimonies concerning the Learning of the ancient *Britains*, especially among the *Druids*. And though the *Roman* Eloquence and Politeness was not introduced among them till the Time of *Julius Agricola*, yet it is plain from the Confession of the *Roman* Writers themselves, that as they were a gallant and brave, so were many of them a wise and knowing People, and had from of old been much celebrated for their Attainments in the most solid and useful Parts of Knowledge. The Account *Cæsar* gives of the *Druids* is a sufficient Proof of this; since according to him (d) they were the Interpreters of the Mysteries of Religion, the Instructors of the Youth, the Determiners of all publick and private Controversies, as also of Rewards and Punishments, and great Proficients in the most sublime Parts of Philosophy, being such as could make Discourses to their Scholars, concerning the Stars and their Motions, concerning the Magnitude of the Heaven and the Earth,

f 2

the

---

(d) *Cæsar de bello Gallico. l. VI.*

---

lxxxiv    *The PREFACE.*

---

the Nature of Things, and the Power and Majesty of the immortal Gods. And that Men so curious and knowing in other Things, should be ignorant of one of the most useful Parts of Learning, the History of their own Affairs, or that they should leave no Kind of Memoirs concerning the Transactions of their Times, cannot with any Colour of Reason be pretended. It is indeed alledged by some from this very Passage of *Cæsar*, that they did not commit their Knowledge to Writing, so that we can have but oral Tradition at the best for any Knowledge we pretend to of those Times. But the Reader may presently be satisfied of the Insufficiency of this Argument, by consulting the Passage it self from whence it appears, that indeed the Mysteries of their Religion they did not commit to Writing, but caused their Scholars to learn them by Heart; though in all other Matters both publick and private (among which we may justly reckon the History of their Affairs) they used Greek Characters. And if the *Britains* were capable, and had the Means of transmitting their History to Posterity, before the Time of the *Romans*, how much more ought we to conclude this of them afterwards, when the *Roman* Arts and Eloquence came to be in Vogue among them? So that without pretending to give a Catalogue of the

Write

---

The PREFACE. lxxxv

---

Writers in those ancient Times, as *Leland*, *Bale*, and *Pitts*, have done, it is sufficient for our present Purpose to have shewn, that in all Probability they had Writers, and those of History too among them.

XLIII. But then here immediately follows another grand Objection, That if the Memory of *Brutus*, or of the *Britains* being originally *Trojans*, had been thus constantly preserved, it can hardly be supposed, but that so curious and learned a Person as *Cæsar*, or at least some of the *Roman* Writers would have made mention of it: Whereas in these Points there is among all of them a profound Silence, and rather an Intimation to the contrary, that the *Britains* were either *Aborigines*, or Descendents of the *Gauls*. As to *Cæsar's* Silence it is answered, that the Stay he made in *Britain* was short, and that Time spent in Affairs of greater importance than such Matters of Curiosity; that he neither understood the Language of the *Britains*, nor perhaps thought such a People as were then reputed Barbarians, capable of giving any Account of their History or Original, or if they did, had little regard to it; that he composed his Commentaries a long Time after his leaving *Britain*, when his Invention was to help him out where his Memory failed him, and so propose his Conjectures (suitable to the Notions of the *Pagans*) concerning the Original,

f 3

---

lxxxvi    *The P R E F A C E*

---

ginal, instead of giving any well grounded History of the *Britains*; and lastly, that his Commentaries themselves were censured by *Asinius Pollio*, as being writ neither with Diligence nor Truth. And as to all the other *Roman* Writers, it does not appear that any of them had ever been in *Britain*, but that they had taken their Accounts of *British* Affairs from such Memoirs, as had been from Time to Time transmitted to the Emperors by the chief Officers in this Province, if they even had so good Authority as this for what they writ; and it is not to be presumed that these Officers entertained their Masters with such Curiosities, as the ancient History of the *Britains*, but only informed them of what immediately concerned the State of their own Affairs. So that where we find the *Roman* Writers digress so far from their Subject, as to treat of the Original of the *Britains*, we may conclude they had no other Authority for what they said but their own Conjectures, or at best some very uncertain Reports. We find by the false Accounts (e) *Tacitus* and (f) *Justin* have given of the Original and Encrease of the *Jews*, what little Dependance is to be placed

---

(e) *Historiarum*, Lib. 5.    (f) *Pompeij Trogi Epitome Hist.* L. 36.

---

*The PREFACE.* lxxxvii

---

ced on what they relate concerning distant Countries, when those Relations are foreign to the Subject of their own Affairs. And if so great an Historian as *Tacitus* committed such Errors concerning the Original of so ancient and famous a Nation as that of the *Jews*, and that a Time when there were a great Number of that Nation at *Rome*, by whom he might have been better informed; we cannot reasonably expect from him, and much less from the other *Roman* Writers, who were of a far lower Class, any authentick Account concerning the more obscure, the more remote, and but lately discovered Nation of the *Britains*, and whereof very few if any beside Captives and Hostages were in their Times at *Rome* to give them better Information. Now as we believe the *Jews* in the Subject of their own Affairs more than the *Romans*; and since there were among the *Britains* People as capable of writing their own History as the *Romans*, what Reason can be given why in *British* Affairs *Roman* Authors are now solely consulted, and the Writings and Traditions of the ancient *Britains* wholly neglected and despised?

XLIV. To this perhaps it will be answered, that the very Foundation of this History, which is the Story of *Brutus*, is inconsistent with what *Roman* Writers,

(who in this Point at least must be allowed a greater Authority,) have delivered concerning the Children and Descendents of *Aeneas*; and consequently that the Superstructure may be justly suspected. For the Roman Historians, and especially *Livy*, *Mesala Corvinus*, and *Dionysius Halicarnassensis*, who have been most exact in their Accounts of those ancient Times, make no Mention of *Brutus* the Son of *Sylvius* King of the *Latins*. And it is the Objection of *John of Wethamstede*, that (g) *Man of excellent Judgment*, the first Opposer of the Story of *Brutus*, that *Ascanius*, according to several Authors, had no Son whose proper Name was *Sylvius*. For they give us an Account of but one that ever he had, to wit, *Julius*, from whom afterward the *Julian* Family had its Original. But to all this *Sir John Price* (h) has very well answered, That though the Roman Writers make no mention of *Brutus* the Son of *Sylvius*; yet we ought not to pay so much Deference to their Authority, as to argue, that whatever they have passed over in Silence concerning Matters, whereof indeed they do not profess to treat, must be false and groundless. For it being the chief

Business

---

(g) *Cand. Britan.* P. VIII.      (h) *Hist. Britan. Defens.*  
P. 42.

---

The PREFACE. lxxxix

---

Business of those Authors, only to mention those of the Royal Race who succeeded to the Kingdom of *Italy*, it was foreign to their Purpose to relate what other Children they had. And even this Point itself of the direct Succession of their Princes, was a Matter of so great Antiquity and Obscurity, that they do not agree, whether *Sylvius*, who, we say, was the Father of *Brutus*, was the Son or Grandson of *Aeneas*. And if they were uncertain of the Matter of which they professedly treat, we cannot expect much Light from them concerning *Brutus* or any other collateral Children, whom they had no Occasion to mention. Notwithstanding this hinders not, but that the *Britains* might have more carefully transmitted to Posterity the Memory of their illustrious Founder.

XLV. *Buchanan's* Objections will give us no great Trouble, most of them being Chimerical and foreign to the Subject, though proposed by him with an Air of Triumph. He pretends to confute the Story of *Brutus* by the Circumstances of it; a very improper Undertaking for one who knew so little of it, and in all Probability (as *Sheringham* (i) observes) had never read it. Neither do its Advocates contend for the Truth of

---

(i) *De Angl. Orig.* P. 134.

of all its Circumstances, some of them allowing that it is set off and adorned with a Mixture of Poetical Fiction, but yet so as that there is a Foundation of Truth, which is even allow'd in most Poems and Romances. He begins with Queries, that evidently shew his Ignorance of the Story; viz. (k) With what Forces, with what Commerce of Language could this *Brutus*, whom he stiles the *Parricide*, penetrate so far into *Britain*? And again, Whether came he by Land or by Sea? The History itself is clear enough in all these Points; and his Business was to confute the Relation as it really is, and not to start Objections against a Story of *Brutus*, that he had only form'd in his own Imagination. But his Endeavour is to shew how difficult it was for *Brutus* to cross the *Alps*, as supposing him to come directly from *Italy*; how improbable that such a wild sort of People as the *Alban* Shepherds, whom he fancies to have been *Brutus's* Followers, would undertake such a bold Attempt, especially when the Affairs of *Italy* were at so low an Ebb; and how unlikely they should come so soon to forget their native *Latin* Tongue. Whereas had he but known so much of the Story, as that *Brutus* had been

(k) *Buchanan Rerum Scotticarum Hist.* L. 2.

been banished into *Greece*; that he came from thence attended, not with *Alban* Shepherds, but the exiled *Trojans* of that Country; that his Voyage to *Britain* was by Sea; and that their Language was a Dialect of the *Greek*, whereof there is a great Mixture in the *Welsh* Tongue to this Day; all this Trouble would have been saved, and perhaps he would not have thought any Attempt too hazardous for Men in their desperate Circumstances. And this very Consideration would have solved the Difficulty he objects about their coming by Sea, unless he deny'd also the Voyages of *Antenor*, *Aeneas* and *Ulysses*, which last is said by *Solinus* (l) to have come as far as this Island, as appeared by a Votive Altar in *Caledonia* inscribed with *Greek* Letters.

• and proved  
from Homer, that  
he coasted round  
the Island of  
Britain.

XLVI. He tells us farther, that he will not be nice in Enquiry why the Oracle of *Diana* was unknown to Posterity, when the Oracles of *Faunus*, of *Sibylla*, and the *Prænестine* Vaticinations were in so great Credit. But *Sheringham*, (m) who has been nice in Enquiry, has found that the Oracle of *Diana* was very well known to the *Greeks*, and that she was a Goddess worshipped by the *Trojans*, since according to *Strabo*, she

(l) *Polybistor*. Cap. 22. Edit. *Salmassij*. (m) *De Angl. Orig.* Cap. 6.

she (n) had an Oracle in *Cilicia*, as also in (o) *Adraſtia* a Town of *Troas*: Nay farther, that, according to *Pauſanias*, ſhe directed the baniſhed *Trojans* which Way to purſue, when they were in Queſt of a new Place of Settlement. Again, becauſe *Buchanan* had found the Prayer of *Brutus* to *Diana* and her Answer to him in *Latin* Verſe, he learnedly ſhews, that this was a Language not then underſtood in the World; which was all unneceſſary Labour, if he had but known, that the Original Compoſition was *Greek*, and that according to (p) *Virunnius* the Verſes were tranſlated out of *Greek* into *Latin*. But he ſuppoſes that when *Brutus* firſt arrived, according to the Answer of *Diana's* Oracle, the Iſland muſt have been uninhabited. A very plain Diſcovery, ſays he, of the Monks Forgery! For where then, I pray, were thoſe portentous Figments of *Gogmagog* and *Tintagol*, and other frightful Names of Men, invented for Terror ſhall I ſay, or Laughter rather? But where did he find this frightful Man *Tintagol* at *Brutus's* Arrival, or any Time elſe? The Truth is, this portentous Figment is nothing but the real Name of a Village in *Cornwal*, and that not mention'd before the

---

(n) *Strabo Geogr.* L. 15. (o) *Ibid.* Lib. 13. (p) *Britannica Hiſtor.* Lib. I.

---

*The PREFACE.*      xciii

---

the eighth Book of this History. But is not a confident Ignorance which commits such Blunders, much more ridiculous than any Absurdity in this Book? Taking it also for granted in his own Imagination, that the whole Number of *Brutus's* Followers would scarce make one mean Colony, he is not able to conceive how they should in the Space of twenty Years, people an Island the biggest in the World, and furnish it not only with Villages and Cities, but set up in it three large Kingdoms also, and in a little Time grow so numerous, that *Britain* could not contain them, but they were forced to transport themselves into the large Country of *Germany*. But how did he know they were so mean a Colony? The History tells us, that at their setting out from *Greece*, they made up a Fleet of three hundred and twenty four Sail, and that after this they were joined by *Corineus* and all his Followers, and that with all their Forces together they were able to oppose the whole Power of *Gaul*, before their Arrival here. And as for Villages and Cities he speaks of, we find here the Mention of no other City but *London*, during *Brutus's* Reign, nor ever any such Account as the Island being forced to disburthen it self when over-stock'd with Inhabitants. And yet, says he at last, that is, notwithstanding all these

these so pertinent and so strong Objections, *credulous shall I say? or not rather sottish Persons, do pride themselves with a pretended Eminency of Original, which none of their Neighbours will envy them for.*

XLVII. I have now, according to what I proposed, considered the most material Objections of *Camden* and other learned Men against this History; in all which (if we may rely on the Judgment of our most learned Antiquary *Sheringham*, who has made the deepest Research into the Original as well of the *British* as of the *English* Nation, and whose Treatise on this Subject is generally allowed to be the very best Performance of this Kind) there is nothing of any Moment to shake the Credit of the fundamental Part of this History. And as the same Author farther observes, there ought more Regard to be had to the ancient Histories of the *Britains*, than to the Dreams and Conjectures of modern Writers. For those that oppose this History, and look upon this Original of the *Britains* from *Brutus* and the *Trojans*, as an unsupportable Fiction of latter Ages, have no other History to substitute in the Room of it, nor assign any Original that is built on any better Foundation than their own Conjectures: Whereas the Original this History pretends to assign the *British* Nation, is not only a Notion of very great Antiquity,  
and

and supported by the Testimonies of many Ages, and of a vast Number of Authors, but also in itself more probable than any new Conjecture whatsoever, when all Circumstances are considered.

XLVIII. We have the joint Testimonies of many ancient Authors, that the Fame of the *Trojan* War drew together great Numbers of People from most Nations of the World, either to the Siege, or to the Defence of that renowned City; and that the *Trojans* themselves upon the Ruin of their State, being forced to quit their native Country, came to be dispersed through several Nations. Some of them joined together in a Body, and followed the Fortunes of their chief Commanders, in Order to find some new Place of Settlement: Others retreated with those Nations that had been their Auxiliaries, and so perhaps incorporated themselves with them: And others again were led Captives by the Enemy. So that it is no Wonder if after this War there were several new Colonies of them in many Nations of the World; and what Pretensions some Part of the *Gauls*, and even of the *English* themselves, may have to a *Trojan* Original, the Reader may see in (q) *Sheringham*. But the two chief

*from the long  
continuance  
of this War.*

*Trojan*

---

(q) *De Angl. gentis Orig. Cap. 6.*

*Trojan* Leaders, that fought for a new Settlement, were *Antenor* and *Aeneas*; the former of which was the Founder of the *Venetians*, the other of the *Romans*; and that these two Nations justly lay Claim to a *Trojan* Original, is what very few deny; and yet they have no other Support for it but ancient Poetical Tradition, the Original of History it self, especially among the *Romans*, being much later than the Times when those Colonies first settled there. And why are not the constant and uninterrupted Traditions of the *Bards*, as good an Argument for us to believe, that *Brutus* being banished into *Greece*, brought from thence into *Britain* a Colony of the *Trojans*, that had been kept in Slavery there, especially if we consider the many Circumstances that corroborate these Traditions?

XLIX. *Sheringham* has very learnedly shewn, that the ancient *Britains* wrote the same Character, spoke nearly the same Language, had the same Notions of Religion, and the same Manners and Customs, as the *Greeks*, and consequently as the *Trojans*, since the Difference between those two Nations in these Particulars was but very small, as all learned Men agree. That the ancient *Britains*, especially the *Druids*, used *Greek* Letters in the Matters they thought fit to communicate, I have already,

---

*The PREFACE.*    xcvi

---

ready shewn from *Cæsar*. And as to the great Affinity between the *British* and *Greek* Language, that is the Subject of a Dictionary, and not of a Discourse of this Nature. The curious Reader may be satisfied in this Point, by consulting *Dr. Davies's Dictionary*, or *Mr. Parry's* (r) Essay towards a *British Etymologicon*. Let it only be observed in general, that as the Author of this History (s) informs us, the *Britains* at their first Arrival in this Island spoke the *Trojan* Language, which he calls *Græcum curvum*, that is, a rough Dialect of the *Greek* Tongue; so the chief Difference still between a great Number of Words of the *Welsh* and *Greek* Language, wherein any Affinity is discovered, consists in this, that those of the former have a more rough or harsh Sound than the latter. As to the Religion of the *Britains*, the *Druids*, who were the Ministers of it, derived both their Name and in some Part their Institution from the *Greeks*. *Pliny* the Elder acknowledges the *Greek* Etymology of the Name, telling us (t) how they chose out Groves of Oaks, and performed no Rites of their Religion without Oaken Leaves, so that from hence, according to *Greek* Interpretation, they seem to have derived the Name

g

of

---

(r) Published in *Mr. Lhwyd's Archaeologia Britannica*. Tit. 8.  
(s) *B. I. Chap. 16.* (t) *Plin. Hist. Nat. L. 16. Cap. 44.*

of *Druids*; the *Greek* Word for an Oak being  $\Delta\gamma\upsilon\varsigma$ , and the *British* *Derwen*. And the Institution of *Druids* resembles very much that of the Nymphs called the *Dryades*, whom the ancient *Greeks* supposed the Presidents of Trees and especially Oaks, called for this Reason by the *Romans* *Nympha querquetulana*. And not only the Name and Institution, but the Doctrine also of the *British* *Druids*, was conformable to that of the *Greeks*. They had according to *Cæsar* (u) the same Notions of the Gods, and of their several Offices, and taught in like Manner the Doctrine of the Transmigration of Souls. *Britains* as well as *Greeks* had their Poets or Bards, to celebrate in Verse the Exploits, the Marriages, and funeral Exequies of their great Men; and both Nations made Use of military Chariots in their Wars. And Sir John Prise (x) observes from *Giraldus Cambrensis*, that many ancient Names of *Trojans* and *Grecians* are preserved among the *Welsh* to this Day; as *Oeneus*, *Rhesus*, *Æneus*, *Hector*, *Achilles*, *Heliodorus*, *Theodorus*, *Ajax*, *Evander*, *Ulysses*, *Helena*, *Elissa*, *Wendolena*; to which *Sheringham* (y) has added *Paris*, *Mynas*, *Deichius*, *Hyllus*, *Cobus*, which Answer to *Par*, *Myn*, *Dich*, *Hyll*, *Cob*. And these last men-

(u) *De bello Gallico*. L. 6. (x) *Hist. Brit. Defens.* p. 60.  
 (y) *De Angl. gentis origine*. Cap. I.

mention'd Names he shews have a great Affinity with the *British* Language. For *Par* in *British* signifies a Spear, *Myn* a Kid, *Dich* strong and mighty, *Hyll* fierce, *Cob* one that beats or knocks down. And if a Resemblance in these and the like Instances, shall be esteemed too weak an Argument for us to conclude these two Nations were originally the same; let it only be balanced with what *Camden* (2) has alledged in Support of his Conjecture, viz. That the *Britains* were originally the same Nation with the *Gauls*; or with what *Bochart* and *Aylet Sammes* have with much less Shew of Reason pretended, of their being the Descendants of the ancient *Phenicians*. These have no other Support for their Conjectures, but a Resemblance in some few Instances of this Kind: Whereas in Confirmation of the *Trojan* Original, not only the Resemblance of the *Britains* and *Greeks* is found greater in itself, but the Thing is also testified so to be in Fact by ancient History and Tradition.

L. But besides these Probabilities and Testimonies concerning this *Trojan* Original, if we look upon it only as a Conjecture, it is at least not liable to so great an Objection, as is that which *Camden* proposes,

---

(2) *Britannia*, p XII, &c.

---

c      *The PREFACE.*

---

poses, whatever kind Reception his has met with. For the *Britains* and *Gauls* were neighbouring Nations, and maintained a constant Intercourse and Commerce with each other. The *Britains*, if we may believe *Cæsar*, (a) assisted the *Gauls* in all their Wars; and the *Gauls* (b) on the other Hand sent their Youth into *Britain*, to be instructed in the Learning of the *Druids*, which Order of Men had their Original in *Britain*, and was from thence carry'd over into *Gaul*. It is no Wonder therefore if there was found some Affinity in the Customs and Languages of these two Nations. But this is no more an Argument that the *Britains* and *Gauls* were originally the same People, than that the *English* and *French* were, because they have also the same if not a greater Affinity in their Customs and the Words of their Language. Whereas such an Affinity between two so remote Nations as the *Britains* and *Greeks*, must be an Argument, either that they had the same Origin, at least that a considerable Colony of the *Greeks* or *Trojans* came hither, and intermixed themselves with the other People of this Island; or that they maintained a Correspondence and Communication together.

---

(a) *De bello Gall.* L. IV. (b) *Ibid.* L. VI.

ther. Now the *Grecians* had no Knowledge of the *Britains* till very late; for the Testimony of *Dion Cassius* (c) is very full to this Purpose; viz. "That *Britain* " was not so much as discovered by the " old *Greeks* and *Romans*, and that the " Moderns of them question whether it " were a Continent or Island; that much " was written on both Sides by some who " had no certain Knowledge, as having " neither seen the Country, nor learned " the Nature of it from the Inhabitants, " but relying solely on those Conjectures " they had made, as they had Time or " Diligence to study it." From hence by the Bye we may again observe, what little Dependance is to be placed on the Accounts of *Grecian* and *Roman* Authors, concerning the first Inhabitants of this Island. Indeed *Leland* (d) says, it is manifest from the Testimony of *Aristotle* in his Book *de Mundo*, that *Britain* was at first called *Olbion* or *Albion*: And this he alledges in Vindication of the Account given of its ancient Name in the *British* History. But then we are to conclude also, that the ancient *Greeks* had some Knowledge of this Island, above three hundred Years before the *Roman* Invasion. Now *Camden* will

---

(c) L. 39. (d) Vide *Sheringham de Angl. gent. Orig.* P. 385.

extricate us from this Difficulty, since according to him, (e) the Tract *de Mundo*, which goes for *Aristotle's*, and makes Mention of the *Britains* of *Albion* or *Hierna*, is not so old as *Aristotle*, but of far later Date, as the Learned think. And though we should admit ancient *Greek* Authors were entirely ignorant of this Island, and that the *Grecians* had little or no Communication with the *Britains*; this is no Reason why a Colony of *Trojans* might not at first have arrived in *Britain* from *Greece*. For neither were the *Romans*, who were undoubtedly at first a *Trojan* Colony, known to *Herodotus* and the ancient *Greeks*, tho' they lived much nearer them, and were then grown to a great Degree of Power and Eminence among their Neighbours. Nor is it probable that the *Britains*, if indeed they were originally *Trojans*, would at first hold any Intercourse with the *Grecians* who were their mortal Enemies.

LI. Now as to the Memory of *Brutus*, the Leader of the *Trojan* Colony, and Founder of the *British* Monarchy, that is still preserved in the Name of *Britain*. It is certain this was the Name of the Island given it by the Natives themselves, long before the *Roman* Invasion; and the *Britains* agree

---

(e) *Britannia*, p. xxxvii. See also *Usher's Primordia*, Cap. 16.

agree that it was derived from *Brutus* their Founder. Let all other Conjectures concerning the Etymology of this Name be examined, and they will be found not only new and unknown to ancient Authors, but indeed of much less Probability than this. *Camden* himself rejects the Fictions of Foreigners in this Matter as extremely ridiculous, and owns our own Countrymen, as *Sir Thomas Eliot*, and *Humphrey Lhwyd*, give us no very satisfactory Account of it. And I leave the learned Reader to judge, whether his own new Account is any Thing more satisfactory, viz. (f) That *Britain* was so called from *Brith*, which in the *British* Language signifieth Painted, and that because the *Britains* used to paint their Bodies. This Original is disliked both by *Somner* and *Casaubon*, whose Reasons are briefly given by the learned *Dr. Gibson*, now Bp. of *Lincoln*, in his Notes upon this Passage of *Camden's Britannia*. Now in like Manner as the Name of *Britain* preserved the Memory of *Brutus*, so did *Trinovantum* that of *Troy*: And we may observe from *Livy*, (g) that it was the Custom of the exiled *Trojans*, upon their Settlement in any Place, to call the first Town they built by the Name of *Troy*;

g 4

so

---

(f) *Britan.* p. xxix. (g) *L. I.*

so dear was the Memory of that City to them. And again, that *Albania* was so called from *Albanact* the Son of *Brutus*, the most ancient (b) *Scotch* Writers agree. Why should it then be esteemed an Absurdity to conclude, that the other ancient *British* Names of Places are Indications of those Princes by whom this History declares they were founded, as of *Ebraucus*, *Leil*, *Leir*, *Belinus* and the rest? We have nothing but the Fancies of modern Authors to oppose to all these Etymologies, which are too weak Reasons to overthrow such ancient and established Traditions. And especially as to the Original of the Name of *London*, what more probable Reason can be given for the Change of its former Name of *Trinovantum* for this modern one, than that which is assigned by this (i) History? That the ancient *Britains* called it *Caer-Lud*, or the City of *Lud*, is sufficiently known; and the Change of *Lud* into *Lund* Dr. *Davies* (k) easily accounts for from the Nature of the *British* Language. All ancient Writers agree upon this Original, and the Statue which has been from of old placed upon the Gate that bears the Name of *Lud*, is an Indication

---

(b) *Vide Fordun Hist. Scot. L. II. Cap. 6. & Lestai De script. Scot. (i) E. III. Ch. 29. (k) Lingua Britannica rudimenta.*

cation that he was at least the Builder of it, if not the Beautifier of the rest of the City, as this History pretends. And why should so much Honour have been paid to his Memory in particular for so many Ages, unless for the Reason this History assigns? But these Points are more fully discussed by Sir John Price (l) and Sheringham, (m) to which for Brevity's Sake I refer the Reader.

LII. But besides the ancient Names of Places, that serve to perpetuate the Memory of the first Kings of this Island, there are yet remaining other Indications of them. And here to say nothing of the High-Ways of *Belinus*, whereof there are considerable Remains to this Day, because some modern Writers will have them made by the Romans, though they cannot tell by whom, nor at what Time, nor for what Reason; what can be a more clear Indication that there were such Persons, who reigned among the ancient Britains, as *Molmutius* and *Martia*, than the Laws which bear their Names, and are in Force among us to this very Day? Many ancient Writers inform us, that the Laws of *Dumwallo Molmutius*, were first translated out of *British*

---

(l) *Hist. Brit. Defens.* p. 65. &c. (m) *De Angl. gent. Orig.* p. 21. 22.

*tish* into *Latin* by *Gildas*; and *Leland* (n) shews how much they were valued not only by the ancient *Britains*, and their Descendants the *Welsh*, even till the Time that their Country was reduced under Subjection to the Crown of *England* by King *Edward* the First; but also by the Kings among the *Saxons*, as *Ethelbert* King of *Kent*, *Ina* and *Alfrid* of the *West Saxons*, and *Edward* the third King of that Name among the *Saxons*; who when they instituted Laws for the publick Good, consulted, by the Assistance of a *Latin* Translator, the *Molmutian* Decrees, as most ancient and necessary, and at last enjoined the strict Observation of those they judged convenient, together with other new ones, to the *Saxons*. But the Diligence of the famous King *Alfred* was much greater in this Matter, who, according to *Higden*, translated into *Saxon* both the *Molmutian* and *Martian* Laws, and called them *Mercenelaga*, adding to them the Laws of the *West Saxons*, and *Danes*; and of these three *Edward* the Confessor composed the common Law of *England*, which are called King *Edward's* Laws to this Day. And besides the Testimonies of ancient Writers in this Point, the Thing, says *Sheringham*, (o) speaks itself. For the many *British* Words that occur in the *Saxon* Laws,

(n) *Comment. de Script. Brit.* (o) *De Angl. gent. Orig.* p. 126.

---

The PREFACE. cvii

---

Laws, as *Murther*, *Denizon*, *Rout* and several others, are an abundant Confirmation that the *British* Laws were translated into *Saxon*. Now all these Things being duly considered, we may I think safely conclude, that notwithstanding the vast Destruction that has been made of the Monuments of Antiquity, by length of Time, and the great Revolutions and Confusions that have so frequently happened in this Island, yet that there are still remaining sufficient Indications of some Things that were transacted before the *Roman* Invasion, and at least some Foundation of Truth discoverable in the Ruins of this ancient Story of *Brutus* and his Successors.

LIII. To conclude then this most material Point concerning *Brutus*, I might now shew the almost universal Consent and Confirmation, that both *English* and *Scotch* Historians and other learned Men have given to it, from the Time this History was first published till the Beginning of the last Century, and several of the last Century also. But such a long Recital of Testimonies would be very tiresome both to my self and the Reader. Let it suffice therefore in the last Place to shew, that this Story, however contemptible it appears to some at present, has been judged authentick by King *Edward* the First, and all the Nobility of this Kingdom, and alledged as such

such in a Controversy of the greatest Importance, and that too without any Objection against its Authority by the contrary Party concerned in that Controversy. For upon that most famous Dispute in his Time, concerning the Subjection of the Crown of *Scotland* to that of *England*, which was afterwards the Occasion of those long and bloody Wars both Kingdoms were involved in, the King wrote to Pope *Boniface* the Eighth, to whom the *Scots* had apply'd for Redress, and alledged in Defence of his Right, that from all Antiquity the direct and superior Dominion of *Scotland* had always belonged to his Crown; and was in these Allegations seconded by all his Nobility, to which they also set their Seals. So much of the Kings Letter as relates to this History, I shall here insert from *Walsingham*, (p) translated into *English* from *Latin*, in which it was originally composed.

LIV. " About the Time of *Eli* and *Samuel* the Prophet, a valiant and famous  
 " Man of the *Trojan* Nation, named *Brutus*,  
 " after the Destruction of *Troy*, arrived  
 " with many of the *Trojan* Nobility at a  
 " certain Island then called *Albion*, inhabited by Giants, and having routed and  
 " slain them with his Forces, he called it  
 " after

---

(p) *Ypodigma Neustria apud Camd. Angl. Norman. p. 492.*

---

*The PREFACE.*      cix

---

“ after his Name *Britain*, and his Companions *Britons*, and built a City which he  
“ named *Trinovantum*, now called *London*,  
“ and afterwards divided his Kingdom between his three Sons; viz. To *Locrin*  
“ his first-born he gave that Part of *Britain*  
“ which is now called *England*, and to *Albanaet* his second Son that Part, which  
“ was from him named *Albania*, now *Scotland*, and to *Camber* his youngest Son  
“ that Part, which after his Name was called *Cambria*, now *Wales*, reserving to  
“ *Locrin* the Royal Dignity. Two Years after the Death of *Brutus*, arrived in *Britain*  
“ a certain King of the *Huns* named *Humber*, and slew *Albanaet* the Brother  
“ of *Locrin*; at which News *Locrin* King of the *Britons* pursued him, and he in his  
“ Flight was drowned in the River, which is called after his Name *Humber*; and so  
“ *Albania* return'd to *Locrin*. Also *Dunwallio* King of the *Britons* preferred *Saterus*  
“ to be King of *Scotland*, and upon his rebelling caused both him and his Kingdom  
“ to be surrendred up to him. Also the two Sons of *Dunwallio*, *Belinus* and  
“ *Brennius*, divided their Fathers Kingdom between them, in such sort that *Belinus*  
“ the Elder possessed the Crown of the Island, with *Britain*, *Wales* and *Cornwal*;  
“ and *Brennius* the Younger held the Kingdom of *Scotland* under him; the *Trojan*  
“ Con-

“ Constitution requiring, that the Heredi-  
 “ tary Dignity should go to the First-born.  
 “ Also *Arthur* King of the *Britons*, a most  
 “ renowned Prince, subdued *Scotland* when  
 “ in Rebellion against him, and almost de-  
 “ stroy’d the whole Nation; and after-  
 “ wards advanced one *Anselm* to be King  
 “ of *Scotland*. And when after this, the  
 “ same King *Arthur* made his most famous  
 “ Feast at the City of *Legions*, all the Kings  
 “ that were subject to him were present at  
 “ it, amongst whom *Anselm* King of *Scot-*  
 “ *land*, doing Homage for the Kingdom of  
 “ *Scotland*, carried King *Arthurs* Sword be-  
 “ fore him. All the Kings of *Scotland* have  
 “ successively been subject to all the Kings  
 “ of the *Britons*.

LV. *Sheringham* very well (*q*) remarks  
 upon this Letter, that so prudent a King  
 would not have writ such Things to the  
 Pope, unless they had been delivered in  
 publick and authentick Records, or in Me-  
 moirs and Histories of well approved Autho-  
 rity. So great a King would not have made  
 himself the Subject of Laughter for his Ene-  
 mies, or produced empty Fictions and old  
 Wives Fables for Vouchers of his Right,  
 which could only injure his Cause, and not  
 establish it. It is reasonable to believe, that  
 what

---

(*q*) *De Angl. gentis Orig.* 130.

what he alledged was extracted from authentick Writings, and also such as were known and approved of by the *Scots*, who might have otherwise rejected them with Scorn and Laughter. But so far were they from this, that the *Scotch* Historians before *Buchanan* relate the same Things the *Britains* do, concerning the Coming of *Brutus* into this Island, and concerning *Scotland* being formerly called *Albania* from *Albanaet* the second Son of *Brutus*, as King *Edward* had pleaded. And even *Buchanan*, as much an Enemy as he shews himself to the Story of *Brutus*, does in his History very much confirm, and more largely explain, several Passages in the *British* History, from the Time of the first *Scottish* King *Fergus*, which was 330 Years before *Christ*, till after the Death of King *Arthur*. But now according to *Camden* and his Adherents, King *Edward* must have made a most ridiculous Plea in this grand Controversy, as alledging for the first and principal Argument for his Claim, this Story of *Brutus*, that it seems had no better Foundation than the Invention of an obscure Monk, and no greater Antiquity than about 170 Years at that Time.

which has been used was extracted from  
the same source as the other two  
and the same source as the other two  
and the same source as the other two

T 2

the same source as the other two

the same source as the other two

the same source as the other two

the same source as the other two

the same source as the other two

the same source as the other two

I

S

S

H

M

Re

M



A  
L I S T  
O F T H E

SUBSCRIBERS to this Book.

*Subscribers for several Books are distinguish'd by an Asterisk before their Names, and those for Royal Paper by a Dagger after them.*

A.

HIS Grace the Duke of St. Albans. †  
Gilbert Affleck, Esq;  
Mr. Alleyn of Queen's College, Oxon.  
Rev. Mr. George Antrobus, A. M. Vicar of  
Kingsbury, Warwicksh.  
Mr. Theophilus Armit, Merchant of London.  
h Richard

---

*A List of the*

---

*Richard Arnold, Esq; †*  
*Rev. Mr. John Appleton, Schoolmaster of*  
*Wrexham.*  
*Rev. Dr. Astrey, Chaplain to the Bishop*  
*of London.*  
*Rev. Mr. Atkinson, Fellow of Queen's Coll.*  
*Oxon.*  
*Rev. Mr. Bedingsfield Atterbury.*  
*Rev. Mr. John Aylworth, A. B. of Wadham*  
*College, Oxon.*

B.

\* **R**ight Hon. Earl of *Burlington.* †  
\* Right Hon. Countess of *Bur-*  
*lington.* †  
*Right Hon. Lady Brook.*  
*Colonel Lee Backwell*  
*Tyringham Backwell, Esq;*  
*Mrs. ——— Backwell.*  
*———— Baily, Esq;*  
*Rev. Mr. Baines, Fellow of University Coll.*  
*Oxon.*  
*Mr. Triamor Baldwin.*  
*Mr. — Bave, of Queen's College, Oxon.*  
*Mrs. Elizabeth Beale, of Brockhall, Northamp-*  
*tonshire.*  
*Rev. Mr. — Bell, Chaplain to the Bishop*  
*of London.*  
*Mrs. Grace Bennet.* †  
\* *Mr. William Bently.*  
\* *John Berkley, Esq;*

Mr.

---

*Subscribers to this Book.*

---

Mr. Robert Bignell.  
Mr. Bissett, of *Queen's College, Oxon.*  
Mr. William Blackstone, Apothecary of *Lond.*  
Rev. Dr. Blake, Sub-Dean of *Tork.*  
Sir John Bland, Bar. †  
Mrs. Bonnel.  
\* Mr. Jonah Bowyer, Bookseller of *London.*  
Right Hon. Lady Elizabeth Boyle. †  
Right Hon. Lady Juliana Boyle. †  
Right Hon. Lady Jane Boyle. †  
Right Hon. Lady Harriot Boyle. †  
Rev. Mr. Richard Boyse, Rector of *Berkswell, Warwickshire.*  
Mrs. Catherine Branch. †  
Edward Brewerton, Esq; †  
Mr. Brisco, of *Queen's College, Oxon.*  
Rev. Mr. John Brookes, B. D. *Warwickshire.*  
\* Mr. Daniel Brown, Bookseller in *London.*  
Mr. John Brown, Surgeon in *London.*  
\* Mr. Jonas Brown, Bookseller in *London.*  
Mr. Brown, Gent. Com. of *Trinity College, Oxon.*  
\* Hon. Robert Bruce, Esq; †  
Hon. and Rev. Henry Brydges, D. D. †  
Josiah Burchet, Esq;  
Rev. Thomas Byssse, D. D.

C.

HIS Grace the Lord Archbishop of  
Canterbury. †  
Her Grace the Duchess of *Cleveland.* †  
h 2 Right

---

## *A List of the*

---

Right Hon. Earl of Carnarvan. †  
Right Hon. Viscount Castleton. †  
Right Hon. Viscount Chetwynd. †  
\* Right Hon. Lord Carleton. †  
Right Hon. James Craggs, Esq; Principal  
Secretary of State. †  
Hon. Mrs Calthorp. †  
Dugall Campbell, Esq;  
Thomas Cartwright, of Ayno in Northamp-  
tonshire, Esq; †  
Walter Cary, Esq; †  
Rev. Mr. William Charnley, Vicar of Hax-  
bury, Warwickshire.  
Charles Cholmondly, Esq; †  
Robert Cholmondly, Esq;  
Mr. Stanbrook Cholmley.  
Mr. Thomas Churchill.  
\* Walter Churchill, of the Middle Temple, Esq;  
Lady Clarges. †  
Sir Thomas Clark, Kt.  
Mr. Clarke, of Queen's College, Oxon.  
\* Mr. Francis Clay, Bookseller in London.  
\* Mr. Henry Clements, Bookseller in London.  
Mr. Robert Cocks, Clerk of St. Clements  
Danes, London.  
Mr. Collinwood, Gent. Com. of Queen's Coll,  
Oxon.  
Samuel Comes, Esq;  
Rev. Mr. George Comyns.  
Rev. Mr. Moses Cotterell, A. M. Vicar of  
Ansley, Warwickshire.  
Mr. Cotterel, of Queen's College, Oxon.  
— Cotton,

---

*Subscribers to this Book.*

---

—— Cotton, Esq; †  
Mr. Richard Cotton.  
Mr. John Creswell,

D.

**H**IS Grace the Duke of Devonshire. †  
Her Grace the Dutches of Devon-  
shire. †

\* Right Hon. Countess of Dalkeith. †  
Henry Davenport, Esq; †  
Mr. Edward Davis, of Ruddalt.  
Mr. D'oiley, Gent. Com. of Queen's Coll.  
Oxon.

Mountague Garrard Drake, Esq; †

Edmund Dunch, Esq; †

\* Abraham Dupuis, Esq; †

Mr. Joseph Durdon.

E.

**M**R. John Edrige.  
Rev. Mr. Eliotson, Fellow of Queen's  
College, Oxon.

Mr. Alexander English.

Dr. John English.

Capt. — Evans.

Sir Redmond Everard, Bar. †

Joseph Eyles, Esq; †

Mrs. Sarah Eyles. †

Lady Eyles.

Mr. Tobias Eysbam, Merchant of London.

---

*A List of the*

---

F.

**R**ight Hon. Earl of *Ferrers*.  
Right Hon. Countess of *Ferrers*.  
*Bryan Fairfax*, Esq; †  
Rev. Mr. *John Felthouse*, Rector of *Leigh*,  
*Staffordshire*.  
Mrs. *Anne Fenn*.  
Mr. *Henry Fenn*.  
Mr. *Fenton*, of *Queen's College, Oxon*.  
Mr. *William Featherstonehaugh*.  
Rev. Mr. *Fletcher*, Fellow of *Queen's Coll.*  
*Oxon*.  
Mr. *Humphrey Foulks*, of *Marchieviel*.  
Sir *Andrew Fountain*, Kt. †  
\* Lady *Fox*.  
Mrs. *Charlotte Fox*.  
*Henry Fox*, Esq;  
*Stephen Fox*, Esq; †  
*Thomas Frederick*, Esq; †  
*Richard Freeman*, of *Whilton, Northamptonsh.*  
Esq;  
*John Friend*, M. D. †  
Rev. *Robert Friend*, D. D.  
Mr. *Henry Furness*.

G.

**R**ight Hon. Countess of *Grantham*. †  
Sir *Samuel Garth*, Kt.  
Mr. *John George*,

Rev.

---

### *Subscribers to this Book.*

---

Rev. Mr. *Isaac Gervais* of *Lismoke* in *Ireland*.

Rev. Dr. *Gibson*, Provost of *Queen's College*,  
*Oxon.*

Mr. *Richard Glynn*, Mathemat. Instrument  
maker in *London*.

Mr. *John Goddard*, Merchant of *London*. †

Major *William Godolphin*.

*John Gore*, Esq;

*Thomas Gore*, Esq;

*William Gore*, Esq;

\* Mr. *George Graham*, Watchmaker in  
*London*. †

*Richard Graham*, Esq; †

*James Gray*, Esq;

\* Rev. *Thomas Green*, D. D. Vicar of *St.*  
*Martins* in the *Fields*.

\* Rev. Mr. *Green*, Fellow of *Queen's Coll.*  
*Oxon.*

Rev. Mr. *George Greenway*, Vicar of *Off-*  
*church*, *Warwickshire*.

Rev. Mr. *John Greenway*, of *Chadshunt* in  
*Warwickshire*.

Hon. Mrs. *Elizabeth Grevil*.

\* Rev. Mr. *Robert Grisdaie*.

Sir *Rowland Gwynn*, Bar. †

### H.

Right Hon Earl of *Hertford*.

Right Hon. Countess of *Hertford*.

\* Right Hon. Viscountess *Hereford*.

Right Hon. Lord *Harley* †

h 4 .

Rev.

---

*A List of the*

---

Rev. Mr. *Hall*, Fellow of *Queen's College*,  
*Oxon.*

\* Mr. *John Hall*.

Sir *John Harpur*, Bar. †

\* Hon. Lady *Harpur*. †

*George Harrison*, Esq; †

*William Harrison*, Esq;

Right Hon. Lady *Anne Harvey*. †

*Michael Harvey*, of *Combe*, in *Surrey*, Esq; †

*Robert Harvey*, of *Stockton*, *Warwicksh.* Esq; †

Mr. *Charles Hayes*. †

Mr. *Hellier*, of *Queen's College*, *Oxon.*

\* Rev. Mr. *Samuel Hemmings*.

Mr. *John Higden*, Merchant of *London*.

Mrs. *Elizabeth Higgins*. †

Rev. Mr. *Hill*, Fellow of *Queen's Coll. Oxon.*

Mr. *Mark Holeman*.

Rev. Mr. *Holme*, Fellow of *Queen's College*,  
*Oxon.*

Mr. *Fisher Holyoake*, Attorney in *Southam*,  
*Warwickshire*.

*Andrew Hopegood*, Esq;

Sir *Richard How*, Bar.

Rev. Mr. *George Hudson*.

Rev. Dr. *Hudson*, Principal of *St. Mary Hall*,  
*Oxon.*

Capt. *Robert Hughes*.

Mr. *William Hughes*, of *Wadham Coll. Oxon.*

Rev. *Charles Humphreys*, L L. D.

Rev. Mr. *John Hunter*, Prebendary of  
*Litchfield*.

Mr. *Hutchinson*.

*Thomas*

---

## Subscribers to this Book.

---

Thomas Hutton, Esq; †

John Hyde, Esq;

### I.

Theodore Jacobson, Esq;

Mr. Jacques, of Queen's College, Oxon.

Mr. John Jefferies.

Lady Jeffreys. †

Mrs. Anne Jeffreys. †

Mrs. Bridget Jeffreys. †

Edward Jeffreys, Esq. †

Mrs. Elizabeth Jeffreys. †

Mrs. Mary Jeffreys. †

Nicholas Jeffreys, Esq. †

\* Walter Jeffreys, Esq. †

Walter Jeffreys, of Brecknock, Esq;

\* Mr. John Jenkins, Linnen-Draper in  
London.

\* Edward Jennings, Esq.

Hon. Sir John Jennings, Kt. †

Mr. Richard Johnson †

\* Rev. Mr. Anthony Jones, A. M.

Right Hon. Lady Catherine Jones. †

Rev. Mr. Emanuel Jones, School-master of  
Harbury, Warwicksh.

Roger Jones, of Buckland, in Brecknockshire,  
Esq. †

Rev. Mr. William Jones, Rector of Hasley,  
Warwicksh.

Mr. Willam Jones, F. R. S. †

Rev. Mr. Jones, Vicar of Wrexham.

Mrs. ——— Iton.

John

---

*A List of the*

---

K.

*John Kent, Esq.*  
*Rev. Mr. James King. †*  
*William Knight, Esq. †*  
*William Knight, Esq.*

L.

**R**ight Hon. Viscount *Lanesbrough †*  
Right Hon. Viscountess *Lanesbrough.*  
Right Rev. Lord Bishop of *London.*  
\* Right Rev. Lord Bishop of *Londonderry,*  
late of *Carlisle. †*  
Right Rev. Lord Bishop of *Lincoln †*  
Rev. Mr. *Thomas Lamplugh, Prebendary*  
of *York.*  
Rev. Mr. *Samuel Lancaster.*  
Rev. *John Landen, L L. D.*  
Mr. *Charles Langstaff.*  
Mr. *Langton of Queen's Coll. Oxon.*  
Rev. Mr. *Laurence Leach.*  
Mr. *John Leaves.*  
Hon. *Charles Leigh, Esq;*  
*William Leigh, Esq; †*  
\* *Erasmus Lewis, Esq;*  
Reverend Mr. *Thomas Little, of Harbury,*  
*Warwickshire.*  
Mr. *Lock, of Queen's College, Oxon.*  
• *Laurence Lord, of Cotesford in Oxfordshire, Esq;*  
Mr. *John Lowndes.*

\* Right

---

*Subscribers to this Book.*

---

M.

- \* **R**ight Hon. Earl of Montrath. †  
Mr. John Machin, Astronomy Pro-  
fessor of Gresham College.  
Mrs. Anne Manning.  
Mr. Thomas Matthew, Draper in Daventry.  
Mr. Thomas Middleton,  
Mrs. Emma Milbourne.  
Richard Miller, Esq;  
Mr. John Moller.  
Thomas More, Esq;  
John Morice, of Walthamstow in Essex, Esq;  
Major Thomas Morice.  
William Morice, Esq; †  
Mrs. Alice Morice.  
Rev. Mr. Thomas Morral, A. M. Warwicksh.  
Rev. Robert Moss, D. D. Dean of Ely.  
Richard Mostyn, Esq,  
Mr. Edward Mountague.  
Edward Mountney, Esq;  
Reverend Mr. Thomas Myles, A. M.

N.

- \* **S**IR Isaac Newton, Kt. †  
Rev. Mr. John Nicoll. †  
Rev. Mr. Nicolson, Fellow of Queen's College,  
Oxon.  
Mr. Nicolson, of Queen's College, Oxon.

\* Her

---

*A List of the*

---

O.

\* **H**ER Grace the Dutches of *Ormonde*. †  
Right Hon. Countess Dowager of  
*Oxford*. †  
Rev. Mr. *Edward Oliver*.

P.

**R**ight Hon. Earl of *Pembroke*. †  
Right Hon. Countess of *Pembroke*. †  
*William Palmer*, of *Ladbroke*, *Warwicksh.* Esq; †  
*Mrs. Rebecca Pannel*.  
\* *Lady Parker*. †  
*Theophilus Parson*, Esq;  
*Mrs. Anne Pastern*. †  
*Mr. James Parvey*.  
Rev. Mr. *John Peirce*, Rector of *Cotesbrook*,  
*Northamptonshire*.  
\* Rev. *John Pelling*, D. D. Rector of *St.*  
*Anne's, Westminster*. †  
*Jeremiah Pemberton*, Esq;  
*William Philips*, of *Brecknock*, Esq; †  
*Robert Pitt*, Esq; †  
*George Pitts*, Esq; †  
*Mrs. Laura Pitts*. †  
*Mr. James Pringle*.  
*Rowland Pughe*, M. D. of *Wrexham*.

Right

---

*Subscribers to this Book.*

---

R.

**R**ight Rev. Lord Bishop of *Rochester*. †  
Rev. Mr. *Richardson*, A. M.  
Mr. *Thomas Ridding*.  
Mr. *Charles Riddle*. †  
Rev. Mr. *John Riland*, Rector of *Sutton-  
Coldfield, Warwicksh.*  
Mrs. *Priscilla Rolls*. †  
*Edward Rolt*, Esq;  
Mrs. *Anne Rolt*.  
\* Rev. Mr. *William Ryman*, Vicar of *Spels-  
bury, Oxfordshire*. †

S.

**H**ER Grace the Dutches of *Somerset*. †  
Right Hon. Countess of *Sandwich*.  
Right Hon. Countess of *Scarborough*. †  
Right Hon. Earl of *Suffex*. †  
*John Sayer*, Esq;  
*Thomas Sergeant*, Esq;  
Rev. Mr. *Abraham Sharp*, Chaplain to the  
Earl of *Burlington*. †  
Mr. *John Sharp*.  
Mr. *Arthur Shepherd*.  
Rev. Mr. *John Sheppard*, Rector of *Brockhall,  
Northamptonshire*.  
*John Sherlock*, of the *Middle Temple*, Esq;  
Rev. *Thomas Sherlock*, D. D. Dean of *Chi-  
chester*.

Rev.

---

*A List of the*

---

Rev. Mr. George Simmonds, A. M. Minister  
of *Knolle, Warwicksh.*

*Henry Smith, Esq;*

\* Rev. Joseph Smith, D. D. Rector of St.  
*Dionis Backchurch, London.*

Mr. Joshua Smith, Bookseller in *Stratford*  
*upon Avon.*

Rev. Mr. Leonard Smith, Rector of *Newbold*  
*Pacy, Warwickshire.*

Mr. Obadiah Smith, Bookseller in *Daventry.*

\* *Ralph Smith, Esq; †*

\* Rev. Andrew Snape, D. D. Rector of St.  
*Mary Hill, London.*

Rev Mr. Charles Snape.

Mr. Arthur Sparks.

\* Mr. George Strahan, Bookseller in *London.*

Hon. General Stuart. †

Mr. William Summers.

Hon. Brigadier Sutton. †

T.

MRS. Gilberta Talbot. †

*John Talbot, Esq; †*

Rev. Mr. Thomas Taylour, of *Keinton, War-*  
*wickshire.*

Rev. Mr. William Taylour, Minister of *Da-*  
*ventry.*

Mr. Alban Thomas.

Rev. Mr. Jonathan Thompson, Vicar of *Bi-*  
*shops Itchington, Warwickshire. †*

Thomas Thornton, of *Brockhall in Northamp-*  
*tonshire, Esq;*

Hon.

---

### *Subscribers to this Book.*

---

Hon. Mrs. *Thynne*. †

\* *Thomas Tickell*, Esq; †

Reverend Dr. *Took*.

Rev. Mr. *Joseph Trapp*.

\* Reverend Mr. *Troughear*, Fellow of *Queen's College, Oxon.*

Rev. Mr. *John Troutbeck*.

*Richard Tyson*, M. D.

#### V.

*Edward Ventris*, Esq;

Right Hon. Lady *Harriot Vere*. †

#### W.

\* **R**ight Hon. Viscountess *Windsor*. †  
Right Rev. and Right Hon. Lord  
Bishop of *Winchester*. †

*John Ward*, Esq;

Colonel *John Watson*.

Rev. *John Waugh*, D. D. Rector of *St. Peters, Cornhill, London*.

Rev. Mr. *William Welshman*, Vicar of *Dodford, Northamptonshire*.

Right Hon. Lady *Elizabeth Wentworth*. †

Mr. *Robert Wesley*.

Rev. Mr. *Humphrey Whyle*, Vicar of *Welsbourn, Warwickshire*.

Rev. Mr. *Peter Wiggat*.

Mr. *Edward Wilcox*.

Mr. *Roger Williams*.

Mr.

---

*A List, &c.*

---

*Mr. Williams, A. B. of Queen's College, Oxon.*  
*Mr. Daniel Wilson.*  
*John Wiseman, Esq.*  
*Mr. Henry Wood.*  
*Mr. William Wyld.*  
*Mr. Howel Wynn.*

Y.

**H**IS Grace the Lord Archbishop of York. †  
*Mr. Tarborough, A. B. of University*  
*College, Oxon.*  
*William Tonge, of Brinyorkin in Flintshire, Esq.*



T H E



THE  
**British History.**

---

The First Book.

---

CHAP. I.

*Jeffrey of Monmouth's Epistle Dedicatory to Robert Earl of Gloucester.*



AFTER much and frequent Consideration with my self, upon my reading the History of the Kings of *Britain*, I wonder'd that in the Account that *Gildas* and *Bede* in an elegant Treatise had given of them, I found nothing said of those Kings who lived here before the Incarnation of *Christ*, nor of *Arthur*,  
A and

and many others who succeeded after the Incarnation; when yet their Actions both deserved immortal Fame, and were also celebrated by many People in a pleasant Manner and by Heart, as if they had been written. Being often intent upon these and such like Thoughts, *Walter*, Archdeacon of *Oxford*, a Man of great Eloquence, and learned in foreign Histories, offer'd me a very ancient Book in the *British* Tongue, which in a continued regular Story and elegant Stile, related the Actions of them all, from *Brutus* the first King of the *Britains*, down to *Cadwallader* the Son of *Cadwallo*. At his Request therefore, though I had not made fine Language my Study, by collecting florid Expressions from other Authors, yet contented with my own homely Stile, I undertook the Translation of that Book into *Latin*. For if I had swell'd the Pages with Rhetorical Flourishes, I must have tir'd my Readers, by employing their Attention more upon my Words, than upon understanding the History. To you therefore *Robert* Earl of *Glocester*, this Work humbly sues for the Favour, of being so corrected by your Advice, that it may not be thought the poor Offspring of *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*, but when polish'd by your refined Wit and Judgment, the Production of him who had *Henry* the glorious King of *England* for his Father, and whom we see an accomplish'd Scholar and Philo-

Philosopher, as well as a brave Soldier and expert Commander ; so that *Britain* with Joy acknowledges, that in you she enjoys another *Henry*.

---

## CHAP. II.

*A Description of Britain ; who were its first Inhabitants.*

**B** *BRITAIN*, the best of Islands, is situated in the Western Ocean, between *France* and *Ireland*, being eight hundred Miles long, and two hundred broad. It produces every Thing that is for the Use of Man, with a Plenty that never fails. It abounds with all Kinds of Metals, and has Champions of large Extent, and Hills fit for the finest Tillage, the Richness of whose Soil affords variety of Fruits at their Seasons. It has also Forests well stor'd with all Kinds of wild Beasts, in the Lawns whereof Cattle find good Change of Pasture, and Bees variety of Flowers for Honey. Under its lofty Mountains lie green Meadows pleasantly situated, in which the gentle Murmurs of Crystal Springs gliding along clear Channels, give those that lye on their Banks an agreeable Invitation to slumber. It is likewise well water'd with Lakes and Rivers abounding

with Fish ; and besides the narrow Sea which is on the Southern Coast towards *France*, there are three noble Rivers, which it stretches out like three Arms, *viz.* the *Thames*, the *Severn*, and the *Humber* ; by which foreign Commodities from all Countries are brought into it. It was formerly adorn'd with eight and twenty Cities, of which some are in Ruins and Desolate, others are yet standing, beautify'd with lofty Towers of Churches, wherein is perform'd religious Worship according to the *Christian* Institution. It is lastly inhabited by five different Nations, the *Britains*, *Romans*, *Saxons*, *Picts* and *Scots* ; whereof the *Britains* before the Rest did formerly possess the whole Island from Sea to Sea, till divine Vengeance punishing them for their Pride, made them give Way to the *Picts* and *Saxons*. But in what Manner, and from whence they at first arriv'd here, remains now to be related in what follows.

---

### C H A P. III.

*Brutus being banish'd after the killing of his Parents, goes into Greece.*

**A**FTER the Trojan War, *Aeneas* flying with *Ascanius* from the Destruction of their City, sail'd to *Italy*. There he was honour-

honourably receiv'd by King *Latinus*, which rais'd him the Envy of *Turnus* King of the *Rutuli*, who thereupon made War against him. Upon their engaging in Battle *Aeneas* got the Victory, and having kill'd *Turnus* obtain'd the Kingdom of *Italy*, and with it *Lavinia* the Daughter of *Latinus*. After his Death *Ascanius* succeeding in the Kingdom, built *Alba* upon the *Tyber*, and begat a Son named *Sylvius*, who in pursuit of a private Amour, took to Wife a Neice of *Lavinia* whom he got with Child. The Father *Ascanius* coming to the Knowledge of it, commanded his Magicians to consult of what Sex the Damsel had conceiv'd. They satisfy'd of the Event told him she was big of a Boy, who would kill his Father and Mother, and after travelling over many Countries in Banishment, would at last arrive at the highest Pitch of Glory. Nor were they mistaken in their Prediction; for at the Time of Travel the Woman brought forth a Son, and died of his Birth; but the Child was deliver'd to a Nurse and called *Brutus*.

At length after fifteen Years were expir'd, the Youth accompany'd his Father in Hunting, and kill'd him undesignedly by the Shot of an Arrow. For as the Servants were driving up the Deer towards them, *Brutus* in levelling a Shot at them smote his his Father under the Breast. Upon his

A 3

Death

Death he was expell'd *Italy*, his Kinsmen being enrag'd at him for so heinous a Fact. Thus banish'd he went into *Greece*, where he found the Posterity of *Helenus* Son of *Priamus*, kept in Slavery by *Pandrasus* King of the *Grecians*. For after the Destruction of *Troy*, *Pyrrhus* the Son of *Achilles*, had brought hither in Chains *Helenus* and many others; and to revenge on them the Death of his Father, had given Command for their being held under Captivity. *Brutus* finding they were by Descent his old Countrymen, took up his Abode among them, and began to distinguish himself by his Conduct and Bravery in War, so as to gain the Affection of Kings and Commanders, above all the young Men of the Country. For he was esteem'd a Person of great Capacity both in Counsel and War, and signaliz'd his Generosity to his Soldiers, by bestowing among them all the Money and Spoil he got. His Fame therefore spreading over all Countries, the *Trojans* from all Parts began to flock to him, desiring under his Command to be freed from the Servitude of the *Grecians*; which they affirm'd might easily be done, considering how much their Number was now encreas'd in the Country, being seven thousand strong, besides Women and Children. There was likewise then in *Greece* a noble Youth named *Assaracus*, a Favourer of their Cause. For he was descended on his Mothers

Mothers Side from the *Trojans*, and had a great Confidence in them, that he might be able by their Assistance to oppose the Designs of the *Grecians*. For his Brother had a Quarrel with him for attempting to deprive him of three Castles his Father had given him at his Death, on Account of his being only the Son of a Concubine ; but as the Brother was a *Grecian* both by his Father and Mothers Side, he had prevail'd with the King and the Rest of the *Grecians* to espouse his Cause. *Brutus* having taken a view of the Number of his Men, and seen how *Affaracus's* Castles lay open to him, comply'd with their Request.

## CHAP. IV.

Brutus's *Letter to Pandrasus.*

**B**EING therefore chosen their Commander, he assembles the *Trojans* from all Parts, and fortifies the Towns belonging to *Affaracus*. But he himself with *Affaracus* and the whole Body of Men and Women that adher'd to him, retires to the Woods and Hills, and then sends a Letter to the King in these Words.

“ Brutus, General of the Remainder of  
“ the Trojans, to Pandrusus King of the Gre-

A 4

“CIANS,

“ cians, sendeth Greeting. As it was be-  
“ neath the Dignity of a Nation descended  
“ from the illustrious Race of *Dardanus*, to  
“ be treated in your Kingdom otherwise  
“ than the Nobility of their Birth requir’d;  
“ they have betaken themselves to the Co-  
“ verts of the Woods. For they preferr’d  
“ living after the Manner of wild Beasts,  
“ upon Fleish and Herbs, with the Enjoy-  
“ ment of Liberty, before the continuing  
“ longer in the greatest Luxury, under the  
“ Yoke of your Slavery. If this gives your  
“ Majesty any Offence, impute it not to  
“ them, but pardon it; since it is the com-  
“ mon Sentiment of every Captive, to be  
“ desirous of regaining his former Dignity.  
“ Let Pity therefore move you to bestow  
“ on them freely their lost Liberty, and  
“ permit them to inhabit the Thickets of  
“ the Woods, to which they have retir’d  
“ to avoid Slavery. But if you deny them  
“ this Favour, then by your Permission  
“ and Assistance let them depart into some  
“ foreign Country.



C H A P.

## C H A P. V.

*Brutus falling upon the Forces of Pandrasus by Surprise, routs them, and takes Antigonus the Brother of Pandrasus, with Anacletus Prisoner.*

**P**ANDRASUS perceiving the Purport of the Letter, was beyond Measure surpriz'd at the Boldness of such a Message from those whom he had kept in Slavery; and having called a Council of his Nobles, he determin'd to raise an Army in order to pursue them. But while he was upon his March to the Deserts, where he thought they were, and to the Town of *Sparatinum*, *Brutus* made a Sally forth with three thousand Men, and fell upon him unawares: For having Intelligence of his coming, he had got into the Town the Night before, with a Design to break forth upon them unexpectedly, while unarm'd and marching without Order. The Sally being made, the *Trojans* briskly attack them, and endeavour to make a great Slaughter. The *Grecians* astonish'd, immediately give way on all Sides, and with the King at their Head, hasten to pass the River *Akalon*, which run near the Place, but in passing

sing are in great Danger by the Rapidness of the Stream. *Brutus* galls them in their Flight, and kills Part of them in the Stream, Part upon the Banks, and running to and fro, rejoyces to see them in both Places exposed to Ruin. But *Antigonus* the Brother of *Pandrasus*, grievously moved at this Sight, rallied his scatter'd Troops, and made a quick Return upon the furious *Trojans*; for he rather chose to die making a brave Resistance, than to be drown'd in a muddy Whirlpool by a scandalous Flight. Thus attended with a close Body of Men, he encourag'd them to stand their Ground, and employ'd his whole Force against the Enemy with great Vigour, but to little or no Purpose, for the *Trojans* had Arms, but the others none; and by that Advantage they were more eager in the Flight, and made a miserable Slaughter, nor gave over the Assault till they had made near a total Destruction, and taken *Antigonus* and *Anacletus* his Companion Prisoners.

---

C H A P. VI.*The Town of Sparatinum Besieged by Pandrasus.*

**B**RUTUS after the Victory reforc'd the Town with six hundred Men, and then retir'd to the Woods, where the *Trojan* People

People were expecting his Protection. In the mean Time *Pandrasus* grieving at his own Flight and his Brothers Captivity, endeavour'd that Night to reassemble his broken Forces, and the next Morning went with a Bôdy of his People he had got together to besiege the Town; into which he supposed *Brutus* had put himself with *Antigonus* and the rest of the Prisoners he had taken. As soon as he was arriv'd at the Walls, and had view'd the Situation of the Castle, he divided his Army into several Bodies, and placed them in different Stations quite round. One Party had their Charge not to suffer any of the Besieged to go out; another to turn the Courses of the Rivers; a third to beat down the Walls with battering Rams and other Engines. They in Obedience to his Commands, labour'd with their utmost Force to distress the Besieged; and Night coming on, made Choice of their bravest Men to defend their Camp and Tents from the Incursions of the Enemy, while the rest who were fatigued with Labour, refresh'd themselves with Sleep.



## C H A P. VII.

*The Besieged desire Assistance of Brutus.*

**B**UT the Besieged standing upon the Top of the Walls, were no less Vigorous to repel the Force of the Enemies Engines, and assault them with their own, and cast forth Darts and Firebrands with an unanimous Resolution to stand upon their Defence: And when a Breach was made through the Wall, they compell'd the Enemy to retire, by throwing upon them Wild Fire and Scalding Water. But being distressed through Scarcity of Provision and daily Labour, they sent a Message to *Brutus*, being urgent with him to hasten to their Assistance; for they were afraid they might be so weakned as to be oblig'd to quit the Town. *Brutus* desirous of relieving them was under great Perplexity, as not having Men enough to stand a pitch'd Battel, and therefore makes use of a Stratagem, by which he proposes to enter the Enemies Camp by Night, and having deceiv'd their Watch, to kill them in their Sleep. But because he knew this was impracticable, without the Concurrence and Assistance of some *Grecian*, he called to him *Anacletus*, the Compa-

Companion of *Antigonus*, and with a drawn Sword in his Hand, spake to him after this manner.

“ Noble Youth, your own and *Antigonus*’s Life is now at an End, unless you  
“ will faithfully perform what I command  
“ you. This Night I design to invade the  
“ Camp of the *Grecians*, and fall upon  
“ them unawares, but am afraid of being  
“ hindred in the Attempt by the Watch  
“ discovering the Stratagem. Since it will  
“ be necessary therefore to have them killed  
“ first, I desire to make use of you to  
“ deceive them, that I may have the easier  
“ Access to the rest. Do you therefore  
“ manage this Affair cunningly; at the  
“ second Hour of the Night go to the  
“ Watch, and with fair Speeches tell them  
“ that you have brought away *Antigonus*  
“ from Prison, and that he is come to the  
“ Bottom of the Woods, where he lyes  
“ hid among the Shrubs, and cannot get  
“ any farther, by Reason of the Fetters  
“ with which you shall pretend he is bound.  
“ Then you shall conduct them to the End  
“ of the Wood, as if it were to deliver him,  
“ where I shall attend with a Band of Men  
“ ready to kill them.

C H A P.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Anacletus for fear of dying, betrays  
the Army of the Grecians.*

**A**NACLETUS seeing the Sword threatening him with immediate Death while these Words were pronouncing, was so terrified as to promise upon Oath, that on Condition he and *Antigonus* might have longer Life granted them, he would execute his Command. Accordingly the Agreement being confirm'd, at the second Hour of the Night he directs his Way towards the *Grecian* Camp, and when he was now come near to it, the Watch who were then narrowly viewing all lurking Places, ran out from all Parts to meet him, and demand the Occasion of his coming, and whether it was not to betray the Army. To whom he with a Shew of great Joy, made the following Answer. " I come not to  
" betray my Country, but having made  
" my Escape from the Prison of the *Trojans*, I fly hither to desire you would go  
" with me to *Antigonus*, whom I have deliver'd from *Brutus's* Chains. For being  
" not able to come with me for the Weight  
" of his Fetters, I have a little while ago  
" caused him to lye hid among the Shrubs  
" at the End of the Wood, till I could meet  
" with

“ with some whom I might conduct to his Assistance. ” While they were in Suspence about the Truth of this Story, there came one who knew him, and after he had saluted him, told them who he was : So that now without any Hesitation, they quickly called their absent Companions and attended him to the Wood, where he had told them *Antigonus* lay hid. But at length as they were going among the Shrubs, *Brutus* with his armed Bands springs forth, and falls upon them while under the greatest Astonishment with a most cruel Slaughter. From thence he marches directly to the Siege, and divides his Men into three Bands, assigning to each of them a different Part of the Camp, to which he charged them to go discreetly, and without Noise ; and when entred, not to kill any Body till he with his Company should be possess’d of the King’s Tent, and should cause the Trumpet to sound for a Signal.

---

## C H A P. IX.

### *The taking of Pandrasus.*

**T**HEN after he had given them their Instructions, they forthwith softly enter the Camp, and taking their appointed Stations,

Stations, expected the promis'd Signal, which *Brutus* delay'd not to give as soon as he had got before the Tent of *Pandrasus*, to assault which was the Thing he most desired. At the hearing of the Signal, they forthwith draw their Swords, enter in among the Men in their Sleep, make quick Destruction of them, and allowing no Quarter, in this Manner traverse the Camp. The rest awak'd at the Groans of the dying, and seeing their Assailants are dismay'd, as Sheep when seiz'd on a sudden; for they despair'd of Life, since they had neither Time to take Arms, nor to escape by Flight. They run up and down without Arms among the armed, whithersoever the Fury of the Assault hurried them; but are on all Sides cut down by the Enemy rushing in. Some that could escape away half-dead, were in the Eagerness of Flight dash'd against Rocks, Trees or Shrubs, and increased the Misery of their Death. Others that had only a Shield, or some such Covering for their Defence, in venturing upon the same Rocks to avoid Death, fell down in the Hurry and Darkness of the Night, and broke either Legs or Arms. Others that escap'd both these Disasters, but not knowing whither to fly, were drowned in the adjacent Rivers; and scarce one got away without some unhappy Accident befalling him. Besides the Garrison in the Town, upon Notice of the  
coming

coming of their Fellow Soldiers, fallied forth, and redoubled the Slaughter.

---

## CHAP. X.

### *A Consultation about what is to be asked of the Captive King.*

**B**UT *Brutus* (as was said before) having possessed himself of the Kings Tent, made it his Business to keep him a safe Prisoner; for he knew he could more easily attain his Ends by preserving his Life than by killing him: But the Party that was with him allowing no Quarter, made an utter Destruction in that Part they had possessed. The Night being spent in this Manner, and the next Morning discovering to their View so great an Overthrow of the Enemy, *Brutus* in Transports of Joy, gave full Liberty to his Men to do what they pleased with the Plunder, and then enters the Town with the King, to stay there till they had shared it among them. Which done, he again fortified the Castle, and gave Orders for burying of the Slain, and retired with his Forces to the Woods in great Joy for the Victory. After the Rejoycings of his People on this Occasion, the renowned General summoned the Ancientest of them,

B

and

and asked their Advice, what he had best desire of *Pandrasus*, who being now in their Power, would readily grant whatever they would request of him, in order to regain his Liberty. They according to their different Affections, desired different Things; some moving him to request that a certain Part of the Kingdom might be assigned them for their Habitation; others that he would demand Leave to depart, and to be supply'd with Necessaries for their Voyage. After they had been a long Time in suspense what to do, one of them named *Mempricius* rose up, and after Silence made, spake to them thus.

“ What can be the Occasion of your Suspence, Fathers, in a Matter which I think so much concerns your Safety?  
“ The only Thing you can request, with any Prospect of a firm Peace and Security to yourselves and your Posterity, is Liberty to depart. For if you make no better Terms with *Pandrasus* for his Life, than only to have some Part of the Country assigned you to live among the *Grecians*, you will never enjoy a lasting Peace while the Brothers, Sons, or Grandsons of those you killed yesterday shall continue to be your Neighbours. So long as the Memory of their Fathers Deaths shall remain, they will be your mortal Enemies,

“ Enemies, and upon the least trifling Pro-  
 “ vocation will endeavour to revenge them-  
 “ selves. Nor will you be Number enough  
 “ to withstand so great a Multitude of Peo-  
 “ ple : And if you shall happen to fall out  
 “ among yourselves, their Number will  
 “ daily increase, yours diminish. I pro-  
 “ pose therefore that you request of him  
 “ his eldest Daughter *Ignoge* for a Wife  
 “ for our General, and with her, Gold, Sil-  
 “ ver, Corn, and whatever else shall be  
 “ necessary for our Voyage. If we obtain  
 “ this, we may with his Leave remove to  
 “ some other Country.

---

## C H A P. XI.

*Pandrasus marries his Daughter  
 Ignoge to Brutus, who after his  
 departing from Greece, falls up-  
 on a desert Island, where he is  
 told by the Oracle of Diana what  
 Place he is to inhabit.*

**W**HEN he had ended his Speech in  
 Words to this Effect, the whole As-  
 sembly acquiesced in his Advice, and mo-  
 ved that *Pandrasus* might be brought in  
 among them, and condemned to a most

cruel Death, unless he would grant this Request. Immediately he was brought, and being placed in a Chair above the rest, and informed of the Tortures prepared for him, unless he would do what was commanded him, he made them this Answer.

“ Since my ill Fate has delivered me and  
“ my Brother *Antigonus* into your Hands,  
“ I can do no other than grant your Peti-  
“ tion, lest a Repulse may cost us our Lives,  
“ which are now entirely in your Power.  
“ In my Opinion the Advantage and Plea-  
“ sure of Life is preferable to all other Con-  
“ siderations; therefore wonder not that I  
“ am willing to redeem it at so great a  
“ Price. But though it is against my In-  
“ clination that I obey your Commands,  
“ yet it seems Matter of Comfort to me,  
“ that I am to give my Daughter to so  
“ Noble a Youth, whose Descent from the  
“ illustrious Race of *Priamus* and *Anchises*  
“ is clear, both from that Greatness of Mind  
“ that appears in him, and the certain Ac-  
“ counts we have had of it. For who less  
“ than himself, could have released from  
“ their Chains the banished *Trojans*, when  
“ reduced under Slavery to so many and  
“ great Princes? Who else could have en-  
“ couraged them to make Head against the  
“ *Grecians*? or with so small a Body of Men  
“ vanquished so numerous and powerful an  
“ Army,

‘ Army, and taken their King Prisoner in  
“ the Engagement? And therefore since  
“ this noble Youth has gained so much  
“ Glory by the Opposition he has made me,  
‘ I give him my Daughter *Ignoge*, and  
“ also Gold, Silver, Ships, Corn, Wine and  
“ Oyl, and whatever you shall find neces-  
“ sary for your Voyage. If you shall alter  
“ your Resolution, and think fit to conti-  
“ nue among the *Grecians*, I grant you the  
“ third Part of my Kingdom for your Ha-  
“ bitation; if not, I will faithfully per-  
“ form my Promise, and for your greater  
“ Security will stay as a Hostage with you  
“ till I have made it good.

Accordingly he held a Council, and di-  
rected Messengers to all the Shores of *Greece*,  
to get Ships together; which done, he de-  
livered them to the *Trojans*, to the Number  
of three hundred and twenty four, laden  
with all manner of Provision, and married  
his Daughter to *Brutus*. He made also a  
Present of Gold and Silver to each Man ac-  
cording to his Quality. When every Thing  
was performed, the King was set at Liber-  
ty; and the *Trojans* now released from his  
Power set sail with a fair Wind. But *Ignoge*  
standing upon the Stern of the Ship swooned  
away several Times in *Brutus*’s Arms, and  
with many Sighs and Tears lamented the  
leaving her Parents and Country, nor ever

turned her Eyes from the Shore while it was in Sight. *Brutus* in the mean Time endeavoured to assuage her Grief by kind Words and Embraces intermixed with Kisses, and ceased not from these Blandishments, till she grew weary of crying and fell asleep. During these and other Accidents, the Winds continued fair for two Days and a Night together, when at length they arrived at a certain Island called *Leogecia*, which had been formerly wasted by the Incurfions of Pirates, and was then uninhabited. *Brutus* not knowing this, sent three hundred armed Men ashore to see who inhabited it; but they finding no Body, killed several kinds of wild Beasts which they met with in the Groves and Woods, and came to a certain desolate City, in which they found a Temple of *Diana*, and in it a Statue of that Goddess which gave Answers to those that came to consult her. At last loading themselves with the Prey they had taken in hunting, they return to their Ships, and give their Companions an Account of this Country and City. Then they advised their Leader to go to the City, and after offering Sacrifices, to enquire of the Deity of the Place, what Country was allotted them for their Place of Settlement. To this Proposal all consented; so that *Brutus* attended with *Gerion* the Augur, and twelve of the ancientest Men, set forward to the Temple, with

with all Things necessary for the Sacrifice. Being arrived at the Place, and presenting themselves before the Shrine with Garlands about their Temples, as the ancient Rites required, they made three Fires to three Deities, viz. *Jupiter, Mercury and Diana*, and offered Sacrifices to each of them. *Brutus* himself holding before the Altar of the Goddess a consecrated Vessel filled with Wine, and the Blood of a white Hart, with his Face looking up to the Image, broke Silence in these Words.

*Diva potens nemorum, terror Sylvestribus apertis,*

*Cui licet amfractus ire per aethereos,*

*Infernaeque domos; terrestria jura resolve,*

*Et dic quas terras nos habitare velis?*

*Dic certam sedem qua te veneraber in ævum,*

*Qua tibi virginis templa dicabo choros?*

Goddeſs of Woods, tremendous in the Chace

To Mountain Bores, and all the Savage Race!

Wide o'er th' Æthereal Walks extends thy Sway,

And o'er th' Infernal Mansions void of Day!

On thy third Realm look down! unfold our Fate,

And ſay what Region is our deſtin'd Seat?

Where ſhall we next thy laſting Temples raiſe?

And Choirs of Virgins celebrate thy Praise?

Theſe Words he repeated nine Times, after which he took four Turns round the Altar, poured the Wine into the Fire, and then laid himſelf down upon the Harts-

B 4

Skin,

Skin, which he had spread before the Altar, where at last he fell asleep. About the third Hour of the Night, the usual Time for deep Sleep, the Goddess seemed to present herself before him, and foretel him his future Success as follows.

*Brute sub occasum solis trans Gallica regna,*

*Insula in oceano est undique clausa mari:*

*Insula in oceano est habitata gigantibus olim,*

*Nunc deserta quidem; gentibus apta tuis.*

*Hanc pete, namque tibi Sedes erit illa perennis:*

*Sic fiet navis altera Troja tuis.*

*Sic de prole tua reges nascentur: & ipsis*

*Totius terræ subditus orbis erit.*

Brutus there lies beyond the Gallick Bounds

An Island which the Western Sea surrounds,

By Giants once possess'd; now few remain

To bar thy Entrance, or obstruct thy Reign.

To reach that happy Shore thy Sails employ:

There Fate decrees to raise a second Troy,

And found an Empire in thy Royal Line,

Which Time shall ne'er destroy, nor Bounds confine.

The General awaked by the Vision was for some Time in Doubt with himself, whether what he had seen was a Dream, or a real Appearance of the Goddess herself, foretelling him of the Land to which he was to go. At last he called to his Companions, and related to them in Order the Vision he had in his Sleep, at which they very much rejoiced,

rejoyced, and were urgent to return to their Ships, and while the Wind favour'd them, to hasten their Voyage towards the West, in Pursuit of what the Goddeſs had promis'd. Without delay therefore they return to their Company, and ſet ſail again, and after a Courſe of thirty Days came to *Africa*, being ignorant as yet whither to ſteer. From thence they came to the the *Philenian* Altars, and to a Place called *Salina*, and ſail'd between *Ruſticada* and the Mountains of *Azara*, where they underwent great Danger by Pirates, but notwithstanding vanquiſh'd them, and enrich'd themſelves with their Spoils.

## C H A P. XII.

*Brutus enters Aquitain with Corineus.*

FROM thence paſſing the River *Malua* they arrived at *Mauritania*, where at laſt for want of Proviſions they were oblig'd to go aſhore; and dividing themſelves into ſeveral Bands they laid waſte that whole Country. When they had well ſtor'd their Ships, they ſteer'd to *Hercules's* Pillars, where they ſaw ſome of thoſe Sea-Monſters, called *Syrens*, which ſurrounded their Ships, and

and had very near overturn'd them. However they made a Shift to escape, and came to the *Tyrrhenian* Sea, upon the Shores of which they found four several Nations descended from the banish'd *Trojans*, that had accompanied *Antenor* in his Flight. The Name of their Commander was *Corineus*, a modest Man in Matters of Council, and excelling in Greatness of Courage and Boldness, who in an Encounter with any Person even of Gigantick Stature, would immediately overthrow him, as if he engag'd with a Child. When they understood from whom he was descended, they join'd Company with him and those under his Government, who from the Name of their Leader were afterwards called the *Cornish* People, and indeed were more serviceable to *Brutus* than the Rest in all his Engagements. From thence they came to *Aquitain*, and entring the Mouth of the *Loire* cast Anchor. There they staid seven Days and view'd the Country. At that Time *Goffarius Pictus* was King of *Aquitain*, who having an Account brought him of the Arrival of a foreign People with a great Fleet upon his Coasts, sent Ambassadors to them to demand, whether they brought with them Peace or War. The Ambassadors therefore in their Way towards the Fleet met with *Corineus*, who was come out with two hundred Men to hunt in the Woods. They demanded of him,

him, who gave him Leave to enter the King's Forests, and kill his Game: (which by an ancient Law no Body was to do without Leave from the Prince.) *Corineus* made Answer, That as to that there ought to be no Occasion for Leave; upon which one of them named *Imbertus*, rushing forward, with a full drawn Bow levelled a Shot at him. *Corineus* avoids the Arrow and immediately runs up to him, and with his Bow in his Hand breaks his Head. The rest fled after a narrow Escape, and carried the News of this Disaster to *Goffarius*. The *Pictavian* General was struck with Sorrow for it, and immediately raised a vast Army, to revenge on them the Death of his Ambassador. *Brutus* on the other Hand, upon hearing the Rumour of his coming, sends away the Women and Children to the Ships, which he took Care to be well guarded, and commands them to stay there, while he with the Rest that were able to bear Arms should go to meet the Army. At last when an Assault was made a bloody Fight ensu'd; in which after a great Part of the Day had been spent, *Corineus* was aham'd to see the *Aquitans* so bravely stand their Ground, and the *Trojans* maintaining the Fight without Victory. He takes therefore fresh Courage, and drawing off his Men to the right Wing, breaks in upon the very thickest of the Enemies Ranks, where he made such Slaughter on every

every Side, that at last he pierc'd through the Cohort, and put them all to Flight. In this Encounter he had lost his Sword, but by good Fortune met with a Battle-Ax, with which he clave down to the Waste every one that stood in his Way. *Brutus* and every Body else both Friends and Enemies were amaz'd at his Courage and Strength, who brandishing about his Battle-Ax among the flying Troops, did not a little terrify them with these insulting Words. "Whither fly ye, Cowards? whither fly ye, base Wretches? stand your Ground, that ye may encounter *Corineus*. What, for shame, do so many Thousands of you fly one Man? However, take this Comfort for your Flight, that you are pursued by one, before whom the *Tyrrhenian* Giants could not stand their Ground, but fell down slain in Heaps together.

### C H A P. XIII.

#### *Goffarius routed by Brutus.*

**A**T these Words one of them, named *Subardus*, who was a Consul, returns with three hundred Men to assault him: But *Corineus* with his Shield wards off the Blow, and lifting up his Battle-Ax gave him such

a Stroke upon the Top of his Helmet, that at once he clave him down to the Waste: And then forthwith rushing upon the Rest he made terrible Slaughter by wheeling about his Battle-Ax among them, and running to and fro shew'd no less Bravery in receiving the Blows, than in the Numbers he kill'd of the Enemy. Some had their Hands and Arms, some their very Shoulders, some again their Heads, and others their Legs cut off by him. All fought with him only, and he alone engag'd them all. *Brutus* seeing him thus beset, out of meer Affection to him runs with a Band of Men to his Assistance: At which the Battle is again renew'd with Vigour and with loud Shouts, and great Numbers slain on both Sides. But now the *Trojans* presently gain the Victory, and put *Goffarius* with his *Pictavians* to flight. The King after a narrow Escape went to several Parts of *Gaul*, to procure Succours among such Princes as were related or known to him. At that Time *Gaul* was subject to twelve Princes, who with equal Authority possess'd the Government of that whole Country. These receive him courteously, and promise with one Consent, to expel that foreign Nation from the Coasts of *Aquitain*.

## C H A P. XIV.

*Brutus after his Victory over Goffarius, destroys Aquitain with Fire and Sword.*

**BRUTUS** in Joy for the Victory enriches his Men with the Spoils of the Slain, and then dividing them again into several Bodies, marches into the Country with a Design to lay it wholly waste, and lade his Fleet with the Riches of it. With this View he sets the Cities on Fire, seizes the Riches that were hid in them, destroys the Fields, and makes dismal Slaughter among the Citizens and common People, being unwilling to leave so much as one alive of that wretched Nation. While he was making this Destruction over all *Aquitain*, he came to a Place where the City of *Tours* now stands, which he afterwards built, as *Homer* testifies. As soon as he had look'd out a Place convenient for the Purpose, he pitch'd his Camp there, for a Place of safe Retreat, when occasion should require. For he was afraid on Account of *Goffarius's* Approach with the Kings and Princes of *Gaul*, and a very great Army, which was now come near the Place, ready to give him Battle. Having therefore finish'd his Camp he expected

expected to engage with *Goffarius* in two Days Time, trusting in the Conduct and Courage of the Youth under his Command.

---

## CHAP. XV.

### *Goffarius's Fight with Brutus.*

**G**OFFARIUS upon Advices that the *Trojans* were in those Parts, ceas'd not to march Day and Night, till he came within a close View of *Brutus's* Camp; and then with a stern Look and disdainful Smile, broke out into these Expressions. "Oh wretched Fate! Have these base Exiles made a Camp also in my Kingdom? Arm, Arm, Soldiers, and march through their thickest Ranks: We shall quickly take these pitiful Fellows like Sheep, and send them about our Kingdom for Slaves." At these Words they prepar'd their Arms, and rang'd in twelve Bodies advance towards the Enemy. *Brutus* on the other Hand with his Forces drawn up in Order goes out boldly to meet them, and gave his Men Directions for their Conduct, that is, where to Assault and where to be upon the Defensive. At the Beginning of the Attack, the *Trojans* had the Advantage, and made

made a quick Slaughter of the Enemy, of whom there fell near two thousand; which so terrify'd the Rest, that they were just ready to fly. But as the Victory generally falls to that Side which has very much the Superiority in Numbers; so the *Gauls* being three to one of the other, though overpower'd at first, yet at last joining in a great Body together broke in upon the *Trojans*; and forc'd them to retire to their Camp with Slaughter. The Victory thus gained, they besieged them in their Camp, with a Design not to suffer them to stir out, before they should either surrender themselves Prisoners in Chains, or be cruelly starv'd to Death with a long Famine.

In the mean Time, *Corineus* the Night following entred into Consultation with *Brutus*, and propos'd to go out that Night by By-ways, and conceal himself in an adjacent Wood till break of Day; and while *Brutus* should sally forth upon the Enemy in the Morning Twilight, he with his Company would surprize them from behind, and put them to Slaughter. *Brutus* was pleas'd with this Stratagem of *Corineus*, who according to his Engagement got out cunningly with three thousand Men, and put himself under the Covert of the Woods. As soon as it was Day *Brutus* marshalled his Men and open'd the Camp to go out to Fight. The *Gauls* quickly meet him and begin the Engage-

Engagement: Many Thousands fall on both Sides, neither Party giving any Quarter. There was present a *Trojan*, named *Turonus*, the Nephew of *Brutus*, inferiour to none but *Corineus* in Courage and strength of Body. He alone with his Sword kill'd six hundred Men, but at last was unfortunately slain himself by the *Gauls* pouring in upon him. From him did the City of *Tours* derive its Name, because he was buried there. While both Armies were thus warmly engag'd, *Corineus* came upon them unawares, and fell fiercely upon the Back of the Enemy: Which put new Courage into their Friends on the other Side, and made them exert themselves with much more Vigour. The *Gauls* were astonish'd at the very shout of *Corineus's* Men, and thinking their Number to be much greater than it really was, they hastened to quit the Field; but the *Trojans* pursued them, and killed them in the Pursuit; nor desisted till they had got a compleat Victory. *Brutus*, though in Joy for the great Success, yet was afflicted to observe the Number of his Forces daily lessened, while that of the Enemy was still more and more. He was in suspense for some Time, whether he had best continue the War any longer; but at last chose to return to his Ships, while the greater Part of his Followers was yet safe, and hitherto victorious; and to go in quest of the Island, which the

Goddeſs had foretold him of. So without farther delay, he with the Conſent of his Company repaired to the Fleet, and lading it with the Riches and precious Spoils he had got, ſet ſail with a fair Wind towards the promiſed Iſland; and arrived at the Shore of *Totneſs*.

## C H A P. XVI.

### *Albion divided between Brutus and Corineus.*

**T**HE Iſland was then called *Albion*, and was inhabited by none but a few Giants. Notwithſtanding the pleaſant Situation of Places, the Plenty of Rivers abounding with Fiſh, and the engaging Proſpect of Woods, made *Brutus* and his Company very deſirous to fix their Habitation in it. In their paſſing therefore through all the Provinces, they force the Giants to fly into the Caves of the Mountains, and divide the Country among them according to the Direction of their Commander. Then they begin to till the Ground and build Houſes, ſo that in a little Time the Country look'd like a Place that had been long inhabited. At laſt *Brutus* calls the Iſland after his own Name *Britain*, and his Companions

panions *Britains*: For by this Derivation of the Name he was desirous to perpetuate his Memory. From whence afterwards the Language of the Nation, which at first bore the Name of *Trojan*, or rough *Greek*, was called *British*. But *Corineus*, in Imitation of his Leader, called that Part of the Island which fell to his Share, *Corinea*; and his People *Corineans*, after his Name: And though he had his Choice of the Provinces before all the Rest, yet he preferred this Country, which is now called in *Latin* *Cornabia*, either from its being in Shape of a Horn, (in *Latin* *Cornu*,) or from the Corruption of the said Name. For it was a Diversion to him to encounter with the Giants, which were in greater Number there, than in all the other Provinces, that fell to the Share of his Companions. Among the Rest was one detestable Monster, named *Goemagot*, in Stature twelve Cubits, and of such prodigious Strength, that at one Shake he pulled up an Oak, as if it had been a Hazel Wand. On a certain Day when *Brutus* was holding a solemn Festival to the Gods, in the Port where they at first landed, this Giant with twenty more of his Companions came in upon the *Britains*, among whom he made a dreadful Slaughter. But the *Britains* at last assembling together in a Body, put them to the Rout, and killed them every one but *Goemagot*.

*Brutus* had given Orders to have him preserved alive, out of a Desire to see a Combat between him and *Corineus*, who took a great Pleasure in such Rencounters. *Corineus* overjoy'd at this, prepares himself, and throwing aside his Arms, challenged him to wrestle with him. At the Beginning of the Rencounter, *Corineus* and the Giant standing Front to Front, strongly fetter each other in their Arms, and pant aloud for Breath; but *Goëmagot* presently grasping *Corineus* with all his Might, broke three of his Ribs, two on his right Side and one on his left. At which *Corineus* highly enraged, roused up his whole Strength, and snatching him upon his Shoulders, ran with him as fast as he was able for the Weight, to the next Shore, and there getting upon the Top of a high Rock, hurled down the savage Monster into the Sea; where falling by the Sides of craggy Rocks, he was cruelly tore to Pieces, and coloured the Waves with his Blood. The Place where he fell, taking its Name from the Giants Fall, is called *Lam-Goëmagot*, that is, *Goëmagot's Leap*, to this Day.



C H A P.

## C H A P. XVII.

*The Building of New Troy by Brutus upon the River Thames.*

**B**RUTUS having thus at last seen his Kingdom, entred upon a Design of building a City, and in order to it, travelled through the Land to find out a convenient Situation; and coming to the River *Thames*, he walked along the Shore, and at last pitched upon a Place very fit for his Purpose. Here therefore he built a City, which he called *New Troy*; under which Name it continued a long Time after, till at last by the Corruption of the Original Word, it came to be called *Trinovantum*. But afterwards when *Lud*, the Brother of *Cassibellaun*, who made War against *Julius Caesar*, obtained the Government of the Kingdom, he surrounded it with stately Walls, and Towers of admirable Workmanship, and ordered it to be called after his Name, *Kaer-Lud*, that is, the City of *Lud*. But this very Thing became afterwards the Occasion of a great Quarrel between him and his Brother *Nennius*, who took very heinously his abolishing the Name of *Troy* in this Country. Of this Quarrel *Gildas* the Historian has given a large Account; for

which Reason I chuse to pass it over, for fear of debasing by my Account of it, what so great a Writer has so eloquently related.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*New Troy being built, and Laws made for the Government of it, it is given to the Citizens that were to inhabit it.*

AFTER *Brutus* had finished the Building of the City, he made Choice of the Citizens that were to inhabit it, and prescribed them Laws for their peaceable Government. At this Time *Eli* the Priest governed in *Judea*, and the Ark of the Covenant was taken by the *Philistines*. At the same Time also, the Sons of *Hector*, after the Expulsion of the Posterity of *Antenor*, reigned in *Troy*; as did *Sylvius Aeneas* in *Italy*, he being the Son of *Aeneas*, the Uncle of *Brutus*, and the third King of the *Latins*.



T H E



T H E  
**British History.**

---

The Second Book.

---

C H A P. I.

*After the Death of Brutus, his three  
 Sons succeed him in the Kingdom.*



**D**URING these Transactions, Brutus had by his Wife Ignoge three famous Sons, whose Names were Locrin, Albanact and Kamber. These, after their Fathers Death, which happened in the twenty fourth Year after his Arrival, buried him in the City he had built, and divided the Kingdom of Britain among them, and then retired each

to his Government. *Locrin* the eldest, possessed the middle Part of the Island, called afterwards from his Name, *Loegria*. *Kamber* had that Part which lies beyond the River *Severn*, now called *Wales*, but which was for a long Time named *Kambria*; and hence that People still call themselves in their *British* Tongue *Kambri*. *Albanaet* the younger Brother, possessed the Country he called *Albania*, now *Scotland*. After they had a long Time reigned in Peace together, *Humber* King of the *Huns* arrived in *Albania*, and in Battel killed *Albanaet*, and forced his People to fly to *Locrin* for Protection.

## CHAP. II.

*Locrin* having routed *Humber*, falls in Love with *Estrildis*.

**L**OCRIN at the hearing of the News, joined with his Brother *Kamber*, and went attended with the whole Strength of the Kingdom to meet the King of the *Huns* near the River now called *Humber*, where he gave him Battle, and put him to the Rout. *Humber* made towards the River in his Flight, and was drowned in it, on which Occasion it has since bore his Name. *Locrin* after the Victory, bestows the Enemies

mies Plunder upon his Men, reserving only for himself the Gold and Silver he found in the Ships, together with three young Ladies of admirable Beauty; whereof one was the Daughter of a King in *Germany*, whom with the other two *Humber* had forcibly brought away with him, after he had ruined their Country. Her Name was *Estrildis*, and her Beauty such as was hardly to be matched. No Ivory, no new fallen Snow, no Lillies could exceed the Whiteness of her Skin. *Locrin* being very much captivated with the Love of her, would have gladly married her; which when *Corineus* found, he was extremely incensed, on Account of the Engagement *Locrin* had entred into with him to marry his Daughter,

---

C H A P. III.*Corineus resents Locrins Amour.*

HE went therefore to the King, and shaking a Battle-Ax in his right Hand, vented his Rage against him in these Words: "Do you thus reward me, "*Locrin*, for the many Wounds which I "have suffered under your Fathers Command, in his Wars with strange Nations,

“ons, that you must slight my Daughter,  
“and debase yourself to marry a Barba-  
“rian? While there is Strength in this  
“right Hand, that has been destructive to  
“so many Giants upon the *Tyrrhenian*  
“Coasts, I will never put up this Affront.”  
And repeating this again and again with a  
loud Voice, he shook his Battle-Ax as if he  
was going to strike him, till the Friends of  
both interposed, who after they had ap-  
peased *Corineus*, obliged *Locrin* to perform  
his Agreement.

#### C H A P. IV.

*Locrin at last marries Guendolœna,  
the Daughter of Corineus.*

**L**OCRIN therefore married *Corineus's*  
Daughter, named *Guendolœna*, yet still  
retained his Love for *Estrildis*, for whom he  
made Apartments under Ground, in which  
he entertained her, and caused her to be  
honourably attended. For he was resolved  
at least to carry on a private Amour with  
her, since for fear of *Corineus* he could not  
live with her openly. In this Manner he  
concealed her, and made frequent Visits to  
her for seven Years together, without the  
Privity of any, but those who were the most  
intim-

intimate of his Domesticks ; and all under a Pretence of performing some secret Sacrifices to his Gods ; and thus imposed upon the Credulity of every Body. In the mean Time *Estrildis* became big with Child, and was delivered of a most beautiful Daughter, whom she named *Sabre*. *Guendolana* was also with Child, and brought forth a Son, who was named *Maddan*, and put under the Care of his Grandfather *Corineus* for his Education.

---

## C H A P. V.

*Locrin is killed, and Estrildis with Sabre is thrown into a River.*

**B**UT in Proceſs of Time when *Corineus* was dead, *Locrin* divorced *Guendolana*, and advanced *Estrildis* to be Queen. *Guendolana* provoked beyond Measure at this, retired into *Cornwal*, where ſhe aſſembled together all the Forces of that Kingdom, and began to raiſe Diſturbances againſt *Locrin*. At laſt both Armies join Battle near the River *Sture*, where *Locrin* was killed by the Shot of an Arrow. After his Death, *Guendolana* took upon her the Government of the whole Kingdom, retaining her Fathers furious Spirit. For ſhe

she commanded *Efrildis* and her Daughter *Sabre* to be thrown into the River now called *Severn*, and published an Edict through all *Britain*, that the River should bear the Damsels Name, as being desirous to perpetuate her Memory, and by that the Infamy of her Husband : So that to this Day the River is called in the *British* Tongue *Sabren*, which by the Corruption of the Name, is in another Language *Sabrina*.

## C H A P. VI.

*Guendolœna delivers up the Kingdom to Maddan her Son, after whom succeeds Menpricius.*

**G**UENDOLOENA reigned fifteen Years after the Death of *Locrin*, who had reigned ten, and then advanced her Son *Maddan* (whom she saw now at Maturity) to the Throne, contenting herself with the Country of *Cornwal* for the Remainder of her Life. At this Time *Samuel* the Prophet governed in *Judea*, *Sylvius Aeneas* was yet living, and *Homer* was esteemed a famous Orator and Poet. *Maddan* now in Possession of the Crown, had by his Wife two Sons, *Menpricius* and *Malim*, and ruled the Kingdom in Peace and with Care

Care forty Years. As soon as he was dead, the two Brothers quarrelled for the Kingdom, each being ambitious of the Sovereignty of the whole Island. *Menpricius* impatient to attain his ambitious Ends, enters into Treaty with *Malim*, under Colour of making a Composition with him, but by a formed Conspiracy murdered him in the Assembly where their Ambassadors were met. By this Means he obtained the Dominion of the whole Island; over which he exercised such Tyranny, that he scarce left a Nobleman alive in it, and either by Violence or Treachery, oppressed every one that he apprehended might be likely to succeed him, pursuing his Hatred to his whole Race. He also deserted his own Wife, by whom he had a noble Youth named *Ebraucus*, and addicted himself to Sodomy, preferring unnatural Lust to the Pleasure of the Conjugal State. At last in the twentieth Year of his Reign, while he was a Hunting, he retired from his Company into a Valley, where he was surrounded by a great Multitude of ravenous Wolves, and in a horrible Manner devoured by them. Then did *Saul* reign in *Judea*, and *Euristheus* in *Lacedemonia*.

## C H A P.

## C H A P. VII.

*Ebraucus the Successor of Menpricius, conquers the Gauls, and builds the Towns Kaerebrauc, &c.*

**M**ENPRICIUS being dead, *Ebraucus* his Son, a Man of great Stature and wonderful Strength, took upon him the Government of *Britain*, which he held forty Years. He was the first after *Brutus* who invaded *Gaul* with a Fleet, and distressed its Provinces by killing their Men and laying waste their Cities; and having by this Means enriched himself with an infinite Mass of Gold and Silver, he returned Victorious. After this he built a City on the other Side of *Humber*, which from his own Name he called *Kaerebrauc*, that is the City of *Ebraucus*, about the Time that *David* reigned in *Judea*, and *Sylvius Latinus* in *Italy*, and that *Gad*, *Nathan* and *Asaph* prophesied in *Israel*. He also built the City of *Alclud* towards *Albania*, and the Town of Mount *Agued*, called at this Time the Castle of *Maidens*, or the Mountain of *Sorrow*.

C H A P.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Ebraucus's twenty Sons go to Germany, and his thirty Daughters to Sylvius Alba in Italy.*

**T**HIS Prince had twenty Sons and thirty Daughters by twenty Wives, and with great Valour governed the Kingdom of *Britain* sixty Years. The Names of his Sons were, *Brutus* surnamed *Greenfield*, *Margadud*, *Sisillius*, *Regin*, *Morivud*, *Bladud*, *Lagon*, *Bodloan*, *Kincar*, *Spaden*, *Gaul*, *Darden*, *Eldad*, *Ivor*, *Gangu*, *Hector*, *Kerin*, *Rud*, *Affarach*, *Bael*. The Names of his Daughters were *Gloigni*, *Ignogni*, *Oudas*, *Guenliam*, *Gaudid*, *Angarad*, *Gwendoloe*, *Tangustel*, *Gorgon*, *Medlan*, *Methahel*, *Ourar*, *Malure*, *Kambreda*, *Ragan*, *Gael*, *Ecub*, *Nest*, *Cheun*, *Stadud*, *Gladud*, *Ebren*, *Blagan*, *Aballac*, *Angaes*, *Galaes*, the most celebrated Beauty that was then in *Britain* or *Gaul*, *Edra*, *Anaor*, *Stadial*, *Egron*. All these Daughters their Father sent into *Italy* to *Sylvius Alba*, who reigned after *Sylvius Latinus*, where they were married among the *Trojan* Nobility, the *Latin* and *Sabine* Women refusing to match with them. But the Sons under the Conduct of their Brother *Affaracus* departed in a Fleet to Germany,

many, and having with the Assistance of *Sylvius Alba* subdued the People there, obtained that Kingdom.

## C H A P. IX.

*After Ebraucus reigns Brutus his Son, after him Leil, and after Leil, Hudibras.*

**B**UT *Brutus* surnamed *Greenshield*, stay'd with his Father, whom he succeeded in the Government, and reigned twelve Years. After him reigned *Leil* his Son, a peaceable and just Prince, who enjoying a prosperous Reign, built in the North Part of *Britain* a City called by his Name *Kaerleil*; at the same Time that *Solomon* began to build the Temple of *Jerusalem*, and the Queen of *Sheba* came to hear his Wisdom; at which Time also *Sylvius Epitus* succeeded his Father *Alba* in *Italy*. *Leil* reigned twenty five Years, but towards the latter End of his Life grew more remiss in his Government, so that his Neglect of Affairs quickly occasioned a civil Dissension in the Kingdom. After him reigned his Son *Hudibras* thirty nine Years, and composed the civil Dissension among his People. He built *Kaerlem* or *Canterbury*,  
*Kaerguen*

*Kaerguen* or *Winchester*, and the Town of Mount *Paladar*, now *Shaftsbury*. At this Place an Eagle spoke, while the Wall of the Town was building; and indeed I should not have failed transmitting the Speech to Posterity, had I thought it true as the rest of the History. At this Time reigned *Capys* the Son of *Epitus*; and *Haggai*, *Amos*, *Joel*, and *Azariah* were Prophets in *Israel*.

## C H A P. X.

*Bladud succeeds Hudibras in the Kingdom, and practises Magical Operations.*

NEXT succeeded *Bladud* his Son, and reigned twenty Years. He built *Kaerbadus*, now *Bath*, and made hot Baths in it for the Benefit of the Publick, which he dedicated to the Goddess *Minerva*; in whose Temple he kept Fires that never went out nor consumed to Ashes, but as soon as they began to decay were turned into Balls of Stone. About this Time the Prophet *Elias* prayed that it might not rain upon Earth; and it did not reign for three Years and six Months. This Prince was a very ingenious Man, and taught Necromancy in his Kingdom, nor left off pursuing

ing his Magical Operations, till he attempted to fly to the upper Region of the Air with Wings he had prepared, and fell down upon the Temple of *Apollo* in the City of *Trinouantum*, where he was dashed to Pieces.

## CHAP. XI.

*Leir, the Son of Bladud, having no Son, divides his Kingdom among his Daughters.*

AFTER this unhappy Fate of *Bladud*, *Leir* his Son was advanced to the Throne, and nobly governed his Country sixty Years. He built upon the River *Sore* a City called in the *British* Tongue *Kaerleir*, in the *Saxon* *Leircestre*. He was without Male Issue, but had three Daughters whose Names were *Gonorilla*, *Regau*, and *Cordeilla*, of whom he was doatingly fond, but especially of his youngest *Cordeilla*. When he began to grow old, he had Thoughts of dividing his Kingdom among them, and of bestowing them on such Husbands, as were fit to be advanced to the Government with them. But to make Tryal who was the worthiest of the best Part of his Kingdom, he went to each of them to ask, which of them

them loved him most. The Question being proposed, *Gonorilla* the Eldest made Answer, "That she called Heaven to Witness, she loved him more than her own Soul." The Father reply'd, "Since you have preferred my declining Age before your own Life, I will marry you, my dearest Daughter, to whomsoever you shall make Choice of, and give with you the third Part of my Kingdom." Then *Regau*, the second Daughter, willing after the Example of her Sister, to prevail upon her Fathers good Nature, answered with an Oath, "That she could not otherwise express her Thoughts, but that she loved him above all Creatures." The credulous Father upon this made her the same Promise that he did to her elder Sister, that is, the Choice of a Husband, with the third Part of his Kingdom. But *Cordeilla* the youngest, understanding how easily he was satisfied with the flattering Expressions of her Sisters, was desirous to make Tryal of his Affection after a different Manner. "My Father, said she, Is there any Daughter that can love her Father more than Duty requires? In my Opinion, whoever pretends to it, must disguise her real Sentiments under the Veil of Flattery. I have always loved you as a Father, nor do I yet depart from my purposed Duty; and if you insist to have something more extorted from me,

“ hear now the Greatness of my Affection,  
“ which I always bear you, and take this  
“ for a short Answer to all your Questions;  
“ Look how much you have, so much is  
“ your Value, and so much I love you.”  
The Father supposing that she spoke this  
out of the Abundance of her Heart, was  
highly provoked, and immediately reply’d;  
“ Since you have so far despised my Old-  
“ age, as not to think me worthy the Love  
“ that your Sisters express for me, you shall  
“ have from me the like Regard, and shall  
“ be excluded from any Share with your  
“ Sisters in my Kingdom. Notwithstand-  
“ ing I do not say but that since you are  
“ my Daughter, I will marry you to some  
“ Foreigner, if Fortune offers you any such  
“ Husband; but will never, I do assure  
“ you, make it my Business to procure so  
“ honourable a Match for you as for your  
“ Sisters; because though I have hitherto  
“ loved you more than them, you have in  
“ Requital thought me less worthy your  
“ Affection than they.” And without farther  
Delay, after Consultation with his No-  
bility, he bestowed his two other Daugh-  
ters upon the Dukes of *Cornwal* and *Albania*,  
with half the Island at present, but after his  
Death, the Inheritance of the whole Mo-  
narchy of *Britain*.

It happened after this, that *Aganippus*  
King of the *Franks*, having heard of the  
Fame

Fame of *Cordeilla's* Beauty, forthwith sent his Ambassadors to the King to desire *Cordeilla* in Marriage. The Father retaining yet his Anger to her, made Answer; "That he was very willing to bestow his Daughter, but without either Money or Territories; because he had already given away his Kingdom with all his Treasure, to his elder Daughters, *Gonorilla* and *Regan*." When this was told *Aganippus*, he being very much in Love with the Lady, sent again to King *Leir*, to tell him, "That he had Money and Territories enough, as he possessed the third Part of *Gaul*, and desired no more than his Daughter only, that he might have Heirs by her." At last the Match was concluded, and *Cordeilla* was sent to *Gaul*, and married to *Aganippus*.

---

## C H A P. XII.

*Leir finding the Ingratitude of his two eldest Daughters, betakes himself to his youngest Cordeilla in Gaul.*

A Long Time after this, when *Leir* came to be infirm through Old-age, the two Dukes, upon whom he had bestowed *Britain* with his two Daughters, made an

Insurrection against him, and deprived him of his Kingdom, and of all Regal Authority which he had hitherto exercised with great Power and Glory. But at last they came to an Agreement, and *Maglaunus* Duke of *Albania*, one of his Sons-in-Law, was to allow him and sixty Soldiers, who were to be kept for State, a Subsistence at his own House. After two Years Stay with his Son-in-Law, his Daughter *Gonorilla* grudged at the Number of his Men, who began to upbraid the Ministers of the Court with their scanty Allowance; and having spoke to her Husband about it, gave Orders that the Number of her Fathers Attendants be reduced to thirty, and the rest discharged. The Father resenting this Treatment, left *Maglaunus*, and went to *Henuinus*, Duke of *Cornwal*, to whom he had married his Daughter *Regau*. Here he met with an honourable Reception, but before the Year was at an End, a Quarrel happened between the two Families, which raised *Regau's* Indignation; so that she commanded her Father to discharge all his Attendants but five, and to be contented with their Service. This second Affliction was unsupportable to him, and made him return again to his former Daughter, with Hopes that the Misery of his Condition might move in her some Sentiments of Filial Piety, and that he with his Family might find a Subsistence from her. But she

not

not forgetting her Resentments, swore by the Gods, He should not stay with her, unless he would dismiss his Retinue, and be contented with the Attendance of one Man; and with bitter Reproaches, told him how ill his Desire of vain-glorious Pomp suited with his Old-age and Poverty. When he found that she was by no Means to be prevailed upon, he was at last forced to comply, and dismissing the Rest, to take up with one Man. But by this Time he began to reflect more sensibly with himself upon the Grandeur from which he had fallen, and the miserable State he was now reduced to, and to enter upon Thoughts of going beyond Sea to his youngest Daughter. Yet he doubted whether he should be able to move her Commiseration, whom (as was related above) he had treated so unworthily. However disdaining to bear any longer such base Usage, he took Shipping to *Gaul*. In his Passage, he observed he had only the third Place given him among the Princes that were with him in the Ship, at which with deep Sighs and Tears, he burst forth into the following Complaint.

“ O irreversible Decrees of the Fates,  
“ that never swerve from your stated  
“ Course! Why did you ever advance me to  
“ an unstable Felicity, since the Punishment  
“ of lost Happiness is greater than the Sense

“ of present Misery ? The Remembrance of  
“ the Time when vast Numbers of Men  
“ obsequiously attended me at the taking  
“ of Cities and wasting the Enemies Coun-  
“ tries, more deeply pierces my Heart, than  
“ the View of my present Calamity, which  
“ has exposed me to the Derision of those  
“ who formerly laid at my Feet. O Rage  
“ of Fortune ! Shall I ever again see the  
“ Day, when I may be able to reward those  
“ according to their Deserts who have for-  
“ saken me in my Distress ? How true was  
“ thy Answer, *Cordeilla*, when I asked thee  
“ concerning thy Love to me, *As much as*  
“ *you have, so much is your Value, and so much*  
“ *I love you* ? While I had any Thing to give  
“ they valued me, being Friends not to me,  
“ but to my Gifts : They loved me then in-  
“ deed, but my Gifts much more : When  
“ my Gifts ceased, my Friends vanished.  
“ But with what Face shall I presume to see  
“ you my dearest Daughter, since in my  
“ Anger I married you upon worse Terms  
“ than your Sisters, who, after all the migh-  
“ ty Favours they have received from me,  
“ suffer me to be in Banishment and Poverty ?

As he was lamenting his Condition in these and the like Expressions, he arrived at *Karitia*, where his Daughter was, and waited before the City while he sent a Messenger to inform her of the Misery he was fallen into,

into, and to desire her Relief to a Father that suffered both Hunger and Nakedness. *Cordeilla* was startled at the News, and wept bitterly, and with Tears asked him how many Men her Father had with him. The Messenger answered, he had none but one Man, who had been his Armour-bearer, and was staying with him without the Town. Then she took what Money she thought might be sufficient, and gave it the Messenger, with Orders to him to carry her Father to another City, and there give out that he was Sick, and to provide for him Bathing, Clothes, and all other Nourishment. She likewise gave Orders that he should take into his Service forty Men well cloathed and accoutred, and when all Things were thus prepared that he should then notify his Arrival to King *Aganippus* and his Daughter. The Messenger quickly returning carried *Leir* to another City, and there kept him concealed, till he had performed every Thing that *Cordeilla* had commanded.

---

C H A P. XIII.

*He is very honourably received by Cordeilla, and the King of Gaul.*

AS soon as he was provided with his Royal Apparel, Ornaments and Retinue, he sent Word to *Aganippus* and his Daughter,

Daughter, that he was driven out of his Kingdom of *Britain* by his Sons-in-Law, and was come to them to procure their Assistance for the Recovering of his Dominions. Upon which they being attended with their chief Ministers of State and the Nobility of the Kingdom, went out to meet him, and received him honourably, and submitted to his Management the whole Power of *Gaul*, till such Time as he should be restored to his former Dignity.

---

#### C H A P. XIV.

*Leir by the Help of his Son-in-Law  
and Cordiella, being restored to  
the Kingdom dies.*

**I**N the mean Time *Aganippus* sent Officers over all *Gaul* to raise an Army, in Order to restore his Father-in-Law to his Kingdom of *Britain*. Which done, *Leir* returned to *Britain* with his Son and Daughter and their Forces they had raised, where he fought with his Sons-in-Law, and routed them. Thus having reduced the whole Kingdom under his Power, he died in the third Year after. *Aganippus* also died; so that *Cordeilla* now obtaining the Government of the Kingdom, buried her Father in a certain

tain Vault, which he ordered to be made for him under the River *Sore* in *Leicester*. The Subterraneous Place where he was buried, had been built to the Honour of the God *Janus*. And here all the Workmen of the City, upon the anniversary Solemnity of that Festival, used to begin their yearly Labours.

## C H A P. XV.

*Cordeilla being imprisoned kills herself. Margan aspiring to the whole Kingdom is killed by Cunedagius.*

**A**FTER a peaceable Possession of the Government for five Years, *Cordeilla* began to meet with Disturbances from the two Sons of her Sisters, being both young Men of great Spirit, whereof one, named *Margan*, was born to *Maglaunus*, and the other, named *Cunedagius*, to *Henuinus*. These after the Death of their Fathers succeeding them in their Dukedoms, were incensed to see *Britain* subject to the Power of a Woman, and raised Forces in Order to make an Insurrection against the Queen; nor desisted from their Hostilities, till after a general Waste of her Countries, and several Battles fought, they at last took her and put her in Prison; where

where for Grief at the Loss of her Kingdom she killed herself. After this they divided the Island between them, of which the Part that reaches from the North Side of *Humber* to *Cathness*, fell to *Margan*; the other Part from the same River Westward was *Cunedagius's* Share. At the End of two Years, some restless Spirits that took Pleasure in the Troubles of the Nation, had Access to *Margan*, and inspired him with vain Conceits by representing to him, how mean and disgraceful it was for him not to govern the whole Island, which was his due by Right of Birth. Stirred up with these and the like Suggestions, he marched with an Army through *Cunedagius's* Country, and began to burn all before him. A War thus breaking out, he was met by *Cunedagius* and all his Forces, and upon an Attack made he killed no small Number of his Men, put *Margan* to Flight, and pursued him from one Province to another, till at last he killed him in a Town of *Kambria*, which since his Death has been by the Country People called *Margan* to this Day. After the Victory, *Cunedagius* gained the Monarchy of the whole Island, which he governed gloriously for three and thirty Years. At this Time flourished the Prophets *Isaiab* and *Hosbea*, and *Rome* was built upon the eleventh of the Calends of *May* by the two Brothers, *Romulus* and *Remus*.

C H A P.

## C H A P. XVI.

*The Successors of Cunedagius in the Kingdom : Ferrex is killed by his Brother Porrex, in a Dispute for the Government.*

A T last *Cunedagius* dying, was succeeded by his Son *Rivallo*, a fortunate Youth, who diligently apply'd himself to the Affairs of the Government. In his Time it rained Blood three Days together, and there fell vast swarms of Flies, which was followed by a great Mortality among the People. After him succeeded *Gurgustius* his Son; after him *Sisillius*; after him *Jago* the Nephew of *Gurgustius*; after him *Kinmarcus* the Son of *Sisillius*; after him *Gorbogudo* who had two Sons, *Ferrex* and *Porrex*. When their Father grew old they began to quarrel about the Succession; but *Porrex*, fired with a greater Ambition, forms a Design of killing his Brother by Treachery, which the other discovering escaped, and passed over into *Gaul*. There he procures Aid from *Suard* King of the *Franks*, with which he returned and made War upon his Brother: Coming to an Engagement, *Ferrex* and all the Forces attending him were killed. When their Mother, whose Names was *Widen*, came to  
be

be informed of her Sons Death, she fell into a great Rage, and conceived a mortal Hatred against the other. For she had a greater Affection for the Deceased than for him, so that nothing less would appease her Indignation for his Death, than her revenging it upon her surviving Son. She took therefore her Opportunity when he was asleep, and then fell upon him with her Women assisting her, and tore him to pieces. From that Time a long Civil War oppressed the People, and the Island came to be divided under the Power of five Kings, who mutually harassed one another.

---

## C H A P. XVII.

*Dunwallo Molmutius gains the Sceptre of Britain, from whom came the Molmutine Laws.*

**B**UT at length arose a Youth of great Spirit, named *Dunwallo Molmutius*, who was the Son of *Cloten* King of *Cornwal*, and excelled all the Kings of *Britain* in Valour and Gracefulness of Person. When his Father was dead, he was no sooner possessed of the Government of that Country, than he made War against *Tinner* King of *Loegria*, and killed him in Battle. Hereupon *Radau-*

*cus* King of *Kambria*, and *Staterius* King of *Albania* had a Meeting, wherein they formed an Alliance together, and marched thence with their Armies into *Dunwallo's* Country to destroy all before them. *Dunwallo* met them with thirty thousand Men, and gave them Battle: And when a great Part of the Day was spent in the Fight, and the Victory yet dubious, he drew off six hundred of his bravest Men, and commanded them to put on the Armour of the Enemies that were slain, as he himself also did, and threw aside his own. Thus accoutred he marched up with speed to the Enemies Ranks, as if he was of their Party, and approaching the very Place where *Rudaucus* and *Staterius* were, commanded his Men to fall upon them. In this Assault were the two Kings killed and many others with them. But *Dunwallo Molmutius*, fearing lest in this Disguise his own Men might fall upon him, returns with his Companions to put off the Enemies Armour, and take his own again; and then encourages them to renew the Assault, which they did with great Vigour, and in a short Time got the Victory, by dispersing and putting to Flight the Enemy. From hence he marches into the Enemies Countries, destroys their Towns and Cities, and reduces the People under his Obedience. When he had made an entire Reduction of the whole Island, he prepared himself a Crown of Gold,  
and

and restored the Kingdom to its ancient State. This Prince established those which the Britains call the *Molmutine* Laws, famous among the *English* to this Day. In these among other Things, of which *St. Gildas* wrote a long Time after, he enacted, that the Temples of the Gods, as also Cities, should have the Privilege of giving Sanctuary and Protection to any Fugitive or Criminal, that should fly to them from his Enemy. He likewise enacted, that the Ways leading to those Temples and Cities, as also the Husbandmens Plows, should be allowed the same Privilege. So that in his Days, the Murders and Cruelties committed by Robbers were prevented, and every Body passed safe without any Violence offered him. At last after a Reign of forty Years spent in these and other Acts of Government, he died, and was buried in the City of *Trinovantum* near the Temple of *Concord*, which he himself built at the Establishment of his Laws.



THE



THE  
**British History.**

The Third Book.

CHAP. I.

*Brennius breaks Covenant with Belinus his Brother, and in order to make War against him, marries the Daughter of the King of the Norwegians.*

**A**FTER this a violent Quarrel happened between his two Sons *Belinus* and *Brennius*, who were both ambitious of succeeding in the Kingdom. The Dispute was, whether of them should have the Honour of wearing the Crown: After a great many sharp Con-  
flicts

facts that passed between them, the Friends of both at last interposed, and brought them to agree upon a Division of the Kingdom on these Terms; That *Belinus* should enjoy the Crown of the Island, with the Dominions of *Loegria*, *Kambria* and *Cornwal*, as being the First-born; and because according to the *Trojan* Constitution the Right of Inheritance ought to come to him: And *Brennius*, as being the Younger, should be subject to his Brother, and have for his Share *Northumberland*, which extended from the River *Humber* to *Cathness*. The Covenant therefore being confirmed upon these Conditions, they ruled the Country for five Years in Peace and Justice. But such a State of Prosperity could not long stand against the Endeavours of Faction. For now some lying incendiaries had Access to *Brennius*, and addressed themselves to him in this Manner.

“ What sluggish Spirit has possessed you,  
“ that you can bear Subjection to *Belinus*,  
“ to whom by Parentage and Blood you  
“ are equal; besides your Experience in military Affairs, which you have gained by  
“ several Engagements, when you so often  
“ repulsed *Cheuiphus*, General of the *Morines*,  
“ upon his invading our Country, and drove  
“ him out of your Kingdom? Be no longer  
“ bound by a Treaty which is a Reproach  
“ to you, but marry the Daughter of *Elfin-*  
“ *gius* King of the *Norwegians*, that with his  
“ Assistance

“ Assistance you may recover your lost Dignity. ” The Young Man inflamed with these and the like specious Suggestions, hearkened to them, and went to *Norway*, where he married the Kings Daughter, as his Flatterers had instructed him.

---

## C H A P. II.

*Brennius's Sea-Fight with Guichthlac King of the Dacians. Guichthlac and Brennius's Wife, being driven ashore are taken by Belinus.*

**I**N the mean Time the Brother informed of this, took it heinously, that without his Leave he had presumed to act thus against him. Whereupon he marched into *Northumberland*, and possessed himself of that Country and the Cities in it, which he garrisoned with his own Men. *Brennius* upon Notice given him of what his Brother had done, prepares a Fleet to return to *Britain* with a great Army of *Norwegians*. But while he was under Sail with a fair Wind, he was overtaken by *Guichthlac* King of the *Dacians*, who had pursued him. This Prince had been deeply in Love with the young Lady that *Brennius* had married, and out of meer Grief and Vexation for the Loss of

her, had prepared a Fleet for the Pursuit of *Brennius* with all Expedition. In the Sea-Fight that happened on this Occasion, he had the Fortune to take the very Ship in which the Lady was, and brought her in among his Companions. But during the Engagement contrary Winds arose on a sudden, which brought on a Storm, and dispersed the Ships and drove them upon different Shores: So that the King of the *Dacians* being driven up and down, after a five Days Course arrived with the Lady at *Northumberland*, under dreadful Apprehensions, as not knowing upon what Country this unforeseen Casualty had thrown him. When this came to be known to the Country People, they took them and carried them to *Belinus*, who was upon the Sea-Coasts expecting the Arrival of his Brother. There were with *Guichthlac's* Ship three others, one of which had belonged to *Brennius's* Fleet. As soon as they had declared to the King who they were, he was overjoy'd at this happy Accident, while he was endeavouring to revenge himself on his Brother.



## C H A P. III.

*Belinus in a Battle routs Brennius,  
who thereupon flies to Gaul.*

**I**N a few Days after appeared *Brennius*, with his Fleet got together again, and arrived in *Albania*; and then receiving Information of the taking of his Wife and others, and that his Brother had seized the Kingdom of *Northumberland* in his Absence, he sent his Ambassadors to him, to demand the Restitution of his Wife and Kingdom; and if he refused them, to declare that he would destroy the whole Island from Sea to Sea, and kill his Brother whenever he could come to an Engagement with him. On the other Hand *Belinus* absolutely refused to comply with his Demands, and assembling together the whole Power of the Island, went into *Albania* to give him Battle. *Brennius* upon Advice that he had suffered a Repulse, and that his Brother was upon his march against him, advanced to meet him in a Wood called *Calaterium*, in order to an Attack. When they were arrived upon the Field of Battle, each of them divided his Men into several Bodies, and then approaching towards one another, began the Fight. A great Part of the Day was spent in it, be-

cause on both Sides, the bravest Men were engaged ; and much Blood was shed, by Reason of the Fury with which they encountered each other. So great was the Slaughter, that the Wounded fell in Heaps, like standing Corn cut down by Reapers. At last the *Britains* prevailing, the *Norwegians* fled with their shattered Troops to the Ships, but were pursued by *Belinus*, and killed without Mercy. In that Battel fell fifteen thousand Men ; nor were there a thousand of the Rest that escaped unhurt. *Brennius* with much Difficulty getting one ship, went as Fortune drove him to the Coasts of *Gaul* ; but the Rest that had attended him, were forced to sculk up and down wheresoever their Misfortunes led them.

---

#### C H A P. IV.

*King of Dacia, with Brennius's Wife, is released out of Prison.*

*LINUS* after this Victory, called a Council of his Nobility, to advise with what he should do with the King of *Dacians*, who had sent a Message to him in Prison, that he would submit himself to the Kingdom of *Dacia* to him, and also pay

pay a yearly Tribute, if he might have Leave to depart with his Mistress. He offered likewise to confirm this Covenant with an Oath, and giving of Hostages. When this Proposal was laid before the Nobility, they unanimously gave their Assent, that *Belinus* should grant *Guichthlac* his Petition upon the Terms offered. Accordingly he did grant it, and *Guichthlac* was released from Prison, and returned with his Mistress into *Dacia*.

---

### C H A P. V.

*Belinus revives and confirms the Molmutine Laws, especially about the High-ways.*

**B**ELINUS now finding no Body in the Kingdom of *Britain* able to make Head against him, and being possessed of the Sovereignty of the whole Island from Sea to Sea, confirmed the Laws his Father had made, and gave Command for a settled Execution of Justice through his Kingdom. But especially he ordered that Cities, and the Ways leading to them, should enjoy the same Privilege of Peace that *Dunwallo* had established. But there happened to arise a Controversy about the Ways, because the Limits determining them were unknown. The King therefore willing to

clear the Law of all Ambiguities, summoned all the Workmen of the Island together, and commanded them to pave a Causeway of Stone and Mortar, which should run the whole Length of the Island, from the Sea of *Cornwal*, to the Shore of *Cashnefs*, and lead directly to the Cities that lay along that Extent. Another he commanded to be made over the Breadth of the Kingdom, leading from *Menevia*, that was situated upon the *Demetian* Sea, to *Hamo's* Port, and to pass through the interjacent Cities. Other two he also made obliquely through the Island, for a Passage to the rest of the Cities. Then he confirmed to them all Honours and Privileges, and prescribed a Law for the Punishment of any Injury committed upon them. But if any one is curious to know all that he decreed concerning them, let him read the *Molmutine* Laws, which *Gildas* the Historian translated from *British* into *Latin*, and King *Alfred* into *Englisch*.

## CHAP. VI.

*Brennius being made Duke of the Allobroges, returns to Britain to fight his Brother.*

WHILE *Belinus* was thus reigning in Peace and Tranquillity, his Brother *Brennius*, who (as we said before) was driven

ven upon the Coasts of *Gaul*, suffered great Torments of Mind. For it was a great Affliction to him to be banished his Country, and to have no Power of returning to retrieve his Loss. Being ignorant what Course to take, he went among the Princes of *Gaul*, accompanied only with twelve Men; and when he had related his Misfortune to every one of them, but could procure Assistance from none, he went at last to *Seginus*, Duke of the *Allobroges*, from whom he had an honourable Reception. During his Stay here, he contracted such an Intimacy with the Duke, that he became the greatest Favourite in the Court. For in all Affairs both of Peace and War, he shew'd a great Capacity, so that this Prince loved him with a paternal Affection. He was besides of a graceful Aspect, tall and slender in Stature, and expert in Hunting and Fowling, as became his Princely Birth. So great was the Friendship between them, that the Duke resolved to give him his only Daughter in Marriage; and in Case he himself should have no Male Issue, he appointed him and his Daughter to succeed him in his Kingdom of the *Allobroges* after his Death: But if he should yet have a Son, then he promised his Assistance to advance him to the Kingdom of *Britain*. Neither was this the Desire of the Duke only, but of all the Nobility of his Court, with whom he had very  
much

much ingratiated himself. So then without farther Delay, the Marriage was solemnized, and the Princes of the Country paid their Homage to him, as the Successor to the Throne. Scarce was the Year at an End, before the Duke died, and then *Brennius* took his Opportunity of engaging those Princes of the Country firmly in his Interest, whom before he had obliged with his Friendship. And this he did by bestowing generously upon them the Duke's Treasure, which had been hoarded up from the Times of his Ancestors. But that which the *Allobroges* most esteemed him for, was his sumptuous Entertainments, and keeping an open House for all.

---

## C H A P. VII.

*Belinus and Brennius being made Friends by the Mediation of their Mother, propose the subduing of Gaul.*

WHEN he had thus gained an universal Affection, he began to consult with himself, how he might take Revenge upon his Brother *Belinus*. And when he had signified his Intentions concerning it to his Subjects, they unanimously concurred

curred with him, and expressed their Readiness to attend him to whatever Kingdom he pleased to conduct them. Then in a short Time raising a vast Army, he entred into a Treaty with the *Gauls*, for a free Passage through their Country into *Britain*; and having fitted out a Fleet upon the Coast of *Neustria*, he set sail, and with a fair Wind arrived at the Island. Upon hearing the Rumour of his coming, his Brother *Belinus*, accompanied with the whole Strength of the Kingdom, marched out to engage with him. But when the two Armies were drawn out in Order of Battle, and just ready to begin the Attack, *Conwenna* their Mother, who was yet living, passed in great haste through the Ranks, out of an Impatience to see her Son, whom she had not seen of a long Time. As soon therefore as she had with trembling Steps reached the Place where he stood, she threw her Arms about his Neck, and in Transports kissed him; then uncovering her Bosom, she addressed herself to him, in Words interrupted with Sighs, to this Effect.

“ Remember, Son, remember these  
“ Breasts you have sucked, and the Womb  
“ wherein the Creator of all Things formed  
“ you, and from whence he brought you  
“ forth into the World, while I endured  
“ the

“ the greatest Anguish. By the Pains then  
“ I have suffered for you, I intreat you hear  
“ my Request: Pardon your Brother, and  
“ moderate your Anger. You ought not  
“ to revenge yourself upon him that has  
“ done you no Injury. For what you com-  
“ plain of, that you was banished your  
“ Country by him, if you duly consider  
“ the Event of it, cannot in Strictness be  
“ called Injustice. He did not banish you  
“ to make your Condition worse, but for-  
“ ced you to quit a meaner, that you  
“ might attain a higher Dignity. At first  
“ you enjoy’d only a Part of a Kingdom,  
“ and that in Subjection to your Brother:  
“ As soon as you lost that, you became his  
“ Equal, by gaining the Kingdom of the  
“ *Allobroges*. What has he then done but  
“ promoted you from a Viceroy, to be a  
“ great King? Consider farther, that the  
“ Difference betwixt you began not through  
“ him, but yourself, who with the Assit-  
“ ance of the King of *Norway*, made Insur-  
“ rection against him.

Moved with these Representations of his Mother, he obeyed her with a composed Mind, and putting off his Helmet of his own Accord, went straight with her to his Brother. *Belinus* seeing him approach with a peaceable Countenance, threw down his Arms, and ran to embrace him; so that  
now

now without any Difficulty, they became Friends again ; and disarming their Forces, marched with them peaceably together to *Trinovantum*. And here after Consultation what Enterprize to undertake, they prepared to conduct their Confederate Army into the Provinces of *Gaul*, and to reduce that whole Country under their Subjection.

---

C H A P. VIII.

*Belinus and Brennius after the Conquest of Gaul, march with their Army to Rome.*

THE Year after, they accordingly passed over into *Gaul*, and began to lay waste that Country. The News of which spreading through those several Nations, all the petty Kings of the *Franks* entered into a Confederacy, and went out to fight them. But the Victory falling to *Belinus* and *Brennius*, the *Franks* fled with their broken Forces ; and the *Britains* and *Allobroges* elevated with their Success, ceased not to pursue them till they had taken their Kings, and reduced them under their Power. Then fortifying the Cities they had taken, they brought the whole Kingdom under their Subjection in less than a Years Time.

Time. At last after a Reduction of all the Provinces, they marched with their whole Army towards *Rome*, and destroyed the Cities and Villages as they passed through *Italy*.

## C H A P. IX.

*The Romans make a Covenant with Brennius, but afterwards break it ; for which Reason Rome is besieged and taken by Brennius.*

THE two Consuls of *Rome* were then *Gabius* and *Porfena*, to whose Care the Government of the Country was committed : Who when they saw that no Nation was able to withstand the Power of *Belinus* and *Brennius*, came with the Consent of the Senate to them, to desire Peace and Amity. They likewise offered large Presents of Gold and Silver, and to pay a yearly Tribute, on Condition they might be suffered to enjoy their own in Peace. The two Kings therefore taking Hostages of them yielded to their Petition, and drew back their Forces into *Germany*. While they were employing their Arms inarrassing that People, the *Romans* repented of their Agreement, and taking new Courage, went to assit the *Germans*.

This

This Step highly enraged the Kings against them, who concerted Measures how to carry on a War with both Nations. For the Greatness of the *Italian* Army was a Terror to them. The Result of their Council was, that *Belinus* with the *Britains* stay'd in *Germany*, to engage with the Enemy there; while *Brennius* and his Army marched to *Rome*, to revenge on the *Romans* their Breach of Treaty. As soon as the *Italians* perceived their Design, they quitted the *Germans*, and hastened to get before *Brennius*, in his march to *Rome*. *Belinus* had Intelligence of it, and speedily marched back with his Army the same Night, and possessing himself of a Valley through which the Enemy was to pass, there lay hid in expectation of their coming. The next Day the *Italians* came upon a full March to the same Place; but when they saw the Valley glittering with the Enemy's Armour, they were struck with Confusion, thinking *Brennius* and the *Galli Senones* were there. At this favourable Opportunity, *Belinus* on a sudden rushed forth, and furiously fell upon them: And the *Romans* on the other Hand, in great Surprise, as quickly fly the Field, since they neither were armed, nor marched in any Order. But *Belinus* gave them no Quarter, and was only prevented by the Night coming on, from making a total Destruction of them. With this Victory he  
went

went straight to *Brennius*, who had now besieged *Rome* three Days. Then joining their Armies, they assault the City on every Side, and endeavour to level the Walls: And to strike a greater Terror into the Besieged, erected Gallows before the Gates of the City, and threatened to hang up the Hostages they had given, unless they would surrender. But the *Romans* nothing moved at the Sufferings of their Sons and Relations, continued inflexible, and resolute to defend themselves. And therefore sometimes broke the Force of the Enemies Engines, by other Engines of their own, sometimes repulsed them from the Walls with Showers of Darts. Which so incensed the two Brothers, that they commanded four and twenty of their Noblest Hostages to be hanged in the Sight of their Parents. But the *Romans* were only more hardened at the Spectacle, and had now received a Message from *Gabinus* and *Porfena* their Consuls, that they would come the next Day to their Assistance; whereupon they resolved to march out of the City, and give the Enemy Battle. And accordingly just as they were ranging their Troops in Order, appeared the Consuls with their reassembled Forces, marching up to begin the Attack. These therefore advancing in a close Body, fell on the *Britains* and *Allobroges* to their great Surprize, and being joined with  
the

the Citizens that fall'y'd forth killed no small Number. The Brothers in great Grief to see such Destruction made of their Fellow Soldiers, began to Spirit up their Men, and then breaking in upon the Enemy several Times, forced them to retire. At last, after the Loss of many Thousands of brave Men on both Sides, the Brothers got the Day, and also took the City, *Gabinus* being first killed and *Porfena* taken Prisoner: Which done they divided among their Men all the hidden Treasure of the City.

## C H A P. X.

*Brennius oppresses Italy in a most tyrannical Manner. Belinus returns to Britain.*

THE Victory thus gained, *Brennius* stay'd in *Italy*, where he exercis'd unheard of Tyranny over the People. But the rest of his Actions and his Death, seeing they are deliver'd in the *Roman* Histories, I shall here pass over, to avoid Prolixity and meddling with what others have treated of, which is foreign to my Design. But *Belinus* returned to *Britain*, which he governed the Remainder of his Life in Peace. Cities that were falling to Ruin he repaired, and  
F built

built many new ones. Among the rest he built one upon the River *Uske* near the *Severn* Sea, which was for a long Time called *Caerose*, and was the Metropolis of *Demetia*: But after the Coming in of the *Romans* it lost its first Name, and was called the City of *Legions*, from the *Roman* Legions which used to take up their Winter Quarters in it. He also made a Gate of wonderful Structure in *Trinovantum*, upon the Bank of the *Thames*, which the Citizens call after his Name *Belinsgate* to this Day. Over it he built a prodigious large Tower, and under it a Haven or Key for Ships. He was a strict Observer of Justice, and re-established his Fathers Laws every where through the Kingdom. In his Days there was so great an Affluence of Riches among the People, that no Age before or after is said to have shewn the like. At last when he had finished his Days, his Body was burnt, and the Ashes put up in a golden Urn, which they placed at *Trinovantum* with wonderful Art on the Top of the Tower above-mention'd.



## C H A P. XI.

*Gurgiunt Brabtruc succeeding his Father Belinus, reduces Dacia that was shaking off his Yoke.*

**H**E was succeeded by *Gurgiunt Brabtruc* his Son, a sober prudent Prince, who followed the Example of his Father in all his Actions, and was a Lover of Peace and Justice. When some neighbouring Provinces rebelled against him, he inheriting the Bravery of his Father, repressed their Insolence in several fierce Battles, and so reduced them under a perfect Subjection to him. Among many other Things it happened, that the King of the *Dacians*, who paid Tribute in his Fathers Time, refused not only Tribute, but all manner of Homage to him: Which he resented heinously, and passed over in a Fleet to *Dacia*, where he harassed the People with a most cruel War, slew their King, and reduced the Country under its ancient Yoke.



## C H A P. XII.

*Ireland is given to be inhabited by the Barclenses, who had been banished out of Spain.*

AT that Time, as he was returning home from his Conquest through the *Orkney* Islands, he found thirty Ships fraught with Men and Women; and upon his enquiring of them the Occasion of their coming thither, their Leader named *Partholoim*, approached him in a respectful and submissive Manner, and desired Pardon and Peace. Then he told him, that he had been driven out of *Spain*, and was sailing round those Seas in quest of a Habitation. He also desired some small Part of *Britain* to dwell in, that they might put an End to their tedious Wandring: For it was now a Year and half since he had been driven out of his Country, all which Time he and his Company had been out at Sea. When *Gurgiant Brabtruc* understood that they came from *Spain*, and were called *Barclenses*, he granted their Petition, and sent Men with them to *Ireland*, which was then wholly uninhabited, and assigned it to them. There they grew up and encreased in Number, and have possessed that Island to this very Day. *Gurgiant Brabtruc*

*Brabtruc* after this ended his Days in Peace, and was buried in the City of *Legions*, which after his Fathers Death he beautified with Buildings and Walls.

## C H A P. XIII.

*Guithelin reigning after Gurgiunt Brabtruc, the Martian Law is instituted by Martia a noble Woman.*

AFTER him *Guithelin* wore the Crown, which he enjoy'd all his Life, with Mildness and Affection to his People. He had for his Wife a noble Lady named *Martia*,<sup>o</sup> accomplished in all kind of Learning. Among many other admirable Productions of her Wit, she was the Author of what the *Britains* call the *Martian Law*. This also among other Things King *Alfred* translated, and called it in the *Saxon Tongue* *Pa Marchitie Lage*. Upon the Death of *Guithelin*, the Government of the Kingdom remained in the Hands of this Queen and her Son *Sisiltus*, who was then but seven Years old, and therefore unfit to take the Government upon himself alone.

## C H A P. XIV.

*Guithelin's Successors in the Kingdom.*

FOR this Reason the Mother had the sole Management of Affairs committed to her, out of a Regard to her great Sense and Judgment. But she dying, *Sisilius* took the Crown and Government upon himself. After him reigned *Kimarus* his Son, to whom succeeded *Danius* his Brother. He dying the Crown came to *Morvidus*, whom he had by his Concubine *Tangustela*. He would have made a Prince of extraordinary Worth, had he not been addicted to immoderate Cruelty, so far that in his Anger he spared no Body, if any Weapon was at Hand. He was of a graceful Aspect, extreamly liberal, and of such vast Strength as was not to be matched in the whole Kingdom.

## C H A P. XV.

*Morvidus a most cruel Tyrant, after the Conquest of the King of the Morines, is devoured by a Monster.*

IN his Time a certain King of the *Morines* arrived with a great Force in *Northumberland*, and began to destroy the Country.  
But

But *Morvidus* with all the Strength of the Kingdom, marched out against him, and fought him. In this Battle, he alone did more than the greatest Part of his Army, and after the Victory, suffered not one to escape alive. For he commanded them to be brought to him one after another, that he might satisfy his Cruelty in seeing them killed: And when he grew somewhat tired with this, he gave Orders that they should be flea'd alive and burnt. During these and other monstrous Acts of Cruelty, there happened a Misfortune which put a Period to his Wickedness. There was come from the Coasts of the *Irish* Sea, a most cruel Monster, that was continually devouring the People upon the Sea-Coasts. As soon as this News came to him, he ventured to go and encounter it alone; but when he had in vain spent all his Darts upon it, the Monster hastened up to him, and with open Jaws swallowed him up like a small Fish.

---

## C H A P. XVI.

*Gorbonian a most just King of the Britains.*

**H**E had five Sons, whereof the First-born, named *Gorbonian*, ascended the Throne. There was not in his Time a greater

greater Lover of Justice and Equity, or a more careful Ruler of the People. The performing of due Worship to the Gods, and doing Justice to the common People, was his continual Employment. Through all the Cities of *Britain*, he repaired the Temples of the Gods, and built many more new ones. In all his Days, the Island abounded with all manner of Riches, more than all its neighbouring Countries. For he gave great Encouragement to Husbandmen in their Tillage, by protecting them against any Injury or Oppression of their Lords; and the Soldiers he amply rewarded with Money, so that no one had occasion to do wrong to another. Amidst these and many other Acts of his innate Goodness, he pay'd the Debt of Nature, and was buried at *Trinovantum*.

## C H A P. XVII.

*Arthgallo is deposed by the Britains, and is succeeded by Elidure, who restores him again to the Kingdom.*

AFTER him *Arthgallo* his Brother was dignified with the Crown, who in all his Actions was the very Reverse of his

his Brother. The Nobility he every where endeavoured to depress, and advance the baser Sort of the People. The Rich he plundered, and by that Means heaped to himself vast Treasures. But the Nobility disdaining to bear his Tyranny any longer, made an Insurrection against him, and deposed him; and then advanced *Elidure* his Brother, who was afterwards surnamed the *Pious*, on account of his Commiseration to him in Distress. For after five Years Possession of the Kingdom, as he happened to be hunting in the Wood *Calateriam*, he met his Brother that had been deposed. For he had travelled over several Kingdoms, to desire Assistance for the recovering of his lost Dominions, but had procured none. And being now no longer able to bear the Poverty to which he was reduced, he returned back to *Britain*, attended only with ten Men, with a Design to repair to those who had been formerly his Friends. Therefore just as he was passing through the Wood, his Brother *Elidure*, who little expected it, got a Sight of him, and forgetting all Injuries, ran to him, and affectionately embraced him. And as he had long lamented his Brothers Affliction, he therefore carried him with him to the City *Alclud*, where he hid him in his Bed-chamber. After this, he there feigned himself sick, and sent his Messengers over the whole Kingdom,

dom, to signify to all his Prime Nobility that they should come to visit him. Accordingly when they were all met together at the City where he lay, he gave Orders that they should come into his Chamber one by one, softly, and without Noise: His Presence for which was, that their Talk would be a Disturbance to his Head, should they all crowd in together. So they in Obedience to his Commands, and without the least Suspicion of any Design, entred his House one after another. But *Elidure* had given a Charge to his Servants, who were set ready for the Purpose, to take each of them as they entred, and Cut off their Heads, unless they would again submit themselves to *Arthgallo* his Brother. Thus did he with every one of them apart, and compelled them through Fear, to be reconciled to *Arthgallo*. At last the Agreement being Ratified, *Elidure* conducted *Arthgallo* to York, where he took the Crown off his own Head, and put it on his Brothers. From this Act, wherein he shew'd so great Piety to his Brother, he obtained the Surname of *Pious*. *Arthgallo* after this reigned ten Years, and now made Amends for his former Male-Administration, by pursuing Measures quite contrary to his first, in depressing the baser Sort, and advancing Men of good Birth; in suffering every one to enjoy his own, and exercising strict Justice.

At

At last Sickness seizing him, he died, and was buried in the City *Kaelteir*.

C H A P. XVIII.

*Elidure is imprisoned by Peredure, after whose Death he is a third Time advanced to the Throne.*

**T**HEN was *Elidure* again advanced to the Throne, and restored to his former Dignity. But while in his Government he followed the Example of his eldest Brother *Gorbonian*, in performing all Acts of Grace; his two remaining Brothers *Vigenius* and *Peredure*, raised an Army, and made War against him, in which they proved Victorious; so that they took him Prisoner, and shut him up in the Tower at *Trinovantum*, where they placed a Guard over him. Then they divided the Kingdom betwixt them, the Part that is from the River *Humber* Westward, falling to *Vigenius's* Share, and the Remainder with all *Albania* to *Peredure's*. After seven Years *Vigenius* died, and so the whole Kingdom came to *Peredure*. Being now honoured with the Crown, he henceforward governed the People with Generosity and Mildness, so that he even excelled his other Brothers that preceded

ceeded him, nor was any Mention now made of *Elidure*. But irresistible Fate took him off at last suddenly, and so made Way for *Elidure*'s quick Release from Prison, and Advancement to the Throne the third Time; who as he had finished the Course of his Life in just and virtuous Actions, after his Death left an Example of Piety to be imitated by all his Successors.

### C H A P. XIX.

#### *The Names of Elidures thirty three Successors.*

*ELIDURE* being dead, *Gorbonians* Son enjoy'd the Crown, and imitated his Unkles wise and prudent Government. For he abhorred Tyranny, and practis'd Justice and Mildness towards the People, nor ever swerved from the Rule of Equity. After him reigned *Margan*, the Son of *Arthgallo*, who being instructed by the Examples of his immediate Predecessors, held the Government in Peace. Him succeeded *Enni-aunus* his Brother, who took a quite contrary Course in his Reign; in the sixth Year of which he was deposed, for having preferred a tyrannical, before a just and legal Administration. In his Room was placed his Kinsman

Kinsman *Idwallo*, the Son of *Vigenius*, who being admonished by *Enniaunus*'s ill Success, became a strict Observer of Justice and Equity. Him succeeded *Runno*, the Son of *Peredure*, whose Successor was *Geruntius*, the Son of *Elidure*. After him reigned *Catellus* his Son; after *Catellus*, *Coillus*; after *Coillus*, *Porrex*; after *Porrex*, *Cherin*. This Prince had three Sons, *Fulgenius*, *Eldadus*, and *Andragius*, who all reigned one after another. Then succeeded *Urianus*, the Son of *Andragius*; after whom reigned in Order, *Eliud*, *Cledaucus*, *Cletonus*, *Gurgintius*, *Merianus*, *Bleduno*, *Cap*, *Oenus*, *Sifilius*, *Blegabred*. This last Prince for Songs and Skill in all Musical Instruments, excelled all the Musicians that had been before him, so as he seemed worthy of the Title of *The God of Jesters*. After him reigned *Arthmail* his Brother; after *Arthmail*, *Eldol*; whom succeeded in Order *Redion*, *Rederchius*, *Samuilpenissel*, *Pir*, *Capoir*, and *Cligueillus* the Son of *Capoir*, a Man prudent and mild in all his Actions, and who above all things made it his Business to exercise true Justice among his People.



## C H A P.

## C H A P. XX.

*Heli's three Sons; the first of whom, viz. Lud, gives Name to the City of London.*

NEXT to him succeeded *Heli* his Son, and reigned forty Years. He had three Sons, *Lud*, *Cassibellann*, and *Nennius*; of whom *Lud* being the Eldest, succeeded in the Kingdom after his Fathers Death. He became famous for the building of Cities, and for rebuilding the Walls of *Trinovantum*, which he also surrounded with innumerable Towers. He likewise commanded the Citizens to build Houses, and all other kinds of Structures in it, so that no City in all the Foreign Countries to a great Distance, could shew more beautiful Palaces. He was withal a Warlike Man, and very magnificent in his Feasts and publick Entertainments. And though he had many other Cities, yet he loved this above them all, and resided in it the greater Part of the Year; for which Reason it was afterwards called *Kaerlad*, and by the Corruption of the Word, *Caer-london*; and again by change of Languages in Process of Time, *London*; as also by Foreigners who arrived here, and reduced this Country under their Subjection, *Londres*. At last he dying, his Body was buried by the

the Gate which to this Time is in the *British* Tongue called after his Name *Parthlud*, and in the *Saxon*, *Ludsgata*. He had two Sons, *Androgeus* and *Tenuantius*, who were incapable of Governing on Account of their Age; and therefore their Uncle *Cassibellaun* was preferred to the Kingdom in their Room. As soon as he was Crowned, he began to display his Generosity and Magnificence to such a Degree, that his Fame reached to distant Kingdoms: Which was the Reason that the Monarchy of the whole Kingdom came to be invested in him, and not in his Nephews. Notwithstanding *Cassibellaun*, from an Impulse of Piety, would not suffer them to be without their Share in the Kingdom, but assigned a large Part of it to them. For the City *Trinovantum*, with the Dukedom of *Kent*, he bestow'd on *Androgeus*; and the Dukedom of *Cornwal* on *Tenuantius*. But he himself as possessing the Crown, had the Sovereignty over them, and all the Princes of the Island.



THE



T H E  
**British History.**

The Fourth Book.

C H A P. I.

*Julius Cæsar infests Britain.*



**I**N the mean Time it happened, (as is found in the *Roman Histories*,) that *Julius Cæsar* having subdued *Gaul*, came to the Shore of *Rutemi*. And when from thence he had got a Prospect of the Island of *Britain*, he enquired of those about him what Country it was, and what People inhabited it. Then fixing his Eyes upon the Ocean, as soon as he was informed of the Name of the Kingdom and the People, he said; “ In Truth We *Romans* and the *Britains* have the same Original,

" ginal, since both are descended from the  
 " Trojan Race. Our first Father after the  
 " Destruction of Troy, was *Aneas*; theirs  
 " *Brutus*, whose Father was *Sylvius*, the  
 " Son of *Ascanius*, the Son of *Aneas*. But  
 " I am deceived, if they are not very much  
 " degenerated from us, and know nothing  
 " of the Art of War, since they live sepa-  
 " rated by the Ocean from the whole  
 " World. They may be easily forced to  
 " be our Tributaries, and Subjects to the  
 " Roman State. But first we must send  
 " them Word, before the *Romans* offer to  
 " invade or assault them, that they pay  
 " Tribute as other Nations do, and submit  
 " themselves to the Senate; for fear we  
 " should violate the ancient Nobility of our  
 " Father *Priamus*, by shedding the Blood  
 " of our Kinsmen." All which he ac-  
 " cordingly took Care to signify, by writing  
 " to *Cassibellaun*; who in great Indignation  
 " returned him an Answer in the following  
 " Letter.

---

## CHAP. II.

### *Cassibellaunus's Letter to Julius Cæsar.*

" **CASSIBELLAVN**, King of the  
 " Britains, to *Caius Julius Cæsar*.  
 " We cannot but wonder, *Cæsar*, at the  
 " G Avarice

“ Avarice of the *Roman* People, since their  
“ unsatiable Thirst after Money, cannot  
“ let us alone whom the Dangers of the  
“ Ocean have placed in a manner out of  
“ the World; but they must have the Pre-  
“ sumption to covet our Substance, which  
“ we have hitherto enjoy’d in Quiet. Nei-  
“ ther is this indeed sufficient: We must  
“ also prefer Subjection and Slavery to  
“ them, before the Enjoyment of our Na-  
“ tive Liberty. Your Demand therefore,  
“ *Cesar*, is scandalous, since the same Vein  
“ of Nobility flows from *Aeneas*, in *Britains*  
“ and *Romans*, and one and the same Chain  
“ of Consanguinity shines in both: Which  
“ ought to be a Band of firm Union and  
“ Friendship. That was what you should  
“ have demanded of us, and not Slavery!  
“ We have learned to admit of the one, but  
“ never to bear the other. And so much  
“ have we been accustomed to Liberty,  
“ that we are perfectly ignorant what it is  
“ to submit to Slavery. And if even the  
“ Gods themselves should attempt to de-  
“ prive us of our Liberty, we would to the  
“ utmost of our Power resist them in De-  
“ fence of it. Know then, *Cesar*, that we  
“ are ready to fight for that and our King-  
“ dom, if, as you threaten, you shall at-  
“ tempt to invade *Britain*.

C. H. A. P.

## C H A P. III.

*Cæsar is routed by Cassibellaun.*

**A**T the Receipt of this Answer, *Cæsar* makes ready his Fleet, and waits for a fair Wind to execute in Earnest what he had threatned *Cassibellaun* with. As soon as the Wind stood fair, he hoisted his Sails, and arrived with his Army at the Mouth of the River *Thames*. The Ships were now just come close to Land, when *Cassibellaun* with all his Forces appeared on his march against them, and coming to the Town of *Dorobel-lum*, he consulted with his Nobility how to drive out the Enemy. There was present with him *Belinus*, General of his Army, by whose Counsel the whole Kingdom was governed. There were also his two Nephews, *Androgeus* Duke of *Trinovantum*, and *Tenuantius* Duke of *Cornwal*, together with three inferior Kings, *Cridious* King of *Albania*, *Guerthaeth* of *Venedotia*, and *Britael* of *Demetia*, who, as they had encouraged the Rest to fight the Enemy, gave their Advice to march directly to *Cæsar's* Camp, and drive them out of the Country before they could take any City or Town. For if he should possess himself of any fortified Places, they said it would be harder to force him out, because he would then know whither to

make a Retreat with his Men. To this Proposal all agreed, and advanced towards the Shore where *Julius Caesar* had pitched his Camp. And now both Armies drew out in order of Battle, and began the Fight, wherein both Bows and Swords were employ'd. Immediately the Wounded fell in Heaps on each Side, and the Ground was drenched with the Blood of the Slain, as much as if it had been washed with the sudden Return of the Tide. While the Armies were thus engaged, it happened that *Nennius* and *Androgeus*, with the Citizens of *Canterbury* and *Trinovantum*, whom they commanded, had the Fortune to meet with the very Troop where the General himself was present. And upon an Assault made, the Generals Cohort was very near routed by the *Britains* falling upon them in a close Body. During this Action, Fortune gave *Nennius* an Opportunity of encountering with *Caesar*. *Nennius* therefore boldly made up to him, and was in great Joy that he could but give so much as one Blow to so great a Man. On the other Hand *Caesar* being aware of his Design, stretched out his Shield to receive him, and with all his Might struck him upon the Helmet with his drawn Sword; which he lifted up again with an Intention to finish his first Blow, and make it Mortal; but *Nennius* carefully prevented him with his Shield,  
into

into which *Cæsars* Sword gliding with great Force from the Helmet, came to be so hard fastned, that when by the breaking in of the Troops, they could no longer continue the Encounter, the General was not able to draw it out again. *Nennius* thus becoming Master of *Cæsars* Sword, threw away his own, and pulling the other out, made haste to employ it against the Enemy. Whomsoever he struck with it, he either cut off his Head, or left him wounded without Hopes of Recovery. While he was thus exerting himself, he was met by *Labienus* a Tribune, whom he killed in the very Beginning of the Encounter. At last, after the greatest Part of the Day was spent, the *Britains* poured in so fast, and made such vigorous Efforts, that by the Blessing of God they obtained the Victory, and *Cæsar* with his broken Forces, retired to his Camp and Fleet. The very same Night, as soon as he had got his Men together again, he went on board his Fleet, rejoicing that he had the Sea for his Camp. And upon his Companions dissuading him from pursuing the War any longer, he acquiesced in their Advice, and returned back to *Gaul*.

## C H A P. IV.

*Nennius the Brother of Cassibellaun, being wounded in Battle by Cæsar, dies.*

**C**ASSIBELLAUN in Joy for this Triumph, returned solemn Thanks to God; and calling the Companions of his Victory together, amply rewarded every one of them, according as they had distinguished themselves. On the other Hand he was very much oppressed with Grief for his Brother *Nennius*, who lay mortally wounded, and at the very Point of Death. For *Cæsar* had wounded him in the Encounter, and the Blow he had given, proved uncurable; so that fifteen Days after the Battle he died of it, and was buried at *Tri-novantum*, by the North-Gate. His Funeral Exequies were performed with Regal Pomp, and *Cæsar's* Sword put into the Tomb with him, which he kept Possession of when struck into his Shield in the Combat. The Name of the Sword was *Crocea Mors*, Yellow Death, as being mortal to every Body that was wounded with it.

C H A P.

## C H A P. V.

*Cæsar's unglorious Return to Gaul.*

AFTER this Flight of *Cæsar*, and his Arrival at the *Gallican Coast*, the *Gauls* attempted to rebel and throw off his Yoke. For they thought he was so much weakned, that his Forces could be no longer a Terror to them. Besides, a general Report was spread among them, that *Cassibellanus* was now out at Sea with a vast Fleet to pursue him in his Flight: On which Account the *Gauls* growing still more bold, began to think of driving him out of their Coasts. *Julius* apprehending their Designs, was not willing to engage in a doubtful War with a fierce People, but rather chose to go to all their Prime Nobility with open Treasures, and reconcile them with Presents. To the common People he promises Liberty, to the Dispossessed the Restitution of their Estates, and even to the Slaves their Freedom. Thus he that had insulted them before with the Fierceness of a Lion, and plundered them of all, does now with the Mildness of a Lamb fawn to them with submissive abject Speeches, and is glad to restore all again. These Meannesses was he forced to condescend to, till he had pacified them, and was able to regain his lost

Power. In the mean Time not a Day past without reflecting upon his Flight, and the Britain's Victory.

## C H A P. VI.

### *Cassibellaun forms a Stratagem for drowning Cæsar's Ships.*

AFTER two Years were expired, he prepares to pass the Sea again, and revenge himself on *Cassibellaun*, who having Intelligence of his Design, every where fortified his Cities, repaired the ruined Walls, placed armed Men at all the Ports, and in the River *Thames*, on which *Cæsar* intended to sail up to *Trinovantum*, he caused Iron and Leaden Stakes, each as thick as a Mans Thigh, to be fixed under the Surface of the Water, for *Cæsar* to split his Ships upon. Then he assembled all the Forces of the Island, and took up his Quarters with them near the Sea-Coasts, in Expectation of the Enemy's coming.



## C H A P.

## C H A P. VII.

*Cæsar a second Time vanquished by the Britains.*

**J**ULIUS, after he had furnished himself with all Necessaries, embarked with a vast Army, eager to revenge himself on a People that had defeated him ; in which he had undoubtedly succeeded, if he could but have brought his Fleet safe to Land ; but this he was not able to do. For in sailing up the *Thames* to *Trinovantum*, the Ships happened to strike against the Stakes, which so endangered them all on a sudden, that many Thousands of the Men were drowned, while the Ships being bored through sunk down into the River. *Cæsar* upon this employ'd all his Force to shift his Sails, and hastened to get back again to Land. And so those that remained, after a narrow Escape go on Shore with him. *Cassibellann*, who was present upon the Bank, with Joy observed the Disaster of the drowned, but grieved at the Escape of the Rest : And upon his giving a Signal to his Men, makes an Attack upon the *Romans*, who notwithstanding the Danger they had suffered in the River, when landed, bravely withstood the *Britains* ; and having no other Fence to trust to but their  
own

own Courage, they made no small Slaughter; but yet suffered a greater themselves, than what they were able to give the Enemy. For their Number was considerably diminished by their Loss in the River: Whereas the *Britains* being hourly increased with new Recruits, were three times their Number, and by that Advantage defeated them. *Cæsar* seeing he could no longer maintain his Ground, fled with a small Body of Men to his Ships, and made the Sea his safe Retreat; and as the Wind then stood fair, he hoisted his Sails and steered to the *Morine* Shore. From thence he repaired to a certain Tower, which he had built at a Place called *Odnea*, before this second Expedition into *Britain*. For he durst not trust the Intability of the *Gauls*, who he feared would fall upon him a second Time, as we have said already they did before, after his first Flight that he was forced to make before the *Britains*. And on that Account he had built this Tower for a Refuge to himself, that he might be able to maintain his Ground against a rebellious People, if they should make Insurrection against him.



C H A P.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Evelinus kills Hirelgas. Androgeus desires Cæsar's Assistance against Cassibellaun.*

**C**ASSIBELLAUN being elevated with Joy for this second Victory, published a Decree, to summon all the Nobility of *Britain* with their Wives to *Trinovantum*, in order to perform solemn Sacrifices to their Tutelary Gods, who had given them the Victory over so great a Commander. Accordingly they all readily appeared, and prepared Variety of Sacrifices, for which there was a great Slaughter of Cattle. At this Solemnity they offered forty thousand Cows, and a hundred thousand Sheep, and also Fowls of several Kinds, without Number, besides thirty thousand wild Beasts of several Kinds. As soon as they had performed these solemn Honours to their Gods, they feasted themselves of the Remainder, as was usual at Sacrifices, and spent the rest of the Day and Night in various Plays and Sports. Amidst these Diversions, it happened that two noble Youths, whereof one was Nephew to the King, the other to Duke *Androgeus*, wrestled together, and afterwards had a Dispute about the Victory.

The

The Name of the Kings Nephew was *Hirelglas*, the other's *Evelinus*. As they were casting Reproaches at each other, *Evelinus* snatched up his Sword and cut off the others Head. This sudden Disaster put the whole Court into a Consternation, upon which the King ordered *Evelinus* to be brought before him, that he might be ready to undergo such Sentence as the Nobility should pass, and that the Death of *Hirelglas* might be revenged upon him, if he was unjustly killed. *Androgeus* suspecting the Kings Intentions, made Answer, that he had a Court of his own, and that whatever should be alledged against his own Men, ought to be determined there. If therefore he had been resolved to demand Justice of *Evelinus*, he might have had it at *Trinovantum*, according to ancient Custom. *Cassibellaun* finding he could not attain his Ends, threatened *Androgeus* to destroy his Country with Fire and Sword, if he would not comply with his Demands. But *Androgeus* now incensed, scorned all Compliance with him. On the other Hand *Cassibellaun* in a great Rage hastened to make good his Threatning, and ravage his Country. This forced *Androgeus* to make use of daily Sollicitations to the King, by Means of such as were related to him, or intimate with him, to divert his Rage. But when he found these Methods ineffectual, he began in Earnest to consider

consider how to oppose him. At last, when all other Hopes failed, he resolved to desire Assistance of *Cesar*, and writ a Letter to him to this Effect.

“ *Androgeus* Duke of *Trinovantum*, to  
“ *Caius Julius Caesar*, after Wishes of Death,  
“ now wishes Health. I repent that ever  
“ I acted against you, when you made  
“ War against the King. Had I never been  
“ guilty of such Exploits, you would have  
“ vanquished *Cassibellaun*, who is so swoln  
“ with Pride since his Victory, that he is  
“ endeavouring to drive me out of his  
“ Coasts, who procured him that Tri-  
“ umph. Is this a fit Reward for my Ser-  
“ vices? I have settled him in an Inheri-  
“ tance: And he endeavours to disinherit  
“ me. I have a second Time restored him  
“ to the Kingdom: And he endeavours to  
“ destroy me. All this I have done for him  
“ in fighting against you. I call the Gods  
“ to witness I have not deserved his Anger,  
“ unless I can be said to deserve it for refu-  
“ sing to deliver my Nephew, whom he  
“ would have condemned to die unjustly.  
“ Of which that you in your discerning  
“ Mind may be better able to judge, take  
“ this Account of the Matter. It happened  
“ that for Joy of the Victory, we performed  
“ solemn Honours to our Tutelary Gods,  
“ in which after we had finished our Sacri-  
“ fices,

“ fices, our Youth diverted themselves with  
“ Sports. Among the rest two of our Ne-  
“ phews, encouraged by the Example of  
“ others, entred the Lifts ; and when my  
“ Nephew had got the better, the other  
“ without any Cause was incensed, and  
“ just going to strike him ; but he avoided  
“ the Blow, and taking him by the Hand  
“ that held the Sword, strove to wrest it  
“ from him. In this Struggle the Kings  
“ Nephew happened to fall upon the  
“ Swords Point, and suddenly dy’d upon  
“ the Spot. When the King was informed  
“ of it, he commanded me to deliver up the  
“ Youth, that he might be punished for  
“ Murder. I refused to do it ; whereupon  
“ he invaded my Provinces with all his  
“ Forces, and has given me very great  
“ Disturbance. I therefore flying to your  
“ Clemency, desire your Assistance, that  
“ by you I may be restored to my Dig-  
“ nity, and by me you may gain the Pos-  
“ session of *Britain*. Let no Doubts or  
“ Suspicion of Treachery in this Matter  
“ detain you. Be sway’d by the common  
“ Motive of Mankind ; let past Enmities  
“ beget a Desire of Friendship ; and after  
“ Flight be more eager for Victory.



C H A P.

## C H A P. IX.

*Cassibellaun being put to Flight and besieged by Cæsar desires Peace.*

**C**ÆSAR having read the Letter, was advised by his Friends not to go into *Britain* upon a bare verbal Invitation of the Duke, unless he would send such Hostages as might be for his Security. Without delay therefore *Androgeus* sent his Son *Seeva* with thirty young Noblemen nearly related to him. Upon delivery of the Hostages, *Cæsar* now free'd from Suspicion reassembles his Forces, and with a fair Wind arrived at the Port of *Rutapi*. In the mean Time *Cassibellaun* had begun to besiege *Trinovantum* and ravage the Country Towns; but finding *Cæsar* was arrived, he raised the Siege and hasted to meet him. As soon as he entered a Valley near *Dorobernia*, he saw the Roman Army preparing their Camp: For *Androgeus* had conducted them to this Place, for the Convenience of making a sudden Assault upon the City. The Romans seeing the *Britains* advancing towards them, quickly flew to their Arms, and ranged themselves in several Bodies. The *Britains* also put on their Arms, and placed themselves in their Ranks. But *Androgeus* with five thousand Men lay hid in a Wood hard by, to be ready

ready to assist *Caesar*, and spring forth on a sudden upon *Cassibellaun* and his Party. Both Armies now approached to begin the Fight, some with Bows and Arrows, some with Swords, so that much Blood was shed on both Sides, and the Wounded fell down like Leaves in Autumn. While they were thus engaged, *Androgeus* sally's forth of the Wood, and falls upon the Reer of *Cassibellaun's* Army, upon which the Hopes of the Battle entirely depended. And now what with the Breach the *Romans* had made through them just before, what with the furious Irruption of their own Countrymen, they were no longer able to stand their Ground, but were obliged with their broken Forces to quit the Field. Hard by the Place there stood a rocky Mountain, on the Top of which was a thick Hazel Wood. Hither *Cassibellaun* flies with his Men after he had found himself worsted; and having climbed up to the very Top of the Mountain, bravely defended himself and killed the pursuing Enemy. For the *Roman* Forces with those of *Androgeus* pursued him to disperse his flying Troops, and climbing up the Mountain after them made many Assaults, but all to little Purpose; for the Rockiness of the Mountain and great Height of its Top was a Defence to the *Britains*, and the Advantage of higher Ground gave them an Opportunity of killing great Numbers of the Enemy. *Caesar* hereupon

hereupon besieged the Mountain that whole Night, which had now overtaken them, and shut up all the Avenues to it; intending to reduce the King by Famine, since he could not do it by Force of Arms. Such was the wonderful Valour of the *British* Nation in those Times, that they were able to put the Conquerer of the World twice to Flight. Whom the whole World could not withstand, him did they even when defeated withstand, being ready to die for the Defence of their Country and Liberty. Hence *Lucan* in their Praise says of *Cæsar*,

*Territa quasi ostendit terga Britannis.*

With Pride he fought the *Britains*, but when found,  
Dreaded their Force, and fled the hostile Ground.

Two Days were now past, when *Cassibel-laun* having consumed all his Provision, feared Famine would oblige him to surrender himself Prisoner to *Cæsar*. For this Reason he sent a Message to *Androgeus* to make his Peace with *Julius*, lest the Honour of the Nation might suffer by his being taken Prisoner. He likewise represented to him, that he did not deserve to be pursued to Death for the Disturbance he had given him. As soon as the Messengers had told this to *Androgeus*, he made Answer; " That Prince

" deserves not to be loved, who in War is

H

" mild

“ mild as a Lamb, in Peace cruel as a Lion.  
“ Ye Gods of Heaven and Earth ! Do's my  
“ Lord then condescend to entreat me now,  
“ whom before he took upon him to com-  
“ mand ? Do's he desire to be reconciled  
“ and make his submission to *Cæsar*, of  
“ whom *Cæsar* himself had before desired  
“ Peace ? He ought therefore to have confi-  
“ dered, that he who was able to drive so  
“ great a Commander out of the Kingdom,  
“ was able also to bring him back again. I  
“ ought not to have been so unjustly treat-  
“ ed, who had then done him so much Ser-  
“ vice, as well as now so much Injury. He  
“ must be possessed with Madness, who ei-  
“ ther injures or reproaches his Fellow Sol-  
“ diers by whom he defeats the Enemy.  
“ The Victory is not the Commanders, but  
“ theirs who loose their Blood in fighting  
“ for him. Notwithstanding I will procure  
“ his Peace if I can, because the Injury he  
“ has done me is sufficiently revenged upon  
“ him, since he sues for Mercy to me.

---

C H A P. X.*Androgeus's Speech to Cæsar.*

**A**NDROGEUS after this went straight  
to *Cæsar*, and after a submissive Saluta-  
tion addressed himself to him in this Man-  
ner :

ner: "You have sufficiently revenged yourself upon *Cassibellaun*; and now let Clemency take Place. What is there to be done more, than that he make his Submission, and pay Tribute to the *Roman State*?" To this *Cæsar* returned him no Answer: Upon which *Androgeus* said again; "My whole Engagement with you, *Cæsar*, was only to reduce *Britain* under your Power, by the Submission of *Cassibellaun*. Behold! *Cassibellaun* is now vanquished, and *Britain* by my Assistance become subject to you, What further Service do I owe you? God forbid, that I should suffer my Sovereign who sues to me for Peace, and makes me Satisfaction for the Injury he has done me, to be in Prison or in Chains. It is no easy Matter to put *Cassibellaun* to Death while I have Life; and if you do not comply with my Demand, I shall not be ashamed to give him my Assistance." *Cæsar* terrified at these Menaces of *Androgeus* was forced to comply, and entered into Peace with *Cassibellaun*, on Condition that he should pay a yearly Tribute of three thousand Pounds of Silver. So then *Julius* and *Cassibellaun* from this Time commenced Friends, and made Presents to each other. After this, *Cæsar* winter'd in *Britain*, and the Spring following passed over into *Gaul*. At length he assembled all his Forces, and marched towards *Rome* against *Pompey*.

## C H A P. XI.

*Tenuantius is made King of Britain  
after Cassibellaun.*

AFTER seven Years had expired, *Cassibellaun* died and was buried at *York*. He was succeeded by *Tenuantius* Duke of *Cornwal*, and Brother of *Androgeus*: For *Androgeus* was gone to *Rome* with *Cæsar*. *Tenuantius* therefore now wearing the Crown, governed the Kingdom with Diligence. He was a warlike Man, and a most strict Observer of Justice. After him *Kymbelinus* his Son was advanced to the Throne, being a great Soldier, and brought up by *Augustus Cæsar*. He had contracted so great a Friendship with the *Romans*, that he freely pay'd them Tribute when he might have very well refused it. In his Days was born our Lord *Jesus Christ*, by whose precious Blood Mankind was redeemed from the Devils Captivity, under which they had been before enslaved.

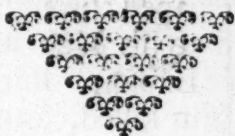


C H A P.

C H A P. XII.

*Upon Guiderius's refusing to pay  
Tribute to the Romans, Claudius  
Cæsar invades Britain.*

**K**TMBELINVS when he had govern-  
ed *Britain* ten Years, begat two Sons,  
the elder named *Guiderius*, the other *Arvi-  
ragus*. Then having finished the Course of  
his Life, the Government fell to *Guiderius*.  
This Prince refused to pay Tribute to the  
*Romans*, for which Reason *Claudius* who  
was now promoted to be Emperor came  
against him. He was attended in this Ex-  
pedition by the Commander of his Army,  
who was called in the *British* Tongue *Lewis  
Hamo*, by whose Advice the succeeding War  
was to be carried on. This Man therefore  
arriving at the City of *Portcestre*, began to  
block up the Gates with a Wall, and deny'd  
the Citizens all Liberty of passing out. For  
his Design was either to reduce them under  
Subjection by Famine, or kill them without  
Mercy.



## C H A P. XIII.

Lewis Hamo a Roman, by wicked  
Treachery kills Guiderius.

**G**UIDERIUS upon the News of *Claudius's* Coming, assembled all the Soldiery of the Kingdom, and went to meet the Roman Army. In the Battle that ensued, he began the Assault with great Eagerness, and did more Execution with his own Sword than the greater Part of his Army. *Claudius* was now just upon retreating to his Ships, and the *Romans* very near routed, when the crafty *Hamo* throwing aside his own Armour put on that of the *Britains*, and as a *Britain* fought against his own Men. Then he exhorted the *Britains* to a vigorous Assault, promising them a speedy Victory. For he had learned their Language and Manners, as having been educated among the *British* Hostages at *Rome*. By this Means he approached by little and little to the King, and seeing his Opportunity for Access, stabbed him while under no Apprehension of Danger, and then escaped through the Enemies Ranks to return to his Men with the News of this detestable Exploit. But *Arviragus* his Brother seeing him killed, forthwith put off his own and put on his Brothers Habille-  
ments,

ments, and as if he had been *Guiderius* himself, encouraged the *Britains* to stand their Ground. Accordingly they knowing nothing of the Kings Disaster made a vigorous Resistance, fought courageously, and killed no small Number of the Enemy. At last the *Romans* give Ground, and dividing themselves into two Bodies basely quit the Field: For *Cesar* with one Part to secure himself retired to his Ships; but *Hamo* to the Woods, because he had not Time to get to the Ships. *Arviragus* therefore thinking that *Claudius* fled along with him, pursued him with speed, nor left off harassing them from Place to Place, till he overtook them upon a Part of the Sea Coast, which from the Name of *Hamo* is now called *Southampton*. There was at the same Place a convenient Haven for Ships, and some Merchant Ships at Anchor. And just as *Hamo* was attempting to get on board them, *Arviragus* came upon him unawares, and forthwith killed him. And ever since that Time the Haven has been called *Hamo's Port*.



## C H A P. XIV.

*Arviragus King of Britain makes his Submission to Claudius, who with his Assistance conquers the Orkney Islands.*

**I**N the mean Time, *Claudius* with his remaining Forces assaulted the City above-mentioned, which was then called *Kaerperis*, now *Portcestre*, and presently levelled the Walls, and having reduced the Citizens under Subjection, went after *Arviragus* who had entred *Winchester*. Afterwards he besieged that City, and employ'd variety of Engines against it. *Arviragus* seeing himself in these Straits, called his Troops together, and opened the Gates, to march out and give him Battle. But just as he was ready to begin the Attack, *Claudius* who feared the Boldness of the King, and the Bravery of the *Britains*, sent a Message to him with a Proposal of Peace; as chusing to reduce them by Wisdom and Policy, rather than hazard a Battle. To this Purpose he offered a Reconciliation with him, and promised to give him his Daughter, if he would only acknowledge the Kingdom of *Britain* subject to the *Roman* State. The Nobility hereupon persuaded him to lay aside Thoughts

Thoughts of War, and be contented with *Cladius's* Promise ; representing to him at the same Time, that it was no Disgrace to be subject to the *Romans*, who enjoy'd the Empire of the whole World. By these and many other Arguments he was prevailed upon to hearken to their Advice, and so made his Submission to *Cesar*. Which done *Claudius* sent to *Rome* for his Daughter, and then with the Assistance of *Arviragus* reduced the *Orkney* and the Provincial Islands under his Power.

---

C H A P. XV.

*Claudius gives his Daughter Genuiffa for a Wife to Arviragus, and returns to Rome.*

AS soon as the Winter was over, those that were sent for *Claudius's* Daughter returned with her, and presented her to her Father. The Damsels Name was *Genuiffa*, and so great was her Beauty, as raised the Admiration of all that saw her. After her Marriage to the King she gained so great an Ascendant over his Affections, that he in a Manner valued nothing but her alone : Infomuch that he was desirous to have the Place honoured where the Nuptials

tials were solemnized, and moved *Claudius* to build a City upon it, for a Monument to Posterity, of so great and happy a Marriage. *Claudius* consented to it, and commanded a City to be built, which after his Name is called *Kaerglou*, that is, *Gloucester* to this Day, being situated in the Confines of *Demetia* and *Loegria*, upon the Banks of the *Severn*. But some say that it derived its Name from one *Gloius* a Duke that was born to *Claudius* there, and to whom after the Death of *Arviragus* fell the Dukedom of *Demetia*. The City being finished, and the Island now enjoying Peace, *Claudius* returned to *Rome*, leaving to *Arviragus* the Government of the *British* Islands. At the same Time the Apostle *Peter* founded the Church of *Antioch*; and afterwards coming to *Rome* was Bishop there, and sent *Mark* the Evangelist into *Egypt* to preach the Gospel which he had writ.

## C H A P. XVI.

*Arviragus revolting from the Romans, Vespasian is sent into Britain.*

**A**FTER the Departure of *Claudius*, *Arviragus* began to shew his Wisdom and Courage, to rebuild Cities and Towns, and

and to exercise so great Authority over his own People, that he became a Terror to Kings of remote Countries. But this so elevated him with Pride that he despised the *Roman* Power, disdained any longer Subjection to the Senate, and assumed to himself the sole Authority in all Matters. Upon this News *Vespasian* was sent by *Claudius* either to procure a Reconciliation with *Arviragus*, or reduce him under Subjection to the *Romans*. Therefore as *Vespasian* was just arriving at the Haven of *Rutupi*, *Arviragus* met him, and hindred him from entering the Port. For he had brought so great an Army along with him, as was a Terror to the *Romans*, who for fear of his falling upon them durst not come alhore. *Vespasian* upon this withdrew from that Port, and shifting his Sails arrived at the Shore of *Totness*. As soon as he was landed, he marched directly to besiege *Kaerpenhuelgoit*, now *Exeter*; and after seven Days that he had laid before it, was overtaken by *Arviragus* and his Army, who gave him Battie. That Day great Destruction was made in both Armies, but neither got the Victory. The next Morning by the Mediation of Queen *Genuissa*, the two Leaders were made Friends, and they sent their Men over to *Ireland*. As soon as Winter was over *Vespasian* returned to *Rome*, but *Arviragus* continued still in *Britain*. Afterwards when he grew old, he began to shew

shew Respect to the Senate, and to govern his Kingdom in Peace and Tranquillity. The old Laws of his Ancestors he confirm'd, and enacted some new ones, and made very ample Presents to all Persons of Merit. So that his Fame spread over all *Europe*, and he was both loved and feared by the *Romans*, and became the Subject of their Discourse more than any King in his Time. Hence *Juvenal* relates how a certain blind Man, speaking of a Turbot that was taken, said,

*Regem aliquem capies aut de temone Britanno  
Decidet Arviragus.*

*Arviragus* shall from his Chariot fall,  
Or Thee his Lord some captive King shall call.

In War none was more fierce than he, in Peace none more mild, none more jocose, or in his Presents more magnificent. When he had finished his Course of Life, he was buried at *Gloucester*, in a certain Temple which he had built and dedicated to the Honour of *Claudius*.



C H A P.

## C H A P. XVII.

*Rodric Leader of the Picts is vanquished by Marius.*

**H**IS Son *Marius* succeeded him in the Kingdom, being a Man of admirable Prudence and Wisdom. In his Reign a certain King of the *Picts*, named *Rodric*, came from *Scythia* with a great Fleet, and arrived in the North Part of *Britain*, which is called *Albania*, and began to ravage that Country. *Marius* therefore raising an Army went in quest of him, and in Battle killed him, and gained the Victory; for a Monument whereof he set up a Stone in the Province, which from his Name was afterwards called *Westmarland*, where there is an Inscription retaining his Memory to this Day. *Rodric* being killed, he gave the conquered People that came with him Liberty to inhabit that Part of *Albania* which is called *Cathness*, that had been a long Time desert and uncultivated. And as they had no Wives, they desired the Daughters and Kinswomen of the *Britains*. But the *Britains* refused them out of a Disdain to match with such a People. Having suffered a Repulse here, they sailed over into *Ireland*, and married the Women of that Country, and by their Offspring

spring encreased their Number. But let thus much suffice concerning them, since I do not propose to write the History of this People, or of the *Scots*, who derived their Original from them and the *Irish*. *Marius* after he had settled the Island in perfect Peace, began to love the *Roman* People, paying the Tribute that was demanded of him; and in Imitation of his Fathers Example practised Justice, Law, Peace, and every Thing that was honourable in his Kingdom.

### C H A P. XVIII.

*Marius dying is succeeded by Coillus.*

**A**S soon as he had ended his Days, his Son *Coillus* took upon him the Government of the Kingdom. He had been brought up from his Infancy at *Rome*, and having been taught the Manners of the *Romans*, had contracted a most strict Amity with them. He likewise pay'd them Tribute, and declined making them any Opposition, because he saw the whole World subject to them, and that no Town or Country was out of the Limits of their Power. By paying therefore what was required of him, he enjoy'd his Kingdom in Peace: And no King ever shew'd greater Respect to his Nobility, as not only permitting them to enjoy their  
own

own with Quiet, but also engaging them by his continual Bounty and Munificence.

### C H A P. XIX.

*Lucius is the First British King that embraces the Christian Faith, together with his People.*

COILLUS had but one Son named *Lucius*, who obtaining the Crown after his Fathers Decease, imitated all his Acts of Goodness, and seemed to his People to be no other than *Coillus* himself revived. As he had made this good Beginning, he was willing to make a better End: For which Purpose he sent Letters to Pope *Eleutherius*, desiring to be instructed by him in the *Christian* Religion. For the Miracles which *Christ's* Disciples performed in several Nations, wrought a Conviction in his Mind; so that being inflamed with an ardent Love of the true Faith, he obtained the Accomplishment of his pious Request. For that holy Pope upon receipt of this devout Petition, sent to him two most religious Doctors, *Faganus* and *Duvianus*, who after they had preached concerning the Incarnation of the Word of God, administered to him Baptism, and made him a Proselyte

to

to the *Christian* Faith. Immediately upon this, People from all Countries assembling together, followed the Kings Example, and being washed in the same holy Laver, were made Partakers of the Kingdom of Heaven. The holy Doctors after they had almost extinguished Paganism over the whole Island, dedicated the Temples that had been founded in Honour of many Gods, to the One only God and his Saints, and filled them with Congregations of *Christians*. There were then in *Britain* eight and twenty *Flamens*, as also three *Archflamens*, to whose Jurisdiction the other Judges and Enthusiasts were subject. These also, according to the Apostles Command, they delivered from Idolatry, and where they were *Flamens* made them Bishops, where *Archflamens* Archbishops. The Seats of the *Archflamens* were at the three noblest Cities, viz. *London*, *Tork*, and the City of *Legions*, which its old Walls and Buildings shew to have been situated upon the River *Uske* in *Glamorganshire*. Under these three, now purged from Superstition, were made subject twenty eight Bishops with their Diocesses. To the Metropolitan of *Tork* were subject *Deira* and *Albania*, which the great River *Humber* divides from *Loegria*. To the Metropolitan of *London*, were subject *Loegria* and *Cornwal*. These two Provinces the *Severn* divides from *Kambria* or *Wales*, which was subject to the City of *Legions*.

C H A P.

## C H A P. XX.

*Faganus and Duvanus give an Account at Rome, of what they had done in Britain.*

**A**T last when they had made an entire Reformation here, the two Prelates returned to *Rome*, and desired the Pope to confirm what they had done. As soon as they had obtained a Confirmation, they returned again to *Britain*, accompanied with many others, by whose Doctrine the *British* Nation was in a short Time strengthened in the Faith. Their Names and Acts are recorded in a Book which *Gildas* wrote concerning the Victory of *Aurelius Ambrosius*: And what is delivered in so bright a Treatise, needs not to be repeated here in a meaner Style.



THE



THE  
British History.

The Fifth Book.

CHAP. I.

*Lucius dies without Issue, and is a  
Benefactor to the Churches.*



IN the mean Time, the glorious King *Lucius* highly rejoyced at the great Progress the true Faith and Worship had made in his Kingdom, and granted that the Possessions and Territories formerly belonging to the Temples of the Gods, should now be converted to a better Use, and appropriated to  
*Christian*

*Christian Churches.* And because a greater Honour was due to them than to the others, he made large Additions of Lands and Mansion Houses, and all manner of Privileges to them. Amidst these and other Acts of his great Piety, he departed this Life in the City of *Gloucester*, and was honourably buried in the Cathedral Church, in the hundred and fifty sixth Year after our Lords Incarnation. He had no Issue to succeed him, so that after his Decease there rose a Diffension among the *Britains*, and the *Roman* Power was weakened.

---

## C H A P. II.

*Severus a Senator subdues Part of Britain: His War with Fulgenius.*

WHEN this News was brought to Rome, the Senate dispatched away *Severus* a Senator, and two Legions along with him, to reduce the Country under the *Roman* Subjection. As soon as he was arrived he came to a Battle with the *Britains*, Part of whom he obliged to submit to him, and the other Part which he could not subdue he endeavoured to distress in several cruel Engagements, and forced them to fly beyond *Deira* into *Albania*. Notwithstanding

they under the Conduct of *Fulgenius* opposed him with all their Might, and often made great Slaughter both of their own Countrymen and of the *Romans*. For *Fulgenius* brought into his Assistance all the People of the Islands that he could find, and so frequently returned with Victory. The Emperor not being able to bear the Irruptions he made, commanded a Wall to be built between *Deira* and *Albania*, to hinder his Excursions upon them: Which they accordingly made upon the common Charge from Sea to Sea, and which did for a long Time hinder the Approach of the Enemy. But *Fulgenius*, when he was unable to make any longer Resistance, made a Voyage into *Scythia*, to desire the Assistance of the *Picts* towards his Restoration. And when he had got together all the Forces of that Country, he returned with a very great Fleet into *Britain*, and besieged *Tork*. Upon the spreading of this News through the Countries, the greatest Part of the *Britains* deserted *Severus*, and went over to *Fulgenius*. However this did not make *Severus* desist from his Enterprize: But calling together the *Romans*, and the rest of the *Britains* that adhered to him, he marched to the Siege, and fought with *Fulgenius*; but the Engagement proving very sharp, he was killed with many of his Followers: *Fulgenius* also was mortally wounded. Afterwards *Severus* was buried at *Tork*, which  
Ciry

City was taken by his Legions. He left two Sons, *Bassianus* and *Geta*, whereof *Geta* had a *Roman* for his Mother, but *Bassianus* a *Britain*. Therefore upon the Death of their Father the *Romans* made *Geta* King, favouring him on Account of his being a *Roman* by both his Parents : But the *Britains* rejected him, and advanced *Bassianus*, as being their Countryman by his Mothers Side. This proved the Occasion of a Fight between the two Brothers, in which *Geta* was killed ; and so *Bassianus* obtained the Kingdom.

### CHAP. III.

## Carausius advanced to be King of Britain.

AT that Time there was in *Britain* one *Carausius* a young Man of very mean Birth, who having given a Proof of his Bravery in many Engagements, went to *Rome*, and solicited the Senate for Leave to defend with a Fleet the maritim Coasts of *Britain*, from the Incurſions of *Barbarians*; which if they would grant him, he promiſed to do more and greater Things for the Honour and Service of the Commonwealth, than if the Kingdom of *Britain* were delivered up to them. The Senate deluded by

his specious Promises granted him his Request, and so with his Commission sealed, he returned to *Britain*. Then by wicked Practises getting a Fleet together, he lifted into his Service a Body of the bravest Youth, and put out to Sea, and sailed round all the Shores of the Kingdom, causing very great Disturbance among the People. In the mean Time he invaded the adjacent Islands, where he destroy'd all before him, Countries, Cities, and Towns, and plundered the Inhabitants of all they had. By this Conduct he encouraged to flock to him all manner of dissolute Fellows with Hopes of Plunder, and in a very short Time was attended with an Army that no neighbouring Prince was able to oppose. This made him begin to swell with Pride, and to propose to the *Britains*, that they should make him their King; upon which Consideration he promised to kill and banish the *Romans*, and free the whole Island from the Invasions of barbarous Nations. Accordingly obtaining his Request, he presently fell upon *Bassianus* and killed him, and then took upon him the Government of the Kingdom. For *Bassianus* was betray'd by the *Picts*, whom *Fulgenius* his Mothers Brother had brought with him into *Britain*, and who being corrupted by the Promises and Presents of *Carausius*, instead of assisting *Bassianus*, deserted him in the very Battle, and fell upon his Men; so that the  
rest

rest were put into a Consternation, and not knowing their Friends from their Foes, quickly gave Ground, and left the Victory to *Carausius*. Then he, to reward the *Picts* for this Success, gave them a Place of Habitation in *Albania*, where they continued afterwards mixt with the *Britains*.

#### CHAP. IV.

*Allectus kills Carausius, but is afterwards himself slain in Flight by Asclepiodotus*

WHEN the News of these Proceedings of *Carausius* arrived at *Rome*, the Senate deputed *Allectus* with three Legions, with a Commission to kill the Tyrant, and restore the Kingdom of *Britain* to the *Roman* Power. No sooner was he arrived, than he fought with *Carausius*, killed him, and took upon himself the Government. After which he miserably oppressed the *Britains*, for having deserted the Commonwealth, and adhered to *Carausius*. But the *Britains* not enduring this, advanced *Asclepiodotus*, Duke of *Cornwal*, to be their King, and then unanimously marched against *Allectus*, and challenged him to a Battle. He was then at *London*, celebrating a

Feast to his Tutelary Gods; but being informed of the coming of *Asclepiodotus*, he quitted the Sacrifice, and went out with all his Forces to meet him, and engaged with him in a most sharp Fight. But *Asclepiodotus* had the Advantage, and dispersed and put to Flight *Allectus's* Troops, and in the Pursuit killed many thousands, as also King *Allectus* himself. After this Victory gained by him, *Livius Gallus*, the Colleague of *Allectus*, assembled together the rest of the *Romans*, and shut up the Gates of the City, in the Towers and other Fortifications of which, he placed his Men, thinking by this Means either to make a Stand against *Asclepiodotus*, or at least to avoid imminent Death. But *Asclepiodotus* seeing what was done, quickly laid Siege to the City, and sent Word to all the Dukes of *Britain*, how he had killed *Allectus* with a great Number of his Men, and was besieging *Gallus* and the rest of the *Romans* in *London*; and therefore earnestly intreated them to hasten to his Assistance, representing to them withal, how easy it was to extirpate the whole Race of the *Romans* out of *Britain*, provided they would all join their Forces against the besieged. At this Summons came the *Demetians*, *Venedotians*, *Deirans*, *Albanians*, and all others of the *British* Race. As soon as they appeared before the Duke, he commanded vast Numbers of Engines to be made,

made, to beat down the Walls of the City. Accordingly every one readily executed his Orders with great Bravery, and made a brisk Assault upon the City, the Walls of which were in a very short Time battered down, and a Passage made into it. After these Preparations, they began a bloody Assault upon the *Romans*, who seeing their Fellow Soldiers falling before them without Intermission, persuaded *Gallus* to offer a Surrender on the bare Terms of only having Quarter granted them, and Leave to depart: For they were now all killed excepting one Legion, which still held out. *Gallus* consented to the Proposal, and accordingly surrendered himself and his Men to *Asclepiodotus*, who was disposed to give them Quarter; but he was prevented by a Body of *Venedotians*, who rushed in upon them, and the same Day cut off all their Heads upon a Brook within the City, which from the Name of the Commander was afterwards called in the *British* Tongue *Nautgallim*, and in the *Saxon* *Gallemborne*.



## C H A P. V.

*Asclepiodotus takes the Crown.  
Dioclesians Massacre of the Chri-  
stians in Britain.*

THE Romans being thus defeated, *Asclepiodotus* with the Consent of the People, placed the Crown upon his own Head, and then governed the Country in Justice and Peace ten Years, and curbed the Insolence and Outrages committed by Plunderers and Robbers. In his Days began the Persecution of the Emperor *Dioclesian*, by which Christianity was almost abolished over the whole Island, which from the Time of King *Lucius* had continued fixed and undisturbed. This was very much owing to *Maximianus Herculius*, General of that Tyrant's Army, by whose Command all the Churches were pulled down, and all Copies of the Holy Scriptures that could be found, were burnt in the publick Markets. The Priests also, with the Believers under their Care, were put to Death, and with Emulation pressed in Crowds together for a speedy Passage to the Joys of Heaven, as their proper Dwelling Place. God therefore magnified his Goodness to us, forasmuch as he did in that Time of Persecution, of his meer Grace light up the bright Lamps of the Holy Martyrs,

Martyrs, to prevent the spreading of gross Darkneſs over the People of *Britain*; whoſe Sepulchres and Places of Suffering might have been a Means of inflaming our Minds with the greateſt Fervency of Divine Love, had not the deplorable Impiety of *Barbarians* deprived us of them. Among others of both Sexes that continued firm in the Army of Chriſt, there ſuffered *Alban* of *Verulam*, as alſo *Julius* and *Aaron*, both of the City of *Legions*. Of theſe *Alban*, out of the Fervour of his Charity, when his Confessor *Amphibalus* was purſued by the Perſecutors, and juſt ready to be apprehended, firſt hid him in his Houſe, and then offered himſelf to die for him; imitating in this Chriſt himſelf, who laid down his Life for his Sheep. The other two, after being tore Limb from Limb, in a Manner unheard of, took a ſpeedy Flight up to the Gates of the Heavenly *Jeruſalem* with a Crown of Martyrdom.

---

## C H A P. VI.

*An Inſurrection againſt Aſclepiodotus by Coel, whoſe Daughter Helena Conſtantius marries.*

**I**N the mean Time *Coel* Duke of *Kærcolvin* or *Colcheſter*, made an Inſurrection againſt King *Aſclepiodotus*, and in a pitched Battle

Battle killed him, and took Possession of his Crown. The Senate hearing this, rejoyced at the Kings Death, who had given such Disturbance to the *Roman* Power : And reflecting withal upon the Damage they had sustained by the Loss of this Kingdom, they sent away *Constantius* the Senator, who had reduced *Spain* under their Subjection, being a Man of Prudence and Courage, and one who was above all the rest industrious to promote the Good of the Commonwealth. *Coel* having Information of his coming, was afraid to engage with him in Battle, on Account of a Report, that no King was able to stand before him. Therefore as soon as *Constantius* was arrived at the Island, *Coel* sent Ambassadors to him with Offers of Peace and Promise of Subjection, provided he might enjoy the Kingdom of *Britain*, and pay no more than the usual Tribute to the *Roman* State. *Constantius* consented to the Proposal, and so upon giving of Hostages the Peace was confirmed between them. The Month after *Coel* was seized with a very great Sickness, of which he died within eight Days. After his Decease, *Constantius* himself was Crowned, and married the Daughter of *Coel*, whose Name was *Helena*. She surpassed all the Ladies of the Country in Beauty, as she did all others of her Time in her Skill in Musick and the liberal Arts. Her Father had

had no other Issue to succeed him on the Throne, for which Reason he was very careful about her Education, the better to qualify her to govern the Kingdom. *Constantius* therefore having made her Partner of his Bed, had a Son by her called *Constantine*. After eleven Years were expired, he died at *York*, and bestow'd the Kingdom upon his Son, who within a few Years after he was raised to this Dignity, began to give Proofs of an Heroick Virtue, undaunted Courage, and strict Observation of Justice among his People. He put a Stop to the Depredations of Robbers, suppressed the Insolence of Tyrants, and endeavoured every where to restore Peace.

---

## C H A P. VII.

*The Romans desire Constantines Assistance against the Cruelty of Maxentius.*

AT that Time there was a certain Tyrant at *Rome*, named *Maxentius*, who made it his Endeavour to confiscate the Estates of all the best of the Nobility, and oppressed the Commonwealth with his grievous Tyranny. He therefore proceeding in his Cruelty, those that were banished fled

fled to *Constantine* in *Britain*, and were honourably entertained by him. At last when a great many such had resorted to him, they endeavoured to raise in him an Abhorrence of the Tyrant, and frequently expostulated with him after this manner.  
“ How long, *Constantine*, will you suffer  
“ our Distress and Banishment? Why do  
“ you delay to restore us to our Native  
“ Country? You are the only Person of  
“ our Nation, that can restore to us what  
“ we have lost by driving out *Maxentius*.  
“ For what Prince is to be compared with  
“ the King of *Britain*, either for brave and  
“ gallant Soldiers, or for large Treasures?  
“ We intreat you restore us to our Estates,  
“ Wives and Children, by conducting us  
“ with an Army to *Rome*.

---

C H A P. VIII.

*Constantine having reduced Rome,  
obtains the Empire of the World.  
Octavius Duke of the Wifleans,  
is put to Flight by Trahern.*

*C*ONSTANTINE moved with these and the like Speeches, made an Expedition to *Rome*, and reduced it under his Power, and afterwards obtained the Empire

pire of the whole World. In this Expedition he carried along with him three Unkles of *Helena*, viz. *Leolin*, *Trahern* and *Marius*, and advanced them to the Degree of Senators. In the mean Time *Octavius*, Duke of the *Wisseans*, rebelled against the Roman Proconsuls, to whom the Government of the Island had been committed, and having killed them, took Possession of the Throne. *Constantine* upon Information hereof, sent *Trahern* the Uncle of *Helena*, with three Legions to reduce the Island. *Trahern* arrived at Shore hard by the City, which in the *British* Tongue is called *Kærperis*, which he assaulted, and in two Days Time took it. This News spreading over the whole Country, King *Octavius* assembled all the Forces of the Land, and went to meet him not far from *Winchester*, in a Field called in the *British* Tongue *Maifuriam*, where he engaged with him in Battle, and routed him. *Trahern* upon this Loss, betook himself with his broken Forces to his Ships, and in them made a Voyage to *Albania*, in the Provinces of which he made great Destruction. When *Octavius* again had Intelligence of it, he followed him with his Forces, and encountered him in *Westmarland*, but fled without the Victory. On the other Hand *Trahern* when he found the Day was his own, pursued *Octavius*, nor ever suffered him to be at rest till he had dispossessed him  
both

both of his Cities and Crown. *Octavius* in great Grief for the Loss of his Kingdom, went in a Fleet to *Norway*, to obtain Assistance from King *Gombert*. In the mean Time he had given Orders to his most intimate Adherents, to watch carefully all Opportunities of killing *Trabern*; which accordingly did not long fail of being executed, by the Magistrate of a certain privileged Town, who had a more than ordinary Love for him. For as *Trabern* was one Day upon a Journey from *London*, he lay hid with a hundred Men in the Vale of a Wood, through which he was to pass, and there fell upon him unawares, and killed him in the midst of his Men. This News being brought to *Octavius*, he returned back to *Britain*, where he dispersed the *Romans*, and recovered the Throne. In a short Time after this, he arrived to such Greatness and Wealth, that he feared no Body; and possessed the Kingdom till the Time of *Gratian* and *Valentinian*.

---

C H A P. IX.

*Maximian is desired for a King of Britain.*

**A**T last in his Old Age, being willing to settle the Government, he asked his Council, whom of his Family they desired

to have for their King after his Decease. For he had no Son, and but one Daughter, to whom he might leave the Crown. Some therefore advised him to bestow his Daughter with the Kingdom upon some noble *Roman*, to the End they might enjoy a firmer Peace. Others were of Opinion, that *Conan Meriadoc* his Nephew ought to be preferred to the Throne, and the Daughter married to some Prince of another Kingdom with a Dowry in Money. While these Things were in Agitation among them, there came *Caradoc* Duke of *Cornwal*, and gave his Advice to invite over *Maximian* the Senator, and to bestow the Lady with the Kingdom upon him, which would be a Means of securing to them a lasting Peace. For his Father *Leolin*, the Uncle of *Constantine*, whom we mentioned before, was a *Britain*; but by his Mother and Place of Birth he was a *Roman*, and by both Parents was descended of Royal Blood. And there was a sure Prospect of a firm and secure Peace under him, upon Account of the Right he had to *Britain* by his Descent from the Emperors, and also from the *British* Blood. But the Duke of *Cornwal* by delivering this Advice, brought upon himself the Displeasure of *Conan*, the Kings Nephew, who was very ambitious of succeeding to the Kingdom, and put the whole Court into a Disorder upon it. However *Caradoc* being

K                      unwilling

unwilling to recede from his Proposal, sent his Son *Mauricius* to *Rome* to acquaint *Maximian* with what had passed. *Mauricius* was a Person of large and well-proportioned Stature, as well as great Courage and Boldness, and could not bear to have his Judgment contradicted without a Recourse to Arms and Duelling. As soon as he presented himself before *Maximian*, he met with a Reception from him suitable to his Quality, and had the greatest Honours paid him of any that were about him. There happened to be then a very great Contest between *Maximian* and the two Emperors, *Gratian* and his Brother *Valentinian*, on Account of his being refused the third Part of the Empire, which he demanded. When therefore *Mauricius* saw *Maximian* ill treated by the Emperors, he took Occasion from thence to address himself to him in this manner. "What need you, *Maximian*,  
" stand in fear of *Gratian*, when you have  
" so fair an Opportunity of wresting the  
" Empire from him? Go along with me  
" into *Britain*, and you shall take Possession of that Crown. For King *Ottavius*  
" being now grown old and infirm, desires  
" nothing more than to find some such  
" proper Person, to bestow his Kingdom  
" and Daughter upon. He has no Male  
" Issue, and therefore has asked the Advice  
" of his Nobility, to whom he should marry  
" his

" his Daughter with the Kingdom; and  
 " they to his Satisfaction have passed a De-  
 " cree, that the Kingdom and Lady be gi-  
 " ven to you, and have sent me to acquaint  
 " you with it. So that if you go with me,  
 " and accomplish this Affair, you may with  
 " the Treasure and Forces of *Britain* be able  
 " to return back to *Rome*, drive out the  
 " Emperors, and gain the Empire to your-  
 " self. For in this manner did your Kins-  
 " man *Constantius*, and several others of our  
 " Kings who raised themselves to the Em-  
 " pire.

---

## C H A P. X.

*Maximian coming into Britain,  
 artfully declines fighting with  
 Conan.*

**M**AXIMIAN was pleased with the  
 Offer, and took his Journey to *Britain*;  
 but in his Way subdued the Cities of the  
*Franks*, by which he amassed to himself a  
 great Treasure of Gold and Silver, and  
 raised Men for his Service in all Parts. Af-  
 terwards he set sail with a fair Wind, and  
 arrived at *Hamo's* Port; the News whereof  
 extreamly surprized the King with Fear  
 and Astonishment, who took this to be a

hostile Invasion. Whereupon he called to him his Nephew *Conan*, and commanded him to raise all the Forces of the Kingdom, and go meet the Enemy. *Conan* having made the necessary Preparations, marched accordingly to *Hamo's* Port, where *Maximian* had pitched his Tents; who upon seeing the Approach of so numerous an Army, was under the greatest Perplexities what Course to take. For as he was attended with a smaller Body of Men, and had no Hopes of being entertained peaceably, he dreaded both the Number and Courage of the Enemy. Under these Difficulties he called a Council of the ancientest Men, together with *Mauricius*, to ask their Advice what was to be done at this critical Juncture. "It is not for us, said *Mauricius*, to hazard  
" a Battle with such a numerous and puissant Army: Neither was the Reduction  
" of *Britain* in a hostile Manner the End  
" of our coming. Our Business must be to  
" desire Peace and a hospitable Treatment,  
" till we can learn the Kings Mind. Let  
" us say that we are sent by the Emperors  
" upon an Embassy to *Octavius*, and let us  
" with artful Speeches pacify the People. "

When all had shewn themselves pleased with this Advice, he took with him twelve aged Men with gray Hairs, eminent beyond the rest for their Quality and Wisdom, and bearing Olive-Branches in their right Hands,  
and

and went to meet *Conan*. The *Britains* seeing they were Men of a venerable Age, and that they bore Olive-Branches as a Token of Peace, rose up before them in a respectful Manner, and opened a Way for their free Access to their Commander. Then they presenting themselves before *Conan Meriadoc*, saluted him in the Name of the Emperors and the Senate, and told him, that *Maximian* was sent to *Octavius* upon an Embassy from *Gratian* and *Valentinian*. *Conan* made Answer; “ Why is he then  
“ attended with so great a Multitude?  
“ This does not look like the Appearance  
“ of Ambassadors, but the Invasion of  
“ Enemies.” To which *Mauricius* reply’d;  
“ It did not become so great a Man to ap-  
“ pear abroad in a mean Figure, or with-  
“ out Soldiers for his Guard; especially con-  
“ sidering, that by Reason of the *Roman*  
“ Power, and the Actions of his Ancestors,  
“ he is become obnoxious to many Kings.  
“ If he had had but a small Retinue, he might  
“ perhaps have been killed by the Enemies  
“ of the Commonwealth. He is come in  
“ Peace, and it is Peace he desires. For from  
“ the Time of our Arrival, our Behaviour  
“ has been such as to give no Offence to any  
“ Body. We have bought Necessaries at our  
“ own Expences, as peaceable People do, and  
“ have taken nothing from any by Violence.”  
While *Conan* was in suspense, whether to give

them Peace, or begin the Battle, *Caradoc* Duke of *Cornwal*, with others of the Nobility came to him, and dissuaded him from proceeding in the War after this Representation : Whereupon, though much against his Will, he laid down his Arms, and granted them Peace. Then he conducted *Maximian* to *London*, where he gave the King an Account of the whole Proceeding.

---

C H A P. XI.

*The Kingdom of Britain is bestowed on Maximian.*

*CARADOC* after this, taking along with him his Son *Mauricius*, commanded every Body to withdraw from the Kings Presence, and then addressed himself to him in these Words. “ Behold, that which  
“ your more faithful and loyal Subjects  
“ have long wished for, is now by the good  
“ Providence of God brought about. You  
“ commanded your Nobility to give their  
“ Advice, how to dispose of your Daughter  
“ and Kingdom, as being willing to hold  
“ the Government no longer on Account of  
“ your great Age. Some therefore were  
“ for having the Kingdom delivered up to  
“ *Conan* your Nephew, and a suitable Match  
“ procured

“ procured for your Daughter elsewhere;  
“ as fearing the Ruin of our People, if any  
“ Prince that is a Stranger to our Language  
“ should be set over us. Others were for  
“ granting the Kingdom to your Daughter,  
“ and some Nobleman of our own Coun-  
“ try, who should succeed you after your  
“ Death. But the major Part recommended  
“ some Person descended of the Family of  
“ the Emperors, on whom you should be-  
“ stow your Daughter and Crown. For  
“ they promised themselves a firm and last-  
“ ing Peace, as the Consequence of such a  
“ Marriage, since they would be under the  
“ Protection of the *Roman* State. See then!  
“ God has vouchsafed to bring to you a  
“ young Man, who is both a *Roman*, and  
“ also of the Royal Family of *Britain*; and  
“ to whom, if you follow my Advice, you  
“ will not delay to marry your Daughter.  
“ And indeed should you refuse him, what  
“ Right could you plead to the Crown of  
“ *Britain* against him. For he is the Cousin  
“ of *Constantine*, and the Nephew of King  
“ *Coel*, whose Daughter *Helena* possessed  
“ the Crown by an undeniable Hereditary  
“ Right.” When *Caradoc* had represented  
these Things to him, *Octavius* acquiesced,  
and with the general Consent of his People  
forthwith bestowed the Kingdom and his  
Daughter upon him. *Conan Meriadoc* find-  
ing how Things went, was beyond Expres-

sion incensed, and retiring into *Albania*, used all his Interest to raise an Army, that he might give Disturbance to *Maximian*. And when he had got a great Body of Men together, he passed the *Humber*, and wasted the Provinces on each Side of it. At the News whereof, *Maximian* hastened to assemble his Forces against him, and then gave him Battle, and returned with Victory. But this proved no decisive Blow to *Conan*, who with his reassembled Troops still continued to ravage the Provinces, and provoked *Maximian* to return again and renew the War, in which he had various Success, being sometimes Victorious, sometimes vanquished. At last, after great Damages done on both Sides, they were brought by the Mediation of Friends to a Reconciliation.

---

C H A P. XII.

*Maximian overthrows the Armoricans ; his Speech to Conan.*

FIVE Years after this, *Maximian* swelling with Pride, by Reason of the vast Treasures that daily flow'd in upon him, fitted out a great Fleet, and assembled together all the Forces in *Britain*. For this Kingdom

Kingdom was not now sufficient for him ; he had an Ambition of adding *Gaul* also to it. With this View he set sail, and arrived first at the Kingdom of *Armorica*, now called *Britain*, and began Hostilities upon the *Gallick* People that inhabited it. But the *Gauls*, under the Command of *Inbaltus*, met him, and engaged him in Battle, in which the greater Part being endangered, they were forced to fly, and leave *Inbaltus* with fifteen thousand Men killed, all of them *Armoricans*. This vast Overthrow was Matter of the greatest Joy to *Maximian*, who knew the Reduction of that Country would be very easy, after the Loss of so many Men. Upon this Occasion he called to him *Conan* aside from the Army, and smiling said ; “ See, we have already conquered  
“ one of the best Kingdoms in *Gaul* : We  
“ may now have Hopes of gaining all the  
“ rest. Let us make haste to take the  
“ Cities and Towns, before the Rumour  
“ of their Danger spread to the remoter  
“ Parts of *Gaul*, and raise all the People  
“ up in Arms. For if we can but get Possession of this Kingdom, I make no  
“ Doubt of reducing all *Gaul* under our  
“ Power. Be not therefore concerned that  
“ you have yielded up the Island of *Britain*  
“ to me, notwithstanding the Hopes you  
“ once had of succeeding to it ; because  
“ whatever you have lost in it, I will restore  
“ store

“ store to you in this Country. For my  
“ Design is to advance you upon the Throne  
“ of this Kingdom; and this shall be ano-  
“ ther *Britain*, which we will people with our  
“ own Countrymen, and drive out the old  
“ Inhabitants. The Land is fruitful in Corn,  
“ the Rivers abound with Fish, the Woods  
“ afford a beautiful Prospect, and the Fo-  
“ rests are every where pleasant; nor is  
“ there in my Opinion any where a more  
“ delightful Country.” Upon this *Conan*  
with a submissive Bow gave him his Thanks,  
and promised to continue loyal to him as  
long as he lived.

---

C H A P. XIII.*Redonum taken by Maximian.*

**A**FTER this they marched with their  
Forces to *Redonum*, and took it the  
same Day. For the Citizens hearing of the  
Bravery of the *Britains*, and what Slaughter  
they had made, fled away with haste, leav-  
ing their Wives and Children behind them.  
And the rest of the Cities and Towns soon  
followed their Example; so that there was  
an easy Access to them, for the *Britains*, who  
wherever they entred killed all they found  
left of the Male Sex, and spared only the  
Women.

Women. At last when they had wholly extirpated the Inhabitants of all those Provinces, they garrison'd the Cities and Towns with *British* Soldiers, and made Fortifications in several Places. The Fame of *Maximian's* Exploits spreading over the rest of the Provinces of *Gaul*, all their Dukes and Princes were under a dreadful Consternation, and had no other Hopes left but in their Prayers to their Gods. They fled every where from the Country Villages into the Cities and Towns, and other Places of Strength and Safety. *Maximian* finding he had struck a Terror into them, began to think still of bolder Attempts, and by profusely distributing of Presents augmented his Army. For all manner of Persons that he knew greedy of Plunder, he list'd into his Service, and by plentifully bestowing his Money and other valuable Things among them, kept them firm to his Interest.

---

#### C H A P. XIV.

*Maximian after the Conquest of Gaul and Germany, makes Triers the Seat of his Empire.*

**B**Y this Means he raised such a numerous Army, as he thought would be sufficient for the Conquest of all *Gaul*. Notwithstanding

withstanding he suspended the Exercise of his Arms for a little Time, till he had settled the Kingdom he had taken, and peopled it with *Britains*. To this End he published a Decree, for the assembling together of a hundred thousand of the common People of *Britain*, who were to come over to him; besides thirty thousand Soldiers, to defend them in the Country from all hostile Invasions. As soon as the People were arrived according to his Orders, he distributed them through all the Countries of the Kingdom of *Armorica*, and made another *Britain* of it, and then bestow'd it on *Conan Meriadoc*. But he himself, with the rest of his Fellow Soldiers, marched into the farther Part of *Gaul*, which after many bloody Battles he subdued, as he did also all *Germany*, being every where victorious. But the Seat of his Empire he made at *Triers*, and fell so furiously upon the two Emperors *Gratian* and *Valentinian*, that he killed the one, and forced the other to fly from *Rome*.

---

C H A P. XV.*A Fight between the Aquitans and Conan.*

I N the mean Time the *Gauls* and *Aquitans* gave Disturbance to *Conan*, and the *Armorican Britains*, and infested them with their frequent

frequent Incursions ; but he as often defeated them, and bravely defended the Country committed to them. After he had entirely vanquished them, he had a Mind to bestow Wives on his Fellow Soldiers, by whom they might have Issue to keep perpetual Possession of the Country : And to avoid all mixture with the *Gauls*, he sent over to the Island of *Britain* for Wives for them. In order to this, Messengers were sent to recommend the Management of this Affair to *Dianotus* King of *Cornwal*, who had succeeded his Brother *Caradoc* in that Kingdom. He was a very noble and powerful Prince, and to him *Maximian* had committed the Government, while he was employ'd in Affairs abroad. He had also a Daughter of wonderful Beauty, named *Ursula*, whom *Conan* was most passionately in Love with.

---

## C H A P. XVI.

*Guanius and Melga murder eleven thousand Virgins. Maximian is killed at Rome.*

*DIANOTUS*, upon this Message sent him by *Conan*, was very ready to execute his Orders, and summoned together the Daughters of the Nobility from all Provinces,

vinces, to the Number of eleven thousand ; but of those of the meaner Sort sixty thousand ; and commanded them all to appear together at the City of *London*. He likewise ordered Ships to be brought from all Shores, for their Transportation to their future Husbands. And though in so great a Multitude many were pleased with this Order, yet it was displeasing to the greater Part, as having a greater Affection for their Relations and native Country. Nor perhaps were there wanting some, who preferring Virginity to the married State, would have rather lost their Lives in any Country, than enjoy'd the greatest Plenty in *Wedlock*. In short, most of them had Views and Wishes different from one another, had they been left to their own Liberty. But now the Ships being ready, they went on board them, and sailing down the *Thames* made towards the Sea. At last as they were steering towards the *Armorican* Coast, contrary Winds rose and dispersed the whole Fleet. In this Storm the greater Part of the Ships were drowned ; but the Women that escaped the Danger of the Sea, were driven upon strange Islands, and by a barbarous People either murdered or made Slaves. For they happened to fall into the Hands of the cruel Army of *Guanius* and *Melga*, who by the Command of *Gratian* were making terrible Destruction among the maritime

ritim Nations and *Germany*. *Guanius* was King of the *Huns*, and *Melga* of the *Picts*, whom *Gratian* had engaged in his Party, and had sent into *Germany*, to infest along the Sea Coasts all those of *Maximians* Party. While they were thus exercising their barbarous Rage, they happened to light upon these Virgins, driven on those Parts, and were so inflamed with their Beauty, that they courted them to their brutish Embraces; which when the Women would not submit to, the *Ambros* fell upon them, and without the least Remorse murder'd the greatest Part of them. This done, the two wicked Leaders of the *Picts* and *Huns*, *Guanius* and *Melga*, being the Partizans of *Gratian* and *Valentinian*, when they had learned that the Island of *Britain* was drained of all its Soldiers, made a speedy Voyage towards it; and taking into their Assistance the People of the adjacent Islands, arrived in *Albania*. Then joining all in a Body, they invaded the Kingdom which was left without either Government or Defence, and made miserable Destruction among the common People. For *Maximian*, as we have already related, had carried away with him all the warlike Youth that could be found, and had left behind him only the Husbandmen, who had neither Sense nor Arms, for the Defence of their Country. *Guanius* and *Melga* finding they were not able to give them the  
least

least Opposition, began to domineer most insolently, and to lay waste their Cities and Countries, as if they had only been Penns of Sheep. The News of this grievous Calamity coming to *Maximian*, he sent away *Gratian Municeps*, with two Legions to their Assistance; who as soon as they arrived, fought with the Enemy, and after a most bloody Victory over them, forced them to fly over into *Ireland*. In the mean Time *Maximian* was killed at *Rome* by *Gratians* Friends: And the *Britains* he had carried with him, were also slain and dispersed. Those of them that could escape, went to their Countrymen in *Armorica*, which was now called the other *Britain*.



THE



T H E  
**British History.**

The Sixth Book.

C H A P. I.

*Gratian being advanced to the Throne  
is killed by the common People.  
The Britains desire the Romans to  
defend them against Guanius and  
Melga.*



**B**UT *Gratian Maniceps* hearing of  
the Death of *Maximian*, seized  
the Crown, and made himself  
King. After this he exercised  
such Tyranny; that the common People fell  
upon him in a tumultuous Manner; and  
murdered him. When this News had  
reached

reached other Countries, their former Enemies returned back from *Ireland*, and bringing with them the *Scots*, *Norwegians*, and *Dacians*, made dreadful Devastations with Fire and Sword over the whole Kingdom from Sea to Sea. Upon this most grievous Calamity and Oppression, Ambassadors are dispatched with Letters to *Rome*, to beseech with Tears and Vows of perpetual Subjection, that a Body of Men might be sent to revenge their Injuries, and drive out the Enemy from them. The Ambassadors in a short Time prevailed so far, as to have one Legion committed to them, that was unmindful of past Injuries, which was transported in a Fleet to their Country, where they encountred the Enemy. At last after the Slaughter of a vast Multitude of them, they drove them entirely out of their Coasts, and rescued the miserable Commonalty from their outrageous Cruelty. Then they gave Orders for a Wall to be built between *Albania* and *Deira*, from one Sea to the other, for a Terror to the Enemy, and Safeguard to the Country. At that Time *Albania* wholly lay waste, by the frequent Invasions of barbarous Nations; and whatever Enemies made an Attempt upon the Country, met with a convenient Landing Place here. So that the Inhabitants were diligent in working upon the Wall, which they finished partly at the publick, partly upon private Charge.

C H A P.

## C H A P. II.

*Guethelins Speech to the Britains,  
at the Romans returning home.*

**T**HE *Romans* after this declared to the *Britains*, that they should not be able for the Future to undergo the Fatigue of such laborious Expeditions; and that it was beneath the Dignity of the *Roman* State, to harass so great and brave an Army, both by Land and Sea, against base and vagabond Robbers: But rather they ought to apply themselves to the Use of Arms, and to fight bravely in defending to the utmost of their Power, their Country, Riches, Wives, Children, and, what is dearer than all these, their Liberty and Lives. As soon as they had given them this Exhortation, they commanded all the Men of the Island, that were fit for War, to appear together at *London*, because the *Romans* were about to return home. When therefore they were all assembled, *Guethelin* the Metropolitan of *London* had Orders to make a Speech to them; which he did in these Words.

“ Though I am appointed by the Princes  
“ here present to speak to you, I find my-  
“ self rather ready to burst out into Tears;

L 2

“ that

“ than disposed to make an eloquent Oration. It is a most sensible Affliction to me, to observe the Weakness and Orphan State into which you are fallen, since the Time that *Maximian* drew away with him all the Forces and Youth of this Kingdom. You that were left were People wholly unexperienced in War, and taken up with other Employments, as tilling the Ground, and several Kinds of mechanical Trades. So that when your Enemies from foreign Countries came upon you, as Sheep wandring without a Shepherd, they forced you to quit your Folds, till the *Roman* Power restored you to them again. Must your Hopes therefore always depend upon foreign Assistance? And will you never use yourselves to handle Arms against a Band of Robbers, that are by no Means stronger than yourselves, if you are not dispirited by Sloth and Cowardice? The *Romans* are now tired with the continual Voyages, wherewith they are harassed to defend you against your Enemies: They rather chuse to remit to you the Tribute you pay them, than undergo any longer this Fatigue by Land and Sea. What though you were only the common People at the Time when we had Soldiers of our own, do you therefore think that Manhood has quite forsaken you? Are not Men in the Course

“ of

“ of human Generation often the Reverse  
“ of one another? Does not a Ploughman  
“ beget a Soldier, and a Soldier a Plough-  
“ man? Does not the same Diversity hap-  
“ pen in a Mechanick and a Soldier? Since  
“ then in this Manner one produces ano-  
“ ther, I cannot think it possible for Man-  
“ hood to be lost among them. As then  
“ you are Men, behave yourselves like Men?  
“ Call upon the Name of *Christ*, that he  
“ would please to inspire you with Courage  
“ to defend your Liberties.

No sooner had he concluded his Speech,  
than the People raised such a Shout, that  
one would have thought them on a sudden  
inspired with Courage.

---

### C H A P. III.

*The Britains are again cruelly infest-  
ed by Guanius and Melga.*

**A**FTER this the Romans spirited up  
the timorous People as much as they  
could, and left them Patterns of their Arms.  
They likewise commanded Towers, hav-  
ing a Prospect to the Sea, to be placed at  
proper Distances all along the South Coast,  
where their Ships were, and from whence

they feared the Invasions of the *Barbarians*. But according to the Proverb, *It is easier to make a Hawk of a Kite, than a Scholar presently of a Ploughman*: All Learning to him, is but as a Pearl thrown before Swine. For no sooner had the *Romans* taken their Farewel of them, than the two Leaders, *Guanius* and *Melga*, issued forth from their Ships, in which they had fled over into *Ireland*, and with their Bands of *Scots*, *Picts*, *Norwegians*, *Dacians*, and others they had brought along with them, seized upon all *Albania* to the very Wall. Understanding likewise that the *Romans* were gone back never to return any more, they now in a more insolent Manner than before, begin their Devastations in the Island. Hereupon the Country Fellows were placed upon the Battlements of the Walls, where they sat Night and Day with quaking Hearts, not daring to stir from their Seats, and readier for Flight than making the least Resistance. In the mean Time the Enemies ceased not with their Hooks to pull them down headlong, and dash the wretched Herd to pieces upon the Ground; who gained at least this Advantage by their speedy Death, as to avoid the Sight of that most deplorable Calamity, which forthwith threatened their Relations and dearest Children. Such was the terrible Vengeance of God, for that most wicked Madness of *Maximian*, in draining the Kingdom

Kingdom of all its Forces; who had they been present would have repulsed any Nation that invaded them. An evident Proof of which they gave, by the vast Conquests they made abroad even in remote Countries; and also by maintaining their own Country in Peace, while they continued here. But thus it happens when a Kingdom is left to the Defence of Country Clowns. In short, quitting their high Wall and their Cities, the Country People are forced again to fly, and to suffer a more fatal Dispersion, a more furious Pursuit of the Enemy, a more cruel and more general Slaughter than ever they did before: And like Lambs before Wolves, so was that miserable People torn to Pieces by the merciless Barbarians. Again therefore the wretched Remainder send Letters to *Agitius*, a Man of great Power among the Romans, to this Effect. “To *Agitius* thrice Consul, the Groans of the Britains.” And after some few other Complaints they add. “The Sea drives us to the Barbarians, and the Barbarians drive us back to the Sea: Thus are we tossed to and fro between two Kinds of Death, being either Drowned or put to the Sword.” Notwithstanding this most moving Address procured them no Relief, and the Ambassadors returning back in great Heaviness, declared to their Countrymen, how they had suffered a Repulse.

## C H A P. IV.

## Guethelin desires Succours of Aldroen.

**H**EREUPON after a Consultation together, *Guethelin* Archbishop of *London*, passed over into lesser *Britain*, called then *Armorica* or *Letavia*, to desire Assistance of their Brethren. At that Time *Aldroen* reigned there, being the fourth King from *Conan*, to whom, as has been already related, *Maximian* had given that Kingdom. This Prince seeing a Prelate of so great Dignity arrived, received him with Honour, and enquired after the Occasion of his Coming. To whom *Guethelin*.

“ Your Majesty can be no Stranger to the  
“ Misery, we your *Britains* have suffered,  
“ (which may even demand your Tears,)  
“ since the Time that *Maximian* drained  
“ our Island of its Soldiers, and made a De-  
“ cree for their peopling the Kingdom you  
“ enjoy; and God grant you may long en-  
“ joy it in Peace. For against us the poor  
“ Remains of the *British* Race, rose all the  
“ People of the adjacent Islands, and made  
“ an utter Devastation in our Country,  
“ which then abounded with all kind of  
“ Riches;

“ Riches ; so that the People now are whol-  
 “ ly destitute of all manner of Sustenance,  
 “ but what they can get in Hunting. Nor  
 “ had we any left among us either of Power  
 “ or Knowledge of Military Affairs, to en-  
 “ counter the Enemy. For the *Romans* are  
 “ grown tired of us, and have absolutely  
 “ refused their Assistance. So that now  
 “ being deprived of all other Hope, we  
 “ come to implore your Clemency, that  
 “ you would furnish us with Forces, and  
 “ protect a Kingdom, which is of Right  
 “ your own, from the Incursions of Bar-  
 “ barians. For who but your self ought,  
 “ without your Consent, to wear the  
 “ Crown of *Constantine* and *Maximian*, since  
 “ the Right your Ancestors had to it is  
 “ now devolved upon you? Prepare then  
 “ your Fleet, and go with me : Behold I  
 “ deliver the Kingdom of *Britain* into your  
 “ Hands.

To this *Aldroen* made Answer ; “ There  
 “ was a Time formerly when I would not  
 “ have refused to accept of the Island of  
 “ *Britain*, if it had been offered me ; for I  
 “ do not think there was any where a  
 “ fruitfuller Country, while it enjoy’d Peace  
 “ and Tranquility. But now since the Ca-  
 “ lamities that have befallen it, it is become  
 “ of less Value, and odious both to me and  
 “ all other Princes. But above all Things  
 “ the

“ the Power of the *Romans* was so destructive  
“ to it, that no Body could enjoy any settled  
“ State or Authority in it, without Loss  
“ of Liberty, and bearing the Yoke of  
“ Slavery under them. And who would  
“ not prefer the Possession of a lesser Country  
“ with Liberty, to all the Riches of  
“ that Island under Servitude? The Kingdom  
“ that is now under my Subjection I  
“ enjoy with Honour, and without paying  
“ the least Homage to any Superior; so  
“ that I prefer it to all other Countries,  
“ since I can govern it without being controlled.  
“ Notwithstanding out of Respect  
“ to the Right that my Ancestors for many  
“ Generations have had to your Island, I  
“ deliver to you my Brother *Constantine*  
“ with two thousand Men, that with the  
“ good Providence of God he may free  
“ your Country from the Inroads of Barbarians,  
“ and obtain the Crown for himself.  
“ For I have a Brother called by that  
“ Name, who is an expert Soldier, and in  
“ all other Respects an accomplished Man.  
“ If you please to accept of him, I will not  
“ refuse to send him with you, together  
“ with the said Number of Men; for indeed  
“ a larger Number I do not mention  
“ to you, because I am daily threatened  
“ with Disturbance from the *Gauls*. ” He  
had scarce done speaking before the Archbishop  
returned him his Thanks, and when  
*Constantine*

*Constantine* was called in, broke out into these Expressions of Joy; "*Christ conquers; Christ commands; Christ reigns. Behold the King of desolate Britain! Be Christ only present, and behold our Defence, our Hope and Joy.*" In short, the Ships being got ready, the Men who were chosen out from all Parts of the Kingdom, were delivered to *Guethelin*.

## CHAP. V.

*Constantine being made King of Britain, leaves three Sons.*

WHEN they had made all necessary Preparations, they embarked, and arrived at the Port of *Totness*; and then without Delay assembled together the Youth that was left in the Island, and encountered the Enemy; over whom, by the Merit of the holy Prelate, they obtained the Victory. After this the *Britains*, before dispersed, flocked together from all Parts, and in a Council held at *Silcestre*, promoted *Constantine* to the Throne, and there performed the Ceremony of his Coronation. They also married him to a Lady, whom Archbishop *Guethelin* had educated, being descended from a noble Family of the *Romans*,  
and

and by whom the King had afterwards three Sons, named *Constans*, *Aurelius Ambrosius*, and *Uther Pendragon*. *Constans*, who was the eldest, he delivered to the Church of *Amphibalus* in *Winchester*, that he might there take upon him the Monastick Order. But the other two, viz. *Aurelius* and *Uther*, he committed to the Care of *Guethelin* for their Education. At last, after ten Years were expired, there came a certain *Pict*, who had entred himself in his Service, and under Pretence of holding some private Discourse with him, in a Nursery of young Trees where no Body was present, stabbed him with a Dagger.

## CH A P. VI.

### *Constans is by Vortegirn Crowned King of Britain.*

**U**PON the Death of *Constantine*, a Dissension arose among the Nobility, about a Successor to the Throne. Some were for setting up *Aurelius Ambrosius*; others *Uther Pendragon*; others again some other Persons of the Royal Family. At last when they could come to no Conclusion, *Vortegirn*, Consul of the *Gewissens*, who was himself very ambitious of the Crown, went  
to

to *Constans* the Monk, and thus addressed himself to him. " You see your Father is dead, and your Brothers on Account of their Age are incapable of the Government; neither do I see any of your Family besides yourself, whom the People ought to promote to the Kingdom. If you will therefore follow my Advice, and enlarge my Estate, I will dispose the People to favour your Advancement, and free you from that Habit, notwithstanding it be against the Rule of your Order." *Constans* overjoy'd at the Proposal, promised with an Oath, that upon these Terms he would grant him whatever he would desire. Then *Vortegirn* took him, and investing him in his Regal Habillments, conducted him to *London*, and made him King, though not with the free Consent of the People. Archbishop *Guthelin* was then dead, nor was there any other that durst perform the Ceremony of his Unction, on Account of his having quitted the Monastick Order. However this proved no Hindrance to his Coronation, the Ceremony of which *Vortegirn* himself performed instead of a Bishop.

## C H A P. VII.

*Vortegirn treacherously contrives to get King Constans assassinated.*

**C**ONSTANS being thus advanced, committed the whole Government of the Kingdom to *Vortegirn*, and surrendered himself up so entirely to his Counsels, that he did nothing without his Order. His own Incapacity for Government obliged him to it, as having learned other Things than State Affairs within his Cloister. *Vortegirn* became sensible of this, and therefore began to deliberate with himself what Course to take to obtain the Crown, of which he had been before extremely ambitious. He saw that now was his proper Time to gain his End easily, when the Kingdom was wholly intrusted to his Management; and *Constans*, who bore the Title of King, was no more than the Shadow of a Prince. For he was of a soft Temper, of no Judgment in Matters of Right, and not in the least feared, either by his own People, or by any neighbouring States. And as for his two Brothers, *Usher Pendragon*, and *Aurelius Ambrosius*, they were only Children in their Cradles, and therefore incapable of the Government. There was likewise this farther Misfortune; that all the ancients Per-

sons

sons of the Nobility was dead ; so that *Vortegirn* seemed to be the only Man surviving, that had Craft, Policy and Experience in Matters of State ; and all the rest in a manner Children, or raw Youths, that only inherited the Honours of their Parents and Relations that had been killed in the former Wars. *Vortegirn* finding a Concurrence of so many favourable Circumstances, contrived how he might easily and cunningly depose *Constans* the Monk, and immediately establish himself in his Place. But in order to it, he deferred doing any Thing against him, till he had first well established his Power and Interest in several Countries. He therefore petitioned to have in his own Custody the Kings Treasures, as also his fortified Cities ; pretending there was a Rumour, that the neighbouring Islanders designed an Invasion of the Kingdom. This being granted him, he placed his own Creatures in those Cities, to secure them for himself. Then having formed a Scheme how to execute his treasonable Designs, he went to the King, and represented to him the Necessity of augmenting the Number of his Domesticks, that he might more safely oppose the Invasion of the Enemy. " Have not I left all Things to your Disposal, said *Constans* : Do what you will as to that, so they be but faithful to me. " *Vortegirn* reply'd ; " I am informed the *Picts* are

“ are going to bring the *Dacians* and *Nor-*  
“ *wegians* in upon us, with a Design to give  
“ us very great Disturbance. I would  
“ therefore advise you, and in my Opinion  
“ it is the best Course you can take, that  
“ you maintain some *Picts* in your Court,  
“ who may do you good Service among  
“ those of that Nation. For if it is true  
“ that they are preparing to begin a Rebel-  
“ lion, you may employ them as Spies up-  
“ on their Countrymen in their Plots and  
“ Stratagems, so as easily to escape them.”

This was the dark Treason of a secret Enemy; for he did not recommend this, out of any Regard to the Safety of *Constans*, but because he knew the *Picts* to be a giddy People, and ready for all manner of Wick- edness; so that in a Fit of Drunkenness, or Passion, they might easily be incensed a- gainst the King, and make no Scruple to assassinate him. And such an Accident, when it should happen, would make an open Way for his Accession to the Throne, which he had so often had in View. Here- upon he dispatches away Messengers into *Scotland*, with an Invitation to a hundred *Pictish* Soldiers; whom accordingly he re- ceived into the Kings Household: And when admitted, he shew'd them more Re- spect than all the Rest of the Domesticks, by making them several Presents, and allowing them a luxurious Table; insomuch that

that they looked upon him as the King. So great was the Adoration they had for him, that they made Songs of him about the Streets, the Subject of which was, That *Vortegirn* deserved the Government, deserved the Sceptre of *Britain*; but that *Constans* was unworthy of it. This encouraged *Vortegirn* to shew them still more and more of his Bounty, the more firmly to engage them in his Interest; and when by these Practices he had made them entirely his Creatures, he took an Opportunity, when they were drunk, to tell them, that he was going to retire out of *Britain*, to see if he could get a better Estate; for the small Revenue he had then, he said, would not so much as enable him to maintain a Retinue of fifty Men. Then putting on a Look of Sadness, he withdrew to his own Apartment, and left them drinking in the Hall. The *Picts* at this Sight were in unexpressible Sorrow, as thinking what he had said was true, and murmuring said one to another;

“ Why do we suffer this Monk to live?  
 “ Why do not we kill him, that *Vortegirn*  
 “ may enjoy his Crown? For who so fit to  
 “ succeed as he? A Man so generous to  
 “ us, is worthy to Rule, and deserves all  
 “ Honour and Dignity.

## C H A P. VIII.

Aurelius Ambrosius, and Uther  
Pendragon flying Vortegirn, go  
to lesser Britain.

AFTER this, breaking into *Constantine's* Bed-chamber, they fell upon him and killed him, and carried his Head to *Vortegirn*. At the Sight of it, he putting on a mournful Countenance burst forth into Tears, tho' at the same Time he was almost transported with Joy. However he summoned together the Citizens of *London*, (for there the Fact was committed,) and commanded all the Assassins to be bound, and their Heads to be Cut off for this abominable Parricide. In the mean Time there were those who had a Suspicion, that this Piece of Villany was wholly the Contrivance of *Vortegirn*, and that the *Picts* were only his Instruments to execute it. Others again as positively asserted his Innocence. At last the Matter being left in Doubt, the Governors of the two Brothers, *Aurelius Ambrosius*, and *Uther Pendragon*, fled over with them into lesser *Britain*, for fear of being killed by *Vortegirn*. There they were kindly received by King *Budec*, who took Care to give them an Education suitable to their Royal Birth.

C H A P.

## C H A P. IX.

*Vortegirn makes himself King of Britain.*

**B**UT *Vortegirn* now seeing no Body to rival him in the Kingdom, placed the Crown on his own Head, and so gained the Preeminence over all the rest of the Princes. At last his Treason being discovered, the People of the adjacent Islands, whom the *Picts* had brought into *Albania*, made Insurrection against him. For the *Picts* were enraged on Account of their Fellow Soldiers, that had been put to Death for the Murder of *Constans*, and endeavoured to revenge that Injury upon him. *Vortegirn* therefore was daily in great Distress, and lost a considerable Part of his Army in the War with them. He had likewise no less Trouble from another Quarter, for fear of *Aurelius Ambrosius*, and his Brother *Uther Pendragon*, who, as we said just now, had fled on his Account into lesser *Britain*. For he had his Ears stung with a daily Rumour, that being now come up to Mens Estate, they had built a vast Fleet, with a Design to return back to the Kingdom; which was their undoubted Right.

## C H A P. X.

*Vortegirn takes the Saxons that were New-comers, into his Assistance.*

**I**N the mean Time arrived in the Parts of *Kent* three Brigandines, or long Gallies, fraught with armed Men, under the Command of two Brothers *Horsus* and *Hengist*. *Vortegirn* was then at *Dorobernia*, now *Canterbury*, which City he used often to visit; and being informed of the Arrival of some tall Strangers in large Ships, he ordered that they should be received peaceably, and conducted to his Presence. As soon as they were brought before him, he cast his Eyes upon the two Brothers, who excelled all the rest both in Nobility and Gracefulness of Person; and having taken a View of the whole Company, asked them of what Country they were, and what was the Occasion of their coming into his Kingdom. To whom *Hengist*, (whose Years and Wisdom intitled him to a Precedence,) in the Name of the rest, made the following Answer.

“ Most Noble King, *Saxony*, which is  
 “ one of the Countries of *Germany*, was  
 “ the

“ the Place of our Birth ; and the Occasion  
 “ of our coming, was to offer our Service  
 “ to you or some other Prince. For we  
 “ were driven out of our Native Country,  
 “ for no other Reason, but that the Custom  
 “ of the Kingdom required it. It is the  
 “ Custom of that Place, that when it  
 “ comes to be overstocked with People,  
 “ our Princes from all Provinces meet toge-  
 “ ther, and command all the Youth of the  
 “ Kingdom to assemble before them. Then  
 “ casting Lots, they make Choice of the  
 “ strongest and ablest of them, for to go  
 “ into Foreign Nations, to procure them-  
 “ selves a Subsistence, and free their Na-  
 “ tive Country from a superfluous Multi-  
 “ tude of People. Our Country there-  
 “ fore being of late actually overstocked,  
 “ our Princes met, and after Lots cast,  
 “ made Choice of the Youth which you  
 “ see in your Presence, and have obliged  
 “ us to obey the Custom that has been  
 “ established of old. And us two Brothers,  
 “ *Hengist* and *Horsus*, they made Generals  
 “ over them, out of Respect to our An-  
 “ cestors who enjoy’d the same Honour.  
 “ In Obedience therefore to the Laws so  
 “ long established, we put out to Sea,  
 “ and under the good Guidance of *Mercury*  
 “ have arrived in your Kingdom.

M 3

The

The King at the Name of *Mercury* looking earnestly upon them, asked them what Religion they professed. "We worship," reply'd *Hengist*, our Country Gods, *Saturn* and *Jupiter*, and the rest that govern the World; but especially *Mercury*, whom in our Language we call *Woden*, and to whom our Ancestors consecrated the fourth Day of the Week, still called after his Name *Wodensday*. Next to him we worship the most powerful Goddess *Frea*, to whom they also dedicated the sixth Day, which after her Name we call *Friday*." *Vortegirn* reply'd, "For your Credulity, or rather Incredulity, I am very much grieved, but as much rejoyce at your Arrival, which is brought about, whether by God, or by whomsoever else, very seasonably for me in the Straits I am under. For I am oppress'd by my Enemies on every Side, and if you will engage with me in my Wars, I will entertain you honourably in my Kingdom, and bestow upon you Lands and other Possessions." The Barbarians readily accepted of his Offer, and the Agreement between them being ratified, they resided in his Court. Presently after this the *Picts* issuing forth from *Albania*, made up a very great Army, and began to lay waste the Northern Parts of the Island. When *Vortegirn* had information of it, he assembled

assembled his Forces, and went to meet them beyond *Humber*. Upon their Engagement, the Battle proved very fierce on both Sides, though there was but little Occasion for the *Britains* to meddle in it; for the *Saxons* fought so bravely, that the Enemy, who used to be Victorious, they presently put to Flight.

## C H A P. XI.

*Hengist brings over great Numbers of Saxons into Britain. His crafty Petition to Vortegirn.*

**VORTEGIRN** therefore, as he owed the Victory to them, increased his Bounty to them, and gave their General *Hengist* large Possessions of Land in *Lindesia*, for the Subsistence of himself and his Fellow Soldiers. Hereupon *Hengist*, who was a Man of Experience and Subtlety, finding how much Interest he had with the King, addressed himself to him in this manner.

“ Sir, your Enemies give you Disturbance  
 “ from all Quarters, and few of your Sub-  
 “ jects love you. They all threaten you,  
 “ and say, they are going to bring over  
 “ *Aurelius Ambrosius* from *Armerica*, in or-  
 “ der to depose you, and make him King.

“ If you please, let us send to our Country  
“ to invite over some more Soldiers, that  
“ with our Forces increased we may be  
“ better able to oppose them. But there  
“ is one Thing I would desire of your Cle-  
“ mency, if I did not fear a Repulse.” *Vortegirn*  
made Answer; “ Send away then your  
“ Messengers to *Germany*, and invite over  
“ whom you please, and you shall have no  
“ Repulse from me in whatever you shall  
“ desire. ” *Hengist* with a low Bow re-  
turned him Thanks, and said; “ The Pos-  
“ sessions you have given me in Land and  
“ Houses, are very large, but you have  
“ not yet done me that Honour which  
“ becomes my Station and Birth; because  
“ among other Things, I should have had  
“ some Town or City granted me, that I  
“ might be intituled to a greater Esteem  
“ among the Nobility of your Kingdom.  
“ I ought to have been made a Consul or  
“ Prince, since my Ancestors enjoyed both  
“ those Dignities. ” “ It is not in my Power,  
“ reply’d *Vortegirn*, to do you so much Ho-  
“ nour, because you are Strangers and Pa-  
“ gans; neither am I yet acquainted with  
“ your Manners and Customs, so far as  
“ to set you upon a Level with my natural  
“ born Subjects. And indeed if I did  
“ esteem you as my Subjects, I should not  
“ be forward to give you what the Nob-  
“ lity of my Kingdom would dissuade me  
“ from. ”

“from.” “Give your Servant, said Hen-  
“gift, only so much Ground in the Place  
“you have assigned me, as I can encom-  
“pass with a Leathern Thong, for to build  
“a Fortress upon, for a Place of Retreat if  
“Occasion should require. For I am, have  
“been, and always will be faithful to you,  
“and pursue no other Design in the Re-  
“quest I make.” With these Words the  
King was prevailed upon to grant him his  
Petition; and ordered him to dispatch  
away Messengers into Germany, to invite  
the Men over speedily to his Assistance.  
Hengist immediately executed his Orders,  
and then took a Bulls Hide, and made but  
one Thong of the whole; with which he  
encompassed a rocky Place that he had  
carefully made Choice of, and within that  
Circuit began to build a Castle; which,  
when finished, took its Name from the  
Thong wherewith it had been measured.  
For it was afterwards called in the British  
Tongue *Kærcorrei*, in the Saxon *Thancastre*,  
that is *Thong-Castle*.



## O H A P. XII.

Vortegirn marries Rowen, the  
Daughter of Hengist.

**I**N the mean Time the Messengers returned from Germany, with eighteen Ships fraught with the best Soldiers they could chuse. They also brought along with them Rowen the Daughter of Hengist, one of the most accomplished Beauties of that Age. After their Arrival, Hengist invited the King to his House, to view his new Buildings, and the new Soldiers that were come over. The King readily accepted of his Invitation, and went, but privately, and highly commended the Magnificence of the Structure, and then entred the Men into his Service. Here he was entertained at a Royal Banquet; and when that was over, the young Lady came out of her Chamber bearing a Golden Cup full of Wine, with which she approached the King, and making a low Courtesy, said to him, *Loverd King Washt heil.* The King at the Sight of the Lady's Face, was on a sudden both surprized and inflamed with her Beauty; and calling to his Interpreter, asked him what she said, and what Answer he should make her. "She called you Royal Lord," said

" said the Interpreter, and offered to drink  
 " your Health; and your Answer to her  
 " must be *Drinc heil.*" *Vortegirn* accord-  
 ingly answered, *Drinc heil,* and bid her  
 drink: Which done, he took the Cup from  
 her Hand, kissed her, and then drunk him-  
 self. From that Time to this, it has been  
 the Custom in *Britain*, that he who drinks  
 to any one says, *Wacht heil,* and he that  
 pledges him, answers *Drinc heil.* *Vortegirn*  
 being now drunk with the Variety of Li-  
 quors, the Devil took this Opportunity to  
 enter into his Heart, and to make him in  
 Love with the Damsel, so that he became  
 Suitor to her Father for her. It was, I say,  
 by the Devils entring into his Heart, that  
 he who was a *Christian*, should fall in Love  
 with a Pagan. By this Instance, *Hengist*  
 being a prudent Man, discovered the Kings  
 Levity, and consulted with his Brother  
*Horsus*, and the other ancient Men present,  
 what to do in relation to the Kings Request.  
 They unanimously advised him to give him  
 his Daughter, and in Consideration of her,  
 to demand the Province of *Kent*. Accord-  
 ingly the Daughter was without Delay de-  
 livered to *Vortegirn*, and the Province of  
*Kent* to *Hengist*, without the Privy of *Go-  
 rangon*, who had the Government of it.  
 The King the same Night married the  
 Pagan Lady, and became extremely de-  
 lighted with her; by which he quickly  
 brought

brought upon himself the Hatred of the Nobility, and of his own Sons. For he had already three Sons, whose Names were *Vortimer, Katigern, and Pascentius.*

### C H A P. XIII.

*The Bishops, German and Lupus, restore the Christian Faith that had been corrupted in Britain. Octa and Ebissa are four Times routed by Vortimer.*

**A**T that Time came St. German Bishop of Auxerre, and Lupus Bishop of Troyes, to preach the Gospel to the Britains. For the Christian Faith had been corrupted among them, partly by the Pagans whom the King had brought into Society with them, partly by the Pelagian Heresy, with the Poison whereof they had been a long Time infected. But by the preaching of these Holy Men, the true Faith and Worship was again restored, the many Miracles they wrought giving Success to their Labours. *Gildas* has in his Treatise given an elegant Account of the many Miracles God wrought by them. The King being now, as we have said, possessed of the Lady,  
*Hengist.*

*Hengist* said to him; "As I am your Father,  
"I claim the Right of being your Coun-  
"seller: Do not therefore slight my Ad-  
"vice, since it is to my Countrymen that  
"you must owe the Conquest of all your  
"Enemies. Let us yet invite over my Son  
"*Otha*, and his Brother *Ebissa*, who are  
"brave Soldiers, and give them the Coun-  
"tries that are in the Northern Parts of  
"*Britain*, by the Wall, between *Deira*  
"and *Albania*. For they will hinder the  
"Inroads of the Barbarians, and so you  
"shall enjoy Peace on the other Side of  
"*Humber*." *Vortegirn* comply'd with his  
Request, and ordered them to invite over  
whomsoever they knew able to assist him.  
Immediately upon the Receipt of this Mes-  
sage, came *Otha*, *Ebissa*, and *Cherdich*, with  
three hundred Ships filled with Soldiers,  
who were all kindly received by *Vortegirn*,  
and had ample Presents made them. For  
by their Assistance he vanquished his Ene-  
mies, and in every Engagement proved  
Victorious. *Hengist* in the mean Time con-  
tinued to invite over more and more Ships,  
and to augment his Numbers daily. Which  
when the *Britains* had observed, they were  
afraid of being betray'd by them, and mo-  
ved the King to banish them out of his  
Coasts. For it was contrary to the Rule of  
the Gospel, that *Christians* should hold Fel-  
lowship, or have any Intercourse with Pa-  
gans.

gans. Besides that, the Number of those that were come over was now so great, that they were a Terror to his Subjects; and no Body could now know who was a Pagan, who a *Christian*, since Pagans married the Daughters and Kinwomen of *Christians*. These Things they represented to the King, and endeavoured to dissuade him from entertaining them, lest they might by some treacherous Conspiracy prove an Overmatch for the Native Inhabitants. But *Vortegirn*, who loved them above all other Nations on Account of his Wife, was deaf to their Advice. For this Reason the *Britains* quickly desert him, and unanimously set up *Vortimer* his Son for their King; who at their Instigation began to drive out the Barbarians, and to make dreadful Incursions upon them. Four Battles he fought with them, and was Victorious in all: The first upon the River *Derwent*; the second upon the Ford of *Epifrod*, where *Horsus* and *Catigern*, another Son of *Vortegirn*, met, and after a sharp Encounter killed each other; the third upon the Sea-Shore, where the Enemies fled shamefully to their Ships, and then betook themselves for Refuge to the Isle of *Thanet*. But *Vortimer* besieged them there, and daily distressed them with his Fleet. And when they were no longer able to bear the Assaults of the *Britains*, they sent King *Vortegirn*, who was present with them

in all those Wars, to his Son *Vortimer*, to desire Leave to depart, and return back safe to *Germany*. And while there was held a Conference upon this Subject, they in the mean Time went on board their long Gallies, and leaving their Wives and Children behind them, returned back to *Germany*.

#### CHAP. XIV.

#### *Vortimer's Kindness to his Soldiers at his Death.*

**VORTIMER** after this great Success, began to restore his Subjects to their Possessions that had been taken from them, and to shew them all Marks of his Affection and Esteem, and at the Instance of *St. German* to rebuild their Churches. But his Goodness quickly stirred up the Devils Enmity against him, who entering into the Heart of his Stepmother *Raven*, excited her to contrive his Death. For this Purpose she consulted with the Poisoners, and procured one that was intimate with him, whom she had corrupted with large and numerous Presents, to give him a poisonous Draught; so that this brave Soldier, as soon as he had taken it, was seized with a sudden Illness, that put him past all Hopes of Life.

Hereupon

Hereupon he forthwith ordered all his Men to come to him, and having shewn them how near he was his End, distributed among them all the Treasure his Predecessors had heaped up, and endeavoured to comfort them in their Sorrow and Lamentation for him, telling them, he was only going the Way of all Flesh. But those brave and warlike Youngmen, that used to attend him in all his Victories, he exhorted to persist courageously in the Defence of their Country against all hostile Invasion; and from an impulse of wonderful greatness of Mind, commanded a brazen Pyramid to be made, and placed in the Port where the *Saxons* used to land. He also ordered his Body when dead to be buried on the Top of it, that the Sight of his Tomb might fright back the Barbarians to *Germany*. For he said none of them would dare approach the Country, that should but get a Sight of his Tomb. Such was the admirable Bravery of this great Man, who as he had been a Terror to them while living, endeavoured to be no less so when dead. Notwithstanding after his Decease, the *Britains* had no regard to his Orders, but buried him at *London*.



C H A P.

## C H A P. XV.

*Hengist having most wickedly murdered the Princes of Britain, keeps Vortegirn Prisoner.*

**V**ORTEGIRN, after the Death of his Son, was again restored to the Kingdom, and at the Request of his Wife sent over Messengers into *Germany* to *Hengist*, with an Invitation to return into *Britain*, but privately and with a small Retinue, to prevent a Quarrel between the *Barbarians* and his Subjects. But *Hengist*, hearing that *Vortimer* was dead, raised an Army of no less than three hundred thousand Men, and fitting out a Fleet returned with them to *Britain*. When *Vortegirn* and the Nobility heard of the Arrival of so vast a Multitude, they were immoderately incensed, and after Consultation together, resolved to fight them, and drive them from their Coasts. *Hengist*, upon Information of their Design by Messengers sent from his Daughter, immediately entred into Deliberation what Course to pursue against them. After several Stratagems had been considered, what he judged most feasible, was to impose upon the Nation by making a shew of Peace. In order to this he sent Ambassadors to the  
N King,

King, to declare to him, that he had not brought with him so great a Number of Men, with an Intention either to stay with him, or to offer any Violence to the Country. But the Reason why he brought them, was because he thought *Vortimer* was yet living, and that he should have Occasion for them against him, in Case of an Assault. But now since he no longer doubted of his being dead, he submitted himself and his People to the Disposal of *Vortegirn*; so that he might retain as many of them as he should think fit, and whom he rejected, *Hengist* would allow to return back without Delay to *Germany*. And if these Terms pleased *Vortegirn*, then he desired he would appoint a Time and Place for their Meeting, and having Matters adjusted according to his Pleasure. When these Things were represented to the King, he was mightily pleased, as being very unwilling to part with *Hengist*; and at last ordered his Subjects and the *Saxons* to meet upon the Calends of *May*, which were now very near, at the Monastery of *Ambrus*, for the settling of the Matters above mentioned. The Appointment being agreed to on both Sides, *Hengist* with a new Design of Villany in his Head, ordered his Soldiers to carry every one of them a long Dagger under their Garments; and while the Conference should be held with the *Britains*, who would have no Suspicion

Suspicion of them, he would give them this Word of Command, *Nemet oure Saxas* ; at which Moment they were all to be ready to seize boldly every one his next Man, and with his drawn Dagger stab him. Accordingly at the Time and Place appointed they all met, and began to treat of Peace ; and when a fit Opportunity for executing his Villany serv'd, *Hengist* cry'd out, *Nemet oure Saxas*, and the same Instant seized *Vortegirn*, and held him by his Cloak. The *Saxons*, upon the Signal given, drew out their Daggers, and falling upon the Princes, that little suspected any such Design, assassinated them to the Number of four hundred and sixty of the Barons and Consuls : To whose Bodies *St. Eldad* afterwards gave *Christian* Burial, not far from *Kaercaradane*, now *Salisbury*, in a Burying-Place by the Monastery of *Ambrius* the Abbot, who was the Founder of it. For they all came without Arms, as having no Thoughts of any Thing but treating of Peace ; which gave the others that came upon a villanous Design a fairer Opportunity of destroying them. Notwithstanding the Pagans did not escape unpunished while they acted this Wickedness ; a great Number of them being killed during this Massacre of their Enemies. For the *Britains* taking up Clubs and Stones from the Ground, resolutely defended themselves, and did good Execution upon the Traitors.

## C H A P. XVI.

*Eldols valiant Exploit. Hengift forces Vortegirn to yield up the strongest Fortifications in Britain, in Consideration of his Release.*

T H E R E was present one *Eldol* Consul of *Glocester*, who at the sight of this Treachery, took up a Stake he happened to find, and made that his Defence. Every Blow he gave carry'd Death along with it; and by breaking either the Head, Arms, Shoulders or Legs of a great many, he struck no small Terror into the Traitors, nor moved from the Spot, before he had killed with that Weapon seventy Men. But being no longer able to stand his Ground against such Numbers, he made his Escape from them, and retired to his own City. Many fell on both Sides, but the *Saxons* got the Victory, because the *Britains* having no Suspicion of Treachery, came unarmed, and therefore made a weaker Defence. After the Commission of this detestable Villany, the *Saxons* would not kill *Vortegirn*, but having threatned him with Death and bound him, demanded his Cities and fortified Places in Consideration of their granting him his Life. He, to secure himself, deny'd them nothing they

they asked ; and when they had made him confirm his Grants with an Oath, they released him from his Chains, and then marched first of all to *London*, which they took, as they did afterwards *Tork*, *Lincoln*, and *Winchester* ; wasting the Countries thro' which they passed, and destroying the People, as Wolves do Sheep when left by their Shepherds. When *Vortegirn* had seen the Desolation they made, he retired into the Parts of *Cambria*, as not knowing what to do against so barbarous a People.

---

C H A P. XVII.

*Vortegirn, after Consultation with Magicians, orders a Youth to be brought that never had a Father.*

AT last, he had Recourse to Magicians for their Advice, and commanded them to tell him what Course to take. They advised him to build a very strong Tower for his own Safety, since he had lost all his other fortified Places. Accordingly he made a Progress about the Country, to find out a convenient Situation, and came at last to Mount *Erix*, where he assembled Workmen from several Countries, and ordered them to build the Tower. The Builders

therefore began to lay the Foundation, but whatever they did one Day, the Earth swallowed up the next, so as to leave no Appearance of their Work. *Vortegirn* being informed of this, again consulted with his Magicians concerning the Cause of it; who told him that he must find out a Youth that never had a Father, and kill him, and then sprinkle the Stones and Cement with his Blood; for by that Means, they said, he would have a firm Foundation. Hereupon Messengers are forthwith dispatched away over all the Provinces, to enquire out such a Man. In their Travels they came to a City, called afterwards *Kaermerdin*, where they saw some young Men, playing before the Gate, and went up to them: But being weary with their Journey, they sat down in the Ring, to see if they could meet with what they were in Quest of. As it began to be late in the Day, there happened on a sudden a Quarrel between two of the young Men, whose Names were *Merlin* and *Dabutiús*. In the Dispute, *Dabutiús* said to *Merlin*:  
“ You Fool, do you presume to quarrel  
“ with me? Is there any equality in our  
“ Birth? I am both by my Father and Mothers Side, descended of Royal Race. As  
“ for you, no Body knows what you are;  
“ for you never had a Father. ” At that Word the Messengers looked earnestly upon *Merlin*, and asked the By-standers who he was.

was. They told him, it was not known who was his Father; but that his Mother was Daughter to the King of *Demetia*, and and that she lived in *St. Peter's Church* among the Nuns of that City.

C H A P. XVIII.

*Vortegirn enquires of Merlins Mother concerning her Conception of him.*

THE Messengers upon this hastened to the Governor of the City, and ordered him in the Kings Name, to send *Merlin* and his Mother to the King. As soon as the Governor understood the occasion of their Message, he readily obeyed the Order, and sent them to *Vortegirn* to compleat his Design. When they were introduced into the Kings Presence, he received the Mother in a very respectful Manner, on Account of her noble Birth; and then began to enquire of her, by what Man she had conceived. “ My  
“ Sovereign Lord, said she, by the Life of  
“ your Soul and mine, I know no Body  
“ that begot him of me. Only this I know,  
“ that as I was one Time with my Com-  
“ panions in our Chambers, there appear-  
“ ed to me a Person in the Shape of a most  
“ beautiful young Man, who often and most

“eagerly embraced me in his Arms, and  
“kissed me; and when he had stay’d a  
“little Time, he suddenly vanished out of  
“my Sight. But many Times after this he  
“would be talking with me when I sat alone,  
“without making any visible Appearance.  
“When he had a long Time haunted me  
“in this manner, he at last laid with  
“me several Times in Shape of a Man,  
“and left me with Child. And I do af-  
“firm to you, my Sovereign Lord, that  
“excepting that young Man, I know no  
“Body that begot him of me.” The  
King full of Admiration at this Account,  
ordered *Maugantius* to be called, that he  
might satisfy him as to the Possibility of  
what the Woman had related. *Maugan-*  
*tius* being introduced, and having heard  
the whole Matter repeated to him, said  
to *Vortegirn*; “In the Books of our Phi-  
“losophers, and in a great many Histo-  
“ries, I have found that several Men  
“have had the like Original. For, as  
“*Apuleius* informs us in his Book concern-  
“ing the Demon of *Socrates*, between the  
“Moon and the Earth inhabit those Spi-  
“rits, which we call *Incubuses*. These are  
“of the Nature partly of Men, and part-  
“ly of Angels, and whenever they please,  
“assume human Shapes, and lie with Wo-  
“men. Perhaps one of them appeared to  
“this Woman, and begot that young Man  
“of her.

C H A P.

## C H A P. XIX.

*Merlin's Speech to the Kings Magicians, and Advice about the building of the Tower.*

**M**ERLIN in the mean Time was attentive to all that had passed, and then approached the King, and said to him; "For what Reason am I and my Mother introduced into your Presence?" "My Magicians, answered *Vortegirn*, advised me to inquire out a Man that had no Father, with whose Blood my Building is to be sprinkled, in order to make it stand." Order your Magicians, said *Merlin*, to come before me, and I will convict them of a Lye." The King was surprized at his Words, and presently ordered the Magicians to come, and sit down before *Merlin*, who spoke to them after this manner. "Because you are ignorant what it is that hinders the Foundation of the Tower, you have recommended the shedding of my Blood for Cement to it, as if that would presently make it stand. But tell me now, what is there under the Foundation? For something there is that will not suffer it to stand." The Magicians at this began to be afraid, and made him no Answer. Then said

said *Merlin*, who was also called *Ambrose* ;  
“ I intreat your Majesty would command  
“ your Workmen to dig into the Ground,  
“ and you will find a Pond which causes  
“ the Foundation to sink. ” This accordingly was done, and then presently they found a Pond deep under Ground, which had made it give way. *Merlin* after this went again to the Magicians, and said,  
“ Tell me ye, false Sycophants, what is  
“ there under the Pond. ” But they were silent. Then said he again to the King ;  
“ Command the Pond to be drained, and  
“ at the Bottom you will see two hollow  
“ Stones, and in them two Dragons asleep. ”  
The King made no Scruple of believing him, since he had found true what he said of the Pond, and therefore ordered it to be drained. Which done, he found as *Merlin* had said ; and now was possessed with the greatest Admiration of him. Nor were the rest that were present less amazed at his Wisdom, thinking it to be no less than Divine Inspiration.



T H E



T H E

# British History.

The Seventh Book,

Which is concerning the

Prophecies of *Merlin*.

## C H A P. I.

Jeffrey of Monmouth's *Preface to*  
*Merlins Prophecy.*



Had not got so far as this Place of the *History*, when the Subject of publick Discourse happening to be concerning *Merlin*, I was obliged to publish his Prophecies at the Request of my Acquaintance, but especially of *Alexander Bishop of Lincoln*, a Prelate of the

the greatest Piety and Wisdom. There was not any Person either among the Clergy or Laity, that was attended with such a Train of Knights and Noblemen, whom his settled Piety and great Munificence engaged in his Service. Out of a Desire therefore to gratify him, I translated these Prophecies, and sent them to him with the following Letter.

## CHAP. II.

### Jeffrey's Letter to Alexander Bishop of Lincoln.

“THE Regard I owe to your great  
“Worth, most Noble Prelate,  
“has obliged me to undertake the Trans-  
“lation of *Merlin's Prophecies* out of *British*  
“into *Latin*, before I had made an End of  
“the *History*, which I had begun concern-  
“ing the Acts of the *British Kings*. For  
“my Design was to have finished that first,  
“and afterwards to have explained this  
“Work; lest by having both upon my  
“Hands at once, I should be less capable  
“of attending with any Exactness to either.  
“Notwithstanding since the Deference that  
“is paid to your penetrating Judgment,  
“will I know skreen me from Censure:  
“I have

“ I have therefore employ’d my rude Pen,  
“ and in a vulgar Style present you with a  
“ Translation out of a Language, with  
“ which you are unacquainted. At the  
“ same Time, I cannot but admire at your  
“ recommending this Matter to one of my  
“ low Genius, when you might have obli-  
“ ged so many Men of greater Learning,  
“ and a richer Vein of Wit, to have under-  
“ taken it ; who with their sublime Strains  
“ would have much more agreeably enter-  
“ tained you. Besides, without any Dis-  
“ paragement to all the Philosophers in  
“ *Britain*, I must take the Liberty to say,  
“ that you yourself, if the Business of  
“ your high Station would give you Lei-  
“ sure, are capable of furnishing us with  
“ loftier Productions of this Kind, than  
“ any Man living. However, since it was  
“ your Pleasure, that *Jeffrey of Monmouth*  
“ should be employ’d in this Prophecy,  
“ he hopes you will favourably accept of  
“ his Performance, and vouchsafe to give  
“ a finer Turn to whatever you shall find  
“ unpolished, or otherwise faulty in it.



## C H A P. III.

*The Prophecy of MERLIN.*

**A**S *Vortegirn*, King of the *Britains*, was sitting upon the Bank of the drained Pond, the two Dragons, one of which was white, the other red, came forth, and approaching one another, began a terrible Fight, and cast forth Fire with their Breath. But the white Dragon had the Advantage, and made the other fly to the End of the Lake. And he for Grief at his Flight, renewed the Assault upon his Pursuer, and forced him to retire. After this Battle of the Dragons, the King commanded *Ambrose Merlin* to tell him what it portended. Upon which he bursting out into Tears, delivered what his Prophetical Spirit suggested to him, as follows.

“ **W**O to the red Dragon, for his Banishment hasteneth. His lurking  
“ Holes shall be seized by the white Dragon;  
“ which signifies the *Saxons* whom you invited over: But the red denotes the *British*  
“ Nation, which shall be oppressed by the  
“ white. Therefore shall its Mountains  
“ be levelled as the Valleys, and the Rivers  
“ of the Valleys shall run with Blood. The  
“ Exercise of Religion shall be destroyed,  
“ and

“ and Churches lay open to Ruin. At last  
“ the oppressed shall prevail, and oppose  
“ the Cruelty of Foreigners. For a Boar  
“ of *Cornwal* shall give his Assistance, and  
“ trample their Necks under his Feet. The  
“ Islands of the Ocean shall be subject to  
“ his Power, and he shall possess the Forests  
“ of *Gaul*. The House of *Romulus* shall  
“ dread his Courage; and his End shall be  
“ doubtful. He shall be celebrated in the  
“ Mouths of the People; and his Exploits  
“ shall be Food to those that relate them.  
“ Six of his Posterity shall sway the Sceptre,  
“ but after them shall arise a *German* Worm.  
“ He shall be advanced by a Sea-Wolf,  
“ whom the Woods of *Africa* shall accom-  
“ pany. Religion shall be again abolished,  
“ and there shall be a Translation of the  
“ Metropolitan Sees. The Dignity of *Lon-*  
“ *don* shall adorn *Dorobernia*, and the seventh  
“ Pastor of *Tork* shall be resorted to in the  
“ Kingdom of *Armorica*. *Menevia* shall put  
“ on the Pall of the City of *Legions*, and a  
“ Preacher of *Ireland* shall be dumb on Ac-  
“ count of an Infant growing in the Womb.  
“ It shall rain a Shower of Blood, and a  
“ raging Famine shall afflict Mankind.  
“ When these Things happen, the red one  
“ shall be grieved; but when his Fatigue is  
“ over shall grow strong. Then shall Mis-  
“ fortunes hasten upon the white one, and  
“ the Buildings of his Gardens shall be pul-  
“ led

“ led down. Seven that sway the Sceptre  
“ shall be killed, one of whom shall be-  
“ come a Saint. The Bellies of Mothers  
“ shall be ript up, and Infants be abortive.  
“ There shall be a most grievous Punish-  
“ ment of Men, that the Natives may be  
“ restored. He that shall do these Things  
“ shall put on the brazen Man, and upon  
“ a brazen Horse shall a long Time guard  
“ the Gates of *London*. After this shall the  
“ red Dragon return to his proper Man-  
“ ners, and turn his Rage upon himself.  
“ Therefore shall the Revenge of the Thun-  
“ derer shew itself, for every Field shall  
“ disappoint the Husbandmen. Mortality  
“ shall snatch away the People, and make  
“ a Desolation over all Countries. The  
“ Remainder shall quit their native Soil,  
“ and make foreign Plantations. A blessed  
“ King shall prepare a Fleet, and shall be  
“ reckoned the twelfth in the Court among  
“ the Saints. There shall be a miserable  
“ Desolation of the Kingdom, and the  
“ Floors of Harvests shall return to the  
“ fruitful Forests. The white Dragon shall  
“ rise again, and invite over a Daughter of  
“ *Germany*. Our Gardens shall be again  
“ replenished with foreign Seed, and the  
“ red one shall pine away at the End of  
“ the Pond. After that shall the *German*  
“ Worm be Crowned, and the brazen  
“ Prince buried. He has his Bounds af-  
“ signed

“ signed him, which he shall not be able to  
“ pass. For a hundred and fifty Years he  
“ shall continue in Trouble and Subjection,  
“ but shall bear Sway three hundred. Then  
“ shall the North-wind rise against him,  
“ and shall snatch away the Flowers which  
“ the West-wind produced. There shall  
“ be Gilding in the Temples, nor shall the  
“ Edge of the Sword cease. The *German*  
“ Dragon shall hardly get to his Holes, be-  
“ cause the Revenge of his Treason shall  
“ overtake him. At last he shall flourish  
“ for a little Time, but the Decimation of  
“ *Neustria* shall hurt him. For a People  
“ in Wood and in Iron Coats shall come,  
“ and revenge upon him his Wickedness.  
“ They shall restore the ancient Inhabitants  
“ to their Dwellings, and there shall be an  
“ open Destruction of Foreigners. The  
“ Seed of the white Dragon shall be swept  
“ out of our Gardens, and the Remainder  
“ of his Generation shall be decimated.  
“ They shall bear the Yoke of Slavery, and  
“ wound their Mother with Spades and  
“ Ploughs. After this shall succeed two  
“ Dragons, whereof one shall be killed  
“ with the Sting of Envy, but the other  
“ shall return under the Shadow of a Name.  
“ Then shall succeed a Lion of Justice, at  
“ whose Roar the *Gallican* Towers and the  
“ Island Dragons shall tremble. In those  
“ Days Gold shall be squeezed from the

“ Lilly and the Nettle, and Silver shall flow  
“ from the Hoofs of bellowing Cattle. The  
“ Frizled shall put on various Fleeces, and  
“ the outward Habit denote the inward  
“ Parts. The Feet of Barkers shall be cut  
“ off: Wild Beasts shall enjoy Peace:  
“ Mankind shall be grieved at their Pun-  
“ nishment: The Form of Commerce shall  
“ be divided: The half shall be round.  
“ The Ravenousness of Kites shall be de-  
“ stroyed, and the Teeth of Wolves blunted.  
“ The Lions Whelps shall be transformed  
“ into Sea-Fishes; and an Eagle shall build  
“ her Nest upon Mount *Aravius*. *Venedotia*  
“ shall grow red with Mothers Blood, and  
“ the House of *Corineus* kill six Brethren.  
“ The Island shall be wet with Night-  
“ Tears; so that all shall be provoked to  
“ all Things. Wo to thee, *Neustria*, be-  
“ cause the Lions Brain shall be poured up-  
“ on Thee; and he shall be banished with  
“ shattered Limbs from his Native Soil.  
“ Posterity shall endeavour to fly above the  
“ highest Places; but the Favour of New-  
“ comers shall be exalted. Piety shall hurt  
“ the Possessor of Things got by Impiety,  
“ till he shall have put on his Father.  
“ Therefore being armed with the Teeth  
“ of a Boar, he shall ascend above the Tops  
“ of Mountains, and the Shadow of him  
“ that wears a Helmet. *Albania* shall be  
“ enraged, and assembling her Neighbours,  
“ shall

“ shall be employ’d in shedding Blood.  
“ There shall be put into her Jaws a Bridle  
“ that shall be made in the Coast of *Armo-*  
“ *rica*. The Eagle of the broken Cove-  
“ nant shall gild it over, and rejoyce in her  
“ third Nest. The roaring Whelps shall  
“ watch, and leaving the Woods, shall  
“ hunt within the Walls of Cities. They  
“ shall make no small Slaughter of those  
“ that oppose them, and shall cut off the  
“ Tongues of Bulls. They shall load the  
“ Necks of roaring Lions with Chains,  
“ and restore the Times of their Ancestors.  
“ Then from the first to the fourth,  
“ from the fourth to the third, from the  
“ third to the second, the Thumb shall roll  
“ in Oil. The sixth shall overturn the  
“ Walls of *Ireland*, and change the Woods  
“ into a Plain. He shall reduce several  
“ Parts to one, and be Crowned with the  
“ Head of a Lion. His Beginning shall lay  
“ open to wandring Affection, but his End  
“ shall carry him up to the Blessed above.  
“ For he shall restore the Seats of Saints in  
“ their Countries, and settle Pastors in con-  
“ venient Places. Two Cities he shall in-  
“ vest with two Palls, and shall bestow  
“ Virgin Presents upon Virgins. He shall  
“ merit by this the Favour of the Thun-  
“ derer, and shall be placed among the  
“ Saints. From him shall proceed a Lynx  
“ penetrating all Things, who shall be bent

“ upon the Ruin of his own Nation : For  
“ through him *Neustria* shall lose both  
“ Islands, and be deprived of its ancient  
“ Dignity. Then shall the Natives return  
“ back to the Island ; for there shall arise a  
“ Dissension among Foreigners. Also a  
“ hoary Old-man, sitting upon a Snow-  
“ white Horse, shall turn the Course of the  
“ River *Periron*, and shall measure out a  
“ Mill upon it with a white Rod. *Cad-*  
“ *wallader* shall call upon *Conan*, and take  
“ *Albania* into Alliance. Then shall there  
“ be a Slaughter of Foreigners ; then shall  
“ the Rivers run with Blood. Then shall  
“ break forth the Fountains of *Armorica*,  
“ and they shall be Crowned with the Di-  
“ adem of *Brutus*. *Cambria* shall be filled  
“ with Joy ; and the Oaks of *Cornwal* shall  
“ flourish. The Island shall be called by  
“ the Name of *Brutus* : And the Name gi-  
“ ven it by Foreigners shall be abolished.  
“ From *Conan* shall proceed a Warlike Boar,  
“ that shall exercise the Sharpness of his  
“ Tusks within the *Gallican* Woods. For  
“ he shall cut down all the larger Oaks, and  
“ shall be a Defence to the smaller. The  
“ *Arabians* and *Africans* shall dread him ;  
“ for he shall pursue his furious Course to  
“ the farther Part of *Spain*. There shall  
“ succeed the Goat of the *Venerable Castle*,  
“ having golden Horns and a silver Beard ;  
“ who shall breath such a Cloud out of his  
“ Nostrils,

“ Nostrils, as shall darken the whole Sur-  
 “ face of the Island. There shall be Peace  
 “ in his Time; and Corn shall abound by  
 “ Reason of the Fruitfulness of the Soil.  
 “ Women shall become Serpents in their  
 “ Gate, and all their Motions shall be full  
 “ of Pride. The Camp of *Venus* shall be  
 “ restored; nor shall the Arrows of *Cupid*  
 “ cease to wound. The Fountain of a Ri-  
 “ ver shall be turned into Blood; and two  
 “ Kings shall fight a Duel at *Stafford* for a  
 “ Lioness. Luxury shall overspread the  
 “ whole Ground; and Fornication not cease  
 “ to debauch Mankind. All these Things  
 “ shall three Ages see; till the buried Kings  
 “ shall be exposed to publick View in the  
 “ City of *London*. Famine shall again re-  
 “ turn; Mortality shall return; and the In-  
 “ habitants shall grieve for the Destruction  
 “ of their Cities. Then shall come the  
 “ Boar of Commerce, who shall recall the  
 “ scattered Flocks to the Pasture they had  
 “ lost. His Breast shall be Food to the  
 “ Hungry, and his Tongue Drink to the  
 “ Thirsty. Out of his Mouth shall flow  
 “ Rivers, that shall water the parched  
 “ Jaws of Men. After this shall be pro-  
 “ duced a Tree upon the Tower of *London*,  
 “ which having no more than three Branch-  
 “ es, shall overshadow the Surface of the  
 “ whole Island with the Breadth of its  
 “ Leaves. Its Adversary the North-wind

“ shall come upon it, and with its noxious  
“ Blast shall snatch away the third Branch;  
“ but the two remaining ones shall possess  
“ its Place, till they shall destroy one ano-  
“ ther by the Multitude of their Leaves:  
“ And then shall it obtain the Place of those  
“ two, and shall give Sustenance to Birds  
“ of Foreign Nations. It shall be esteemed  
“ hurtful to Native Fowls; for they shall  
“ not be able to fly freely for Fear of its  
“ Shadow. There shall succeed the Aſs  
“ of Wickedneſs, ſwift againſt the Gold-  
“ ſmiths; but ſlow againſt the Ravenouſ-  
“ neſs of Wolves. In thoſe Days the Oaks  
“ of the Foreſts ſhall burn, and Acorns  
“ grow upon the Branches of Teal Trees.  
“ The *Severn* Sea ſhall diſcharge itſelf  
“ through ſeven Mouths, and the River  
“ *Uſke* burn ſeven Months. Fiſhes ſhall  
“ die with the Heat thereof; and of them  
“ ſhall be engendred Serpents. The Baths  
“ of *Badon* ſhall grow cold, and their ſalu-  
“ brious Waters engender Death. *London*  
“ ſhall mourn for the Death of twenty  
“ thouſand; and the River *Thames* ſhall  
“ be turned into Blood. The Monks in  
“ their Cowls ſhall be forced to marry,  
“ and their Cry ſhall be heard upon the  
“ Mountains of the *Alps*.

C H A P.

## C H A P. IV.

*The Continuation of the Propbesy.*

“ **T**HREE Springs shall break forth  
“ in the City of *Winchester*, whose  
“ Rivulets shall divide the Island into three  
“ Parts. Whoever shall drink of the first,  
“ shall enjoy long Life ; nor shall ever be  
“ afflicted with Sickness. He that shall  
“ drink of the second, shall die of Hunger ;  
“ and Paleness and Horror shall sit in his  
“ Countenance. He that shall drink of the  
“ third, shall be surprized with sudden  
“ Death, neither shall his Body be capable  
“ of Burial. Those that are willing to  
“ escape so great a Surfeit, will endeavour  
“ to hide it with several Coverings : But  
“ whatever bulk shall be laid upon it, shall  
“ receive the Form of another Body. For  
“ Earth shall be turned into Stones ; Stones  
“ into Water ; Wood into Ashes ; Ashes  
“ into Water, if cast over it. Also a Dam-  
“ sel shall be sent from the City of the Fo-  
“ rest of *Canute*, to administer a Cure ; who  
“ after she shall have practised all her Arts,  
“ shall dry up the noxious Fountains only  
“ with her Breath. Afterwards as soon as  
“ she shall have refreshed herself with the  
“ wholesome Liquor, she shall bear in her

“ right Hand the Wood of *Caledon*, and in  
“ her left the Forts of the Walls of *London*.  
“ Wherever she shall go, she shall make  
“ sulphureous Steps, which will smoke with  
“ a double Flame. That Smoke shall rouse  
“ up the City of *Ruteni*, and shall make  
“ Food for the Inhabitants of the Deep.  
“ She shall overflow with rueful Tears, and  
“ shall fill the Island with her dreadful cry.  
“ She shall be killed by a Hart with ten  
“ Branches, four of which shall bear golden  
“ Diadems : But the other six shall be turn-  
“ ed into Busses Horns, whose hideous  
“ sound shall astonish the three Islands of  
“ *Britain*. The *Daneian* Wood shall be stir-  
“ red up, and breaking forth into a human  
“ Voice, shall cry ; Come, O *Cambria*, and join  
“ *Cornwal* to thy Side, and say to *Winchester*,  
“ the Earth shall swallow the up. Translate  
“ the Seat of thy Pastor to the Place where  
“ Ships come to Harbour, and the rest of  
“ the Members will follow the Head. For  
“ the Day hasteneth, in which thy Citizens  
“ shall perish on Account of the Guilt of  
“ Perjury. The whiteness of Wool has been  
“ hurtful to Thee, and the variety of its  
“ Tinctures. Wo to the perjured Nation,  
“ for whose Sake the renowned City shall  
“ come to Ruin. The Ships shall rejoyce  
“ at so great an Augmentation, and one  
“ shall be made out of two. It shall be  
“ rebuilt by *Eric* loaden with Apples, to  
“ the

“ the smell whereof the Birds of several  
“ Woods shall flock together. He shall  
“ add to it a vast Palace, and Wall it round  
“ with six hundred Towers. Therefore  
“ shall *London* envy it, and triply encrease  
“ her Walls. The River *Thames* shall en-  
“ compass it round, and the Fame of the  
“ Work shall pass beyond the *Alps*. *Eric*  
“ shall hide his Apples within it, and shall  
“ make subterraneous Passages. At that  
“ Time shall the Stones speak, and the Sea  
“ towards the *Gallick* Coast be contracted  
“ into a narrow Space. On each Bank shall  
“ one Man hear another, and the Soil of  
“ the Island shall be enlarged. The Se-  
“ crets of the Deep shall be revealed, and  
“ *Gaul* shall tremble for Fear. After these  
“ Things shall come forth a Hern from the  
“ Forest of *Calaterium*, which shall fly round  
“ the Island for two Years together. With  
“ her nocturnal Cry she shall call together  
“ the winged Kind, and assemble to her  
“ all sorts of Fowls. They shall invade  
“ the Tillage of Husbandmen, and devour  
“ all the Grain of the Harvests. Then shall  
“ follow a Famine upon the People, and a  
“ grievous Mortality upon the Famine.  
“ But when this Calamity shall be over, a  
“ detestable Bird shall go to the Valley of  
“ *Galabes*, and shall raise it to be a high Moun-  
“ tain. Upon the Top thereof it shall also  
“ plant an Oak, and build its Nest in its  
“ Branches.

“ Branches. Three Eggs shall be produced  
 “ in the Nest, from whence shall come forth  
 “ a Fox, a Wolf, and a Bear. The Fox  
 “ shall devour her Mother, and bear the  
 “ Head of an Ass. In this monstrous Form  
 “ shall she fright her Brothers, and make  
 “ them fly into *Neustria*. But they shall  
 “ stir up the tusky Boar, and returning  
 “ in a Fleet shall encounter with the Fox ;  
 “ who at the Beginning of the Fight shall  
 “ feign her self dead, and move the Boar to  
 “ Compassion. Then shall the Boar ap-  
 “ proach her Carcase, and standing over  
 “ her, shall breath upon her Face and Eyes.  
 “ But she not forgetting her Cunning, shall  
 “ bite his left Foot, and pluck it off from his  
 “ Body. Then shall she leap upon him,  
 “ and snatch away his right Ear and Tail,  
 “ and hide herself in the Caverns of the  
 “ Mountains. Therefore shall the deluded  
 “ Boar require the Wolf and Bear to re-  
 “ store him his Members ; who as soon  
 “ as they shall enter into the Cause, shall  
 “ promise two Feet of the Fox, together  
 “ with the Ear and Tail, and of these they  
 “ shall make up the Members of a Hog.  
 “ With this he shall be satisfied, and ex-  
 “ pect the promised Restitution. In the  
 “ mean Time shall the Fox descend from  
 “ the Mountains, and change herself into  
 “ a Wolf, and under Pretence of holding a  
 “ Conference with the Boar, she shall go  
 “ to

“ to him, and craftily devour him. After  
“ that she shall transform herself into a  
“ Boar, and feigning a Loss of some Mem-  
“ bers, shall wait for her Brothers; but as  
“ soon as they are come, she shall sudden-  
“ ly kill them with her Tusks, and shall  
“ be crowned with the Head of a Lion.  
“ In her Days shall a Serpent be brought  
“ forth, which shall be a Destroyer of Man-  
“ kind. With its Length it shall encom-  
“ pass *London*, and devour all that pass by  
“ it. The Mountain Ox shall take the Head  
“ of a Wolf, and whiten his Teeth in the  
“ *Severn*. He shall gather to him the Flocks  
“ of *Albania* and *Cambria*, which shall drink  
“ the River *Thames* dry. The Ass shall call  
“ the Goat with the long Beard, and shall  
“ borrow his Shape. Therefore shall the  
“ Mountain Ox be incensed, and having  
“ called the Wolf, shall become a horned  
“ Bull against them. In the Exercise of  
“ his Cruelty he shall devour their Flesh  
“ and Bones, but shall be burned upon the  
“ Top of *Urian*. The Ashes of his Funeral-  
“ pile shall be turned into Swans, that shall  
“ swim on dry Ground as on a River.  
“ They shall devour Fishes in Fishes, and  
“ swallow up Men in Men. But when  
“ old Age shall come upon them, they shall  
“ become Sea-wolves, and practise their  
“ Frauds in the Deep. They shall drown  
“ Ships, and collect no small quantity of  
“ Silver.

“ Silver. The *Thames* shall again flow, and  
“ assembling together the Rivers, shall pass  
“ beyond the Bounds of its Chanel. It shall  
“ cover the adjacent Cities, and overturn  
“ the Mountains that oppose its Course.  
“ Being full of Deceit and Wickedness, it  
“ shall make Use of the Fountain *Galabes*.  
“ Hence shall arise Factions provoking the  
“ *Venedotians* to War. The Oaks of the Fo-  
“ rests shall meet together, and encounter  
“ with the Rocks of the *Gewisseans*. A Ra-  
“ ven shall attend with the Kites, and de-  
“ vour the Carcases of the Slain. An Owl  
“ shall build her Nest upon the Walls of  
“ *Glocester*, and in her Nest shall be brought  
“ forth an Ass. The Serpent of *Malvern*  
“ shall bring him up, and put him upon  
“ many fraudulent Practices. Having taken  
“ the Crown he shall ascend on high, and  
“ frighten the People of the Country with  
“ his hideous Braying. In his Days shall the  
“ *Pachian* Mountains tremble, and the  
“ Provinces be deprived of their Woods.  
“ For there shall come a Worm with a fiery  
“ Breath, and with the Vapour it sends  
“ forth shall burn up the Trees. Out of it  
“ shall proceed seven Lions deformed with  
“ the Heads of Goats. With the Stench of  
“ their Nostrils they shall corrupt Women,  
“ and make Wives turn common Prosti-  
“ tutes. The Father shall not know his  
“ own Son, because they shall grow wan,  
“ ton

“ ton like brute Beasts. Then shall come  
“ the Giant of Wickedness, and terrify all  
“ with the Sharpness of his Eyes. Against  
“ him shall arise the Dragon of *Worcester*,  
“ and shall endeavour to banish him. But  
“ in the Engagement the Dragon shall be  
“ worsted, and oppressed by the Wicked-  
“ ness of the Conqueror. For he shall  
“ mount upon the Dragon, and putting off  
“ his Garment shall sit upon him naked.  
“ The Dragon shall bear him up on high,  
“ and beat his naked Rider with his Tail  
“ erected. Upon this the Giant rousing up  
“ his whole Strength, shall break his Jaws  
“ with his Sword. At last the Dragon  
“ shall fold itself up under its Tail, and  
“ die of Poison. After him shall succeed  
“ the Boar of *Totness*, and oppress the Peo-  
“ ple with grievous Tyranny. *Glocester*  
“ shall send forth a Lion, and shall disturb  
“ him in his Cruelty in several Battles. He  
“ shall trample him under his Feet, and  
“ terrify him with open Jaws. At last the  
“ Lion shall quarrel with the Kingdom,  
“ and get upon the Backs of the Nobility.  
“ A Bull shall come into the Quarrel, and  
“ strike the Lion with his right Foot. He  
“ shall drive him through all the Inns in the  
“ Kingdom, but shall break his Horns a-  
“ gainst the Walls of *Oxford*. The Fox of  
“ *Kardubalum* shall take Revenge on the  
“ Lion, and destroy him entirely with her  
“ Teeth.

“ Teeth. She shall be encompassed by the  
“ Adder of *Lincoln*, who with a horrible  
“ Hiss shall give Notice of his Presence to  
“ a Multitude of Dragons. Then shall the  
“ Dragons encounter, and tear one another  
“ to Peices. The Winged shall oppress  
“ that which wants Wings, and fasten its  
“ Claws into the poisonous Cheeks. Others  
“ shall come into the Quarrel, and kill one  
“ another. A fifth shall succeed those that  
“ are slain, and by various Stratagems shall  
“ destroy the rest. He shall get upon the  
“ Back of one with his Sword, and sever  
“ his Head from his Body. Then throw-  
“ ing off his Garment, he shall get upon  
“ another, and put his right and left Hand  
“ upon his Tail. Thus being naked shall  
“ he overcome him, whom when cloathed  
“ he was not able to deal with. The rest  
“ he shall gall in their Flight, and drive them  
“ round the Kingdom. Upon this shall  
“ come a roaring Lion dreadful for his mon-  
“ strous Cruelty. Fifteen Parts shall he re-  
“ duce to one, and shall alone possess the  
“ People. The Giant of the Snow-white  
“ Colour shall shine, and cause the white  
“ People to flourish. Pleasures shall effe-  
“ minate the Princes, and they shall sud-  
“ denly be changed into Beasts. Among  
“ them shall arise a Lion swelled with hu-  
“ mane Gore. Under him shall a Reaper  
“ be placed in the standing Corn, who  
“ while

“ while he is reaping shall be oppressed by  
“ him. A Charioteer of *Tork* shall appease  
“ them, and having banished his Lord,  
“ shall mount upon the Chariot which he  
“ shall drive. With his Sword unsheathed  
“ shall he threaten the East, and fill the  
“ Tracts of his Wheels with Blood. After-  
“ wards he shall become a Sea-Fish, who  
“ being roused up with the Hissing of a  
“ Serpent, shall engender with him. From  
“ hence shall be produced three thundering  
“ Bulls, who having eat up their Pastures  
“ shall be turned into Trees. The first  
“ shall carry a Whip of Vipers, and turn  
“ his Back on the next. He shall endeavour  
“ to snatch away the Whip, but shall  
“ be taken by the last. They shall turn  
“ away their Faces from one another, till  
“ they have thrown away the poisoned  
“ Cup. Him shall succeed a Husbandman  
“ of *Albania*, at whose Back shall be a Ser-  
“ pent. He shall be employ’d in plowing  
“ the Ground, that the Country may be-  
“ come white with Corn. The Serpent  
“ shall endeavour to diffuse his Poison, in  
“ Order to blast the Harvest. A grievous  
“ Mortality shall sweep away the People,  
“ and the Walls of Cities shall be made  
“ desolate. There shall be given for a  
“ Remedy the City of *Claudius*, which shall  
“ interpose the Nurse of the Scourger. For  
“ she shall bear a Dose of Medicine, and  
“ in

“ in a short Time the Island shall be re-  
“ stored. Then shall two successively sway  
“ the Sceptre, whom a horned Dragon  
“ shall serve. One shall come in Armour;  
“ and shall ride upon a flying Serpent.  
“ He shall sit upon his Back with his  
“ naked Body, and cast his right Hand up-  
“ on his Tail. With his Cry shall the Seas  
“ be moved, and he shall strike Terror in-  
“ to the Second. The Second therefore  
“ shall enter into Confederacy with the  
“ Lion; but a Quarrel happening, they  
“ shall encounter one another. They shall  
“ distress one another, but the Courage of  
“ the Beast shall gain the Advantage. Then  
“ shall come one with a Drum, and appease  
“ the Rage of the Lion. Therefore shall  
“ the People of the Kingdom be at Peace,  
“ and provoke the Lion to a Dose of Phy-  
“ sick. In his established Seat he shall ad-  
“ just the Weights, but shall stretch out  
“ his Hands into *Albania*. For which Rea-  
“ son the northern Provinces shall be griev-  
“ ed, and open the Gates of the Temples.  
“ The Sign-bearing Wolf shall lead his  
“ Troops, and surround *Cornwal* with his  
“ Tail. He shall be opposed by a Soldier  
“ in a Chariot, who shall transform that  
“ People into a Boar. The Boar therefore  
“ shall ravage the Provinces, but shall hide  
“ his Head in the Depth of *Severn*. A  
“ Man shall embrace a Lion in Wine, and  
“ the

“ the dazzling brightness of Gold shall blind  
 “ the Eyes of Beholders. Silver shall whiten  
 “ in the Circumference, and torment several  
 “ Wine-presses. Men shall be drunk  
 “ with Wine, and regardless of Heaven  
 “ shall be intent upon the Earth. From  
 “ them shall the Stars turn away their Faces,  
 “ and confound their usual Course. Corn  
 “ will wither at their malign Aspects; and  
 “ there shall fall no Dew from Heaven.  
 “ The Roots and Branches will change  
 “ their Places, and the Novelty of the  
 “ Thing shall pass for a Miracle. The  
 “ Brightness of the Sun shall fade at the  
 “ Amber of *Mercury*, and Horror shall sieze  
 “ the Beholders. *Stilbon* of *Arcadia* shall  
 “ change his Shield; the Helmet of *Mars*  
 “ shall call *Venus*. The Helmet of *Mars*  
 “ shall make a Shadow; and the Rage of  
 “ *Mercury* pass his Bounds. Iron *Orion* shall  
 “ unsheath his Sword: The marine *Phæbus*  
 “ shall torment the Clouds; *Jupiter* shall  
 “ go out of his lawful Paths; and *Venus*  
 “ forsake her stated Lines. The malignity  
 “ of the Star *Saturn* shall fall down in Rain,  
 “ and slay Mankind with a crooked Sickle.  
 “ The twelve Houses of the Stars shall lament  
 “ the irregular Excursions of their  
 “ Guests; and *Gemini* omit their usual  
 “ Embraces, and call the Urn to the Fountains.  
 “ The Scales of *Libra* shall hang  
 “ obliquely, till *Aries* put his crooked Horns

P

“ under

“ under them. The Tail of *Scorpio* shall  
“ produce Lightning, and *Cancer* quarrel  
“ with the Sun. *Virgo* shall mount upon  
“ the Back of *Sagittarius*, and darken her  
“ Virgin Flowers. The Chariot of the  
“ Moon shall disorder the *Zodiack*, and the  
“ *Pleiades* break forth into Weeping. No  
“ Offices of *Janus* shall hereafter return,  
“ but his Gate being shut shall lie hid in  
“ the Chinks of *Ariadne*. The Seas shall  
“ rise up in the Twinkling of an Eye, and  
“ the Dust of the Ancients shall be restored.  
“ The Winds shall fight together with a  
“ dreadful Blast, and their Sound shall reach  
“ the Stars.



THE



T H E  
British History.

The Eighth Book.

C H A P. I.

*Vortegirn asks Merlin concerning  
his own Death.*



MERLIN, by delivering these and many other Prophecies, caused in all that were present an Admiration at the Ambiguity of his Expressions. But *Vortegirn* above all the rest both admired and applauded the Wisdom, and propheticall Spirit of the young Man: For that Age had produced none that ever talked in such a Manner before him. Being therefore curious to learn his own Fate, he desired the young Man to tell him what

he knew concerning that Particular. *Merlin*  
 answered ; “ Fly the Fire of the Sons of  
 “ *Constantine*, if you are able to do it : Now  
 “ are they fitting out their Ships : Now  
 “ are they leaving the *Armorican* Shore :  
 “ Now are they spreading out their Sails  
 “ to the Wind. They will steer towards  
 “ *Britain* : They will invade the *Saxon* Na-  
 “ tion ; they will subdue that wicked Peo-  
 “ ple ; but they will first burn you being  
 “ shut up in a Tower. To your own Ruin  
 “ did you prove a Traytor to their Father,  
 “ and invite the *Saxons* into the Island. You  
 “ invited them for your Safe-guard ; but  
 “ they came for a Punishment to you. Two  
 “ Deaths instantly threaten you ; nor is it  
 “ easy to determine, which you can best  
 “ avoid. For on the one Hand the *Saxons*  
 “ shall lay waste your Country, and endea-  
 “ vour to kill you : On the other shall ar-  
 “ rive the two Brothers, *Aurelius Ambrosius*  
 “ and *Uther Pendragon*, whose Business will  
 “ be to revenge their Father’s Murder upon  
 “ you. Seek out some Refuge if you can :  
 “ To morrow they will be on the Shore of  
 “ *Totness*. The Faces of the *Saxons* shall  
 “ look red with Blood, and *Hengist* being  
 “ killed *Aurelius Ambrosius* shall be crown’d.  
 “ He shall bring Peace to the Nation ; he  
 “ shall restore the Churches ; but shall die  
 “ of Poison. His Brother *Uther Pendragon*  
 “ shall succeed him, whose Days also shall  
 “ be

“ be cut short by Poison. There shall be  
 “ present at the Commission of this Trea-  
 “ son your own Issue, whom the Boar of  
 “ *Cornwal* shall devour. Accordingly the  
 “ next Day early, arrived *Aurelius Ambro-*  
 “ *sus* and his Brother, attended with ten  
 “ thousand Men.

## CHAP. II.

*Aurelius Ambrosius being anointed  
 King of Britain, burns Vortegirn  
 besieged in a Tower.*

AS soon as the News of his coming was  
 divulged, the *Britains* who had been  
 dispersed in so great a Calamity, met to-  
 gether from all Parts, and gaining this new  
 Accession of Strength from their Country-  
 men, become more cheerful than ordinary.  
 Then having assembled together the Clergy,  
 they anointed *Aurelius* King, and paid him  
 the customary Homage. And when the  
 People were urgent to fall upon the *Saxons*,  
 he dissuaded them from it, because his De-  
 sire was to pursue *Vortegirn* first. For the  
 Treason committed against his Father so  
 very much affected him, that he thought  
 nothing done till that was first revenged.  
 In Pursuance therefore of this Design, he

marches with his Army into *Cambria*; to the Town of *Genoreu*, whither *Vortegirn* had fled for a safe Refuge. That Town was in the Country of *Hergin*, upon the River *Gania*, in the Mountain called *Cloarius*. As soon as *Ambrosius* was arrived there, he bearing in his Mind the Murder of his Father and Brother, spake thus to *Eldol* Duke of *Glocester*.

“ See, most Noble Duke, whether the  
“ Walls of this City are able to protect  
“ *Vortegirn* against my sheathing this Sword  
“ in his Bowels. He deserves to die, and  
“ you cannot, I suppose, be ignorant of his  
“ Desert. O most villainous of Men, whose  
“ Crimes deserve unexpressible Tortures !  
“ First he betray’d my Father *Constantine*,  
“ who had delivered him and his Country  
“ from the Inrodes of the *Picts* ; afterwards  
“ my Brother *Constans*, whom he made  
“ King on Purpose to destroy him. Again,  
“ when by his Craft he had usurped the  
“ Crown, he introduced Pagans among  
“ the Natives, in order to suppress those  
“ who continued stedfast in their Loyalty  
“ to me : But by the good Providence of  
“ God, he unwarily fell into the Snare,  
“ which he had laid for my faithful Sub-  
“ jects. For the *Saxons* when they found  
“ him out in his Wickedness, drove him  
“ from the Kingdom ; for which no Body  
“ ought

“ ought to be concerned. But this I think  
 “ Matter of just Grief, that this odious  
 “ People, whom that detestable Traitor  
 “ invited over, has expelled the Nobility,  
 “ laid waste a fruitful Country, destroy’d  
 “ the Holy Churches, and almost extin-  
 “ guished *Christianity* over the whole King-  
 “ dom. Now therefore, my Countrymen,  
 “ shew yourselves Men; first revenge your  
 “ selves upon him that was the Occasion of  
 “ all these Disasters; then let us turn our  
 “ Arms against our Enemies that are just  
 “ upon us, and free our Country from  
 “ their brutish Tyranny.

Immediately therefore they set their En-  
 gines to work, and laboured to beat down  
 the Walls. But at last, when all other  
 Attempts failed, they had Recourse to  
 Fire, which meeting with proper Fuel,  
 ceased not to rage, till it had burnt down  
 the Tower and *Vortegirn* in it.



## C H A P. III.

*The Praise of Aurelius's Valour :  
The Levity of the Scots exposed.  
Forces raised against Hengist.*

**H**ENGIST with his Saxons was struck with Terror at this News; for he dreaded the Valour of *Aurelius*. Such was the Bravery and Courage this Prince was Master of, that while he was in the Parts of *Gaul*, there was none durst encounter with him. For in all Rencounters he either dismounted his Adversary, or broke his Spear. Besides he was magnificent in his Presents, constant at his Devotions, temperate in all Respects, and above all Things hated a Lye. A brave Soldier on Foot, a better on Horseback, and expert in the Discipline of an Army. Reports of these his noble Accomplishments, while he yet continued in *Armorican Britain*, were daily brought over into the Island. Therefore the Saxons for fear of him, retired beyond the *Humber*, and in those Parts fortified the Cities and Towns; for that Country always lay open for a Place of Refuge to them; their Safety lying in the Neighbourhood of *Scotland*, which used to watch all Opportunities of distressing the Nation.

For

For that Country being in itself a frightful Place to live in, and wholly uninhabited, had been a safe Receptacle for Strangers. By its Situation it lay open to the *Picts*, *Scots*, *Dacians*, *Norwegians* and others, that came to plunder the Island. Being therefore secure of a safe Reception in this Country, they fled towards it, that if there should be Occasion, they might retreat into it as into their own Camp. This was very good News to *Aurelius*, and made him conceive greater Hopes of Victory. So assembling his People quickly together, he augmented his Army, and made an expeditious March towards the Northern Parts. In his Passage through the Countries, he was grieved to see the Desolation made in them, but especially that the Churches lay level with the Ground; and promised to rebuild them, if he gained the Victory.

---

C H A P. IV.

*Hengist marches with his Army against Aurelius, into the Field Maibeli.*

**B**UT *Hengist* upon his Approach took Courage again, and chose out the bravest of his Men, whom he spirited up  
to

to make a gallant Defence, and not be daunted at *Aurelius*; who, he told them, had but few *Armorican Britains* along with him, since their Number did not exceed ten thousand. And as for the Island *Britains* he made no Account of them, since they had been so often defeated by him. He promised them therefore the Victory, and that they should come off safely, considering the Superiority of their Number, which amounted to two hundred thousand Men in Arms. After he had in this Manner animated all his Men, he advanced with them towards *Aurelius*, into a Field called *Mainbeli*, through which *Aurelius* was to pass. For his Desire was to make a sudden Assault by a Surprize, and fall upon the *Britains* before they were prepared. But *Aurelius* perceived the Design, and yet did not upon that Score delay going to the Field, but rather pursued his March with more Expedition. When he was come within Sight of the Enemy, he put his Troops in Order, commanding three thousand *Armoricans* to attend the Cavalry, and drew out the rest into the Line of Battle with the Islanders. The *Demetians* he placed upon the Hills, and the *Venedorians* in the adjacent Woods. His Reason for which was, that they might be there ready to fall upon the *Saxons*, in Case they should fly thither.

C H A P.

C H A P. V.

*A Battle between Aurelius and Hengist.*

**I**N the mean Time *Eldol* Duke of *Glocester*, went to the King, and said, "This one Day should suffice for all the Days of my Life, if by good Providence I could but get an Opportunity to engage with *Hengist*: For one of us should die before we parted. I still retain deep fixed in my Memory, the Day appointed for our peaceably treating together; but which he villainously made use of for the assassinating all that were present at the Treaty, excepting my self only, who stood upon my Defence with a Stake I accidentally found, till I made my Escape. That very Day proved fatal, through his Treachery, to no less than four hundred and sixty Barons and Consuls, who all went unarmed. From that Conspiracy God was pleased to deliver me, by throwing a Stake in my Way, where with I defended my self and escaped." Thus *Eldol*. Then *Aurelius* exhorted his Companions to place all their Hope in the Son of God, and to make a brave Assault with one Consent upon the Enemy, in Defence

fence of their Country. Nor was *Hengist* less busy on the other Hand in forming his Troops, and giving them Directions how to behave themselves in the Battle; and walked himself through their several Ranks the more to spirit them up. At last both Armies being drawn out in Order of Battle, began the Attack, which they maintain'd with great Bravery, and no small Loss of Blood, both of the *Britains* and *Saxons*. *Aurelius* animates the *Christians*, *Hengist* the *Pagans*; and all the Time of the Engagement, *Eldols* chief Endeavour was to encounter *Hengist*, but he had no Opportunity for it. For *Hengist* when he found his own Men routed, and that the *Christians*, by the especial Favour of God, had the Advantage, fled to the Town called *Kaerconan*, now *Cunungeburg*. *Aurelius* pursues him, and either kills or makes Slaves of all he found in the Way. When *Hengist* saw that he was pursued by *Aurelius*, he would not enter the Town, but assembled his Troops, and prepared them to stand another Engagement. For he knew the Town would not hold out against *Aurelius*, and that his whole Security now lay in his Sword. At last *Aurelius* overtook him, and after marshalling his Forces, began another most furious Fight. And here the *Saxons* unanimously maintained their Ground, notwithstanding the Numbers that fell. On both  
Sides

Sides was great Execution done, the Groans of the dying causing a greater Rage in those that survived. In short the Saxons would have gained the Day, had not a Detachment of Horse of the *Armorican Britains*, come in upon them. For *Aurelius* had appointed them the same Station which they had in the former Battle; so that upon their advancing, the Saxons gave Ground, and being a little dispersed, were not able to rally again. The *Britains* encouraged by this Advantage, exerted themselves, and laboured with all their Might to distress the Enemy. All the Time was *Aurelius* fully employed, not only in giving Commands, but encouraging his Men by his own Example: For with his own Hand he killed all that stood in his Way, and pursued those that fled. Nor was *Eldol* less active in all Parts of the Field, running to and fro to infest his Adversaries; but still his main Endeavour was to find an Opportunity of encountring *Hengist*.



## C H A P. VI.

*Hengist in a Duel with Eldol, is taken by him. The Saxons are slain by the Britains without Mercy.*

AS there were therefore several Motions made by the Parties engaged on each Side, there happened an Opportunity for their meeting, and briskly engaging each other. In this Rencontre of the two greatest Champions in the Field, the Fire sparkled with the clashing of their Arms, and every Stroke in a manner produced both Thunder and Lightning. For a long Time was the Victory in Suspence, as it seemed sometimes to favour the one, sometimes the other. While they were thus hotly engaged, *Gorlois* Duke of *Cornwal* came up to them with the Party he commanded, and did great Execution upon the Enemies Troops. At the Sight of him *Eldol*, now more assured of Victory, fastned upon the Helmet of *Hengist*, and by main Force dragged him in among the *Britains*, and then in Transports of Joy cry'd out with a loud Voice, " God has fulfilled my Desire ! My  
" brave Soldiers, down, down with your  
" Enemies the *Ambrons*. The Victory is  
" now

“ now in your Hands: Since *Hengist* is defeated, the Day is your own. ” In the mean Time the *Britains* failed not to perform every one their Parts against the Pagans, upon whom they made many vigorous Assaults; and though they were obliged sometimes to give Ground, yet their Courage failed them not in making a good Resistance; so that they gave the Enemy no Respite till they had vanquished them. The *Saxons* therefore fled whithersoever their Consternation hurried them, some to the Cities, some to the Woods upon the Hills, and others to their Ships. But *Ossa*, the Son of *Hengist*, made his Retreat with a great Body of Men to *Tork*: And *Eofa* his Kinsman to the City of *Alclud*, where he had a very large Army for his Guard.

## C H A P. VII.

*Hengist is beheaded by Eldol.*

**A**URELIUS after this Victory took the City of *Conan* above-mentioned, and there stay'd three Days. During this Time he gave Orders for the Burial of the Slain, for curing the Wounded, and for the Ease and Refreshment of his Forces that were fatigued.

fatigued. Then he called a Council of his principal Officers, to deliberate what was to be done with *Hengist*. There was present at the Assembly *Eldad* Bishop of *Glocester*, and Brother of *Eldol*, being a Prelate of very great Wisdom and Piety. As soon as he beheld *Hengist* standing in the Kings Presence, he demanded Silence, and said ;  
 “ Though all should be unanimous for setting him at Liberty, yet would I cut him  
 “ to Peices. The Prophet *Samuel* is my  
 “ Warrant, who when he had *Agag* King  
 “ of *Amalech* in his Power, hew’d him in  
 “ Peices, saying, *As thy Sword hath made Wo-*  
 “ *men childless, so shall thy Mother be childless*  
 “ *among Women.* Do you therefore the  
 “ same to *Hengist*, who is a second *Agag*.”  
 Accordingly *Eldol* took his Sword, and drew him out of the City, and then cut off his Head. But *Aurelius* who shew’d a Moderation in all his Conduct, commanded him to be buried, and a Heap of Earth to be raised over his Body, according to the Custom of the Pagans.



C H A P.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Octa being besieged in York, surrenders himself to the Mercy of Aurelius.*

FROM hence *Aurelius* conducted his Army to *York*, to besiege *Octa Hengist's* Son. When the City was invested, *Octa* was doubtful whether he should give him any Opposition, and stand a Siege against such a powerful Army. After Consultation upon it, he went out with his principal Nobility that were present, carrying a Chain in his Hand, and Sand upon his Head, and presented himself to the King with this Address: "My Gods are vanquished, and I  
 "doubt not but the Sovereign Power is in  
 "your God, who has compelled so many  
 "noble Persons to come before you in this  
 "suppliant Manner. Be pleased therefore  
 "to accept of Us, and of this Chain. If  
 "you do not think Us fit Objects of your  
 "Clemency, we here present ourselves ready to be fettered, and to undergo whatever Punishment you shall adjudge Us to." *Aurelius* was moved with Commiseration at the Spectacle, and demanded the Advice of his Council what was to be done with them. After various Proposals  
 Q upon

upon this Subject, *Eldad* the Bishop rose up, and delivered his Opinion in these Words;  
 “ The *Gibeonites* came voluntarily to the  
 “ Children of *Israel* to desire Mercy, and  
 “ they obtained it. And shall we *Christians*  
 “ be worse than the *Jews*, in refusing them  
 “ Mercy? It is Mercy they beg, and let  
 “ them have it. The Island of *Britain* is  
 “ large, and in many Places uninhabited.  
 “ Let us make a Covenant with them, and  
 “ suffer them at least to inhabit the desert  
 “ Places, that they may be our Vassals for  
 “ ever. ” The King acquiesced in *Eldad*’s  
 Advice, and suffered them to partake of his  
 Clemency. After this *Eosa* and the rest  
 that fled, being encouraged by *Otha*’s Suc-  
 cess, came also, and were admitted to the  
 same Favour. The King therefore granted  
 them the Country bordering upon *Scotland*,  
 and made a firm Covenant with them.

#### C H A P. IX.

*Aurelius having entirely routed the  
 Enemies, restores all Things in  
 Britain, especially Ecclesiastical, to  
 their Ancient State.*

THE Enemies being now entirely re-  
 duced, the King summoned the Con-  
 suls and Princes of the Kingdom together

at

at *Tork*, where he gave them Orders for the Restauration of the Churches, which the Saxons had destroyed. He himself undertook the rebuilding of the Metropolitan Church of that City, as also the other Cathedral Churches in that Province. After fifteen Days when he had settled Workmen in several Places, he went to *London*, which City had not escaped the Fury of the Enemy. He beheld the Destruction made in it with great Sorrow, and recalled the Remainder of the Citizens from all Parts, and began the Restauration of it. Here he settled the Affairs of the whole Kingdom, revived the Laws, restored the Right Heirs to the Possessions of their Ancestors; and those Estates, whereof the Heirs had been lost in the late grievous Calamity, he distributed among his Fellow Soldiers. And in these important Concerns, of restoring the Nation to its ancient State, of repairing the Churches, of re-establishing Peace and Law, and of settling the Administration of Justice, was his Time and Thoughts wholly employed. From hence he went to *Winchester*; to repair the Ruins of it, as he did of other Cities; and when the Work was finished there, he went, at the Instance of Bishop *Eldad*, to the Monastery near *Kaer-caradoc*, now *Salisbury*, where the Consuls and Princes, whom the wicked *Hengist* had treacherously murdered, lay buried. At this

Place was a Convent that maintained three hundred Fryars, being situated upon the Mountain of *Ambrius*, who, as is reported, had been the Founder of it. The sight of the Place where the Dead lay, made the King, who was of a compassionate Temper, shed Tears, and at last enter upon Thoughts, what Kind of Monument to erect upon it. For he thought something ought to be done to perpetuate the Memory of that Piece of Ground, which was honoured with the Bodies of so many noble Patriots, that dy'd for their Country.

## C H A P. X.

*Aurelius is advised by Merlin to remove the Giants Dance from the Mountain Killaraus.*

**I**N Order to this, he summoned together several Carpenters and Masons, and commanded them to employ the utmost of their Art, in contriving some new Structure, for a lasting Monument to those great Men. But they, out of a Diffidence of their own Skill, refusing to undertake it, *Tremounius* Archbishop of the City of *Legions* went to the King, and said; "If any one living  
" is able to execute your Commands, *Mer-*  
" *lin*

“ *lin* the Prophet of *Vortegirn* is the Man.  
 “ In my Opinion there is not in all your  
 “ Kingdom a Person of a brighter Genius,  
 “ either in predicting future Events, or in  
 “ mechanical Contrivances. Order him to  
 “ come to you, and exercise his Skill in the  
 “ Work you design.” Whereupon *Aurelius*,  
 after he had asked a great many Questions  
 concerning him, dispatched away several  
 Messengers into the Countries to find him  
 out, and bring him to him. After their  
 passing through several Provinces, they  
 found him in the Country of the *Gewisseans*,  
 at the Fountain of *Galabes*, which he fre-  
 quently resorted to. As soon as they had  
 delivered their Message to him, they con-  
 ducted him to the King, who received him  
 with Joy; and being curious to hear some  
 of his wonderful Speeches, commanded him  
 to Prophecy. *Merlin* made Answer; “ Mi-  
 “ steries of this Kind are not to be reveal-  
 “ ed, but when there is the greatest Ne-  
 “ cessity for it. If I should pretend to ut-  
 “ ter them either for Ostentation or Diver-  
 “ sion, the Spirit that instructs me would  
 “ be silent, and would leave me when I  
 “ should have Occasion for it.” And when  
 he had made the same Refusal to all the rest  
 present, the King would not urge him any  
 longer about his Predictions, but spoke to  
 him concerning the Monument he designed.  
 “ If you are desirous, said *Merlin*, to ho-  
 Q 3 “ nour

"nour the Burying Place of these Men  
 "with an everlasting Monument, send for  
 "the Giants Dance, which is in *Killarass*  
 "a Mountain in *Ireland*. For there is a  
 "Structure of Stones there, which none of  
 "this Age could raise, without a profound  
 "Knowledge of the mechanical Arts. They  
 "are Stones of a vast Magnitude and won-  
 "derful Quality: And if they can be placed  
 "here, as they are there, quite round this  
 "Spot of Ground, they will stand for ever.

## C H A P. XI.

*Uther Pendragon is appointed with  
 Merlin to bring over the Giants  
 Dance.*

**A**T these Words of *Merlin*, *Aurelius* burst  
 out into Laughter, and said; "How  
 "is it possible to remove such vast Stones  
 "from so distant a Country, as if *Britain*  
 "was not furnished with Stones fit for the  
 "Work?" *Merlin* reply'd; "I entreat  
 "your Majesty to forbear vain Laughter;  
 "for what I say is without Vanity. They  
 "are mystical Stones, and of a medicinal  
 "Virtue. The Giants of old brought them  
 "from the farthest Coasts of *Africa*, and  
 "placed them in *Ireland*, while they inha-  
 "bited

“ bited that Country. Their Design in  
 “ this was to make Baths in them, when  
 “ they should be taken with any Illness.  
 “ For their Method was to wash the Stones,  
 “ and put their Sick into the Water, which  
 “ infallibly cured them. With the like  
 “ Success they cured Wounds also, adding  
 “ only the Application of some Herbs. There  
 “ is not a Stone there, which has not some  
 “ healing Virtue. ” When the *Britains*  
 heard this, they resolved to send for the  
 Stones, and to make War upon the People  
 of *Ireland*, if they should offer to detain  
 them. And to accomplish this Business,  
 they made choice of *Uther Pendragon*, who  
 was to be attended with fifteen thousand  
 Men. They chose also *Merlin* himself, by  
 whose Direction the whole Affair was to  
 be managed. A Fleet being therefore got  
 ready, they set sail, and with a fair Wind  
 arrived in *Ireland*.

---

## C H A P. XII.

*Gillomanius being routed by Uther,  
 the Britains bring over the Giants  
 Dance into Britain.*

**A**T that Time *Gillomanius*, a Youth of  
 wonderful Valour, reigned in *Ireland*;  
 who upon the News of the Arrival of the

*Britains* in his Kingdom, levy'd a vast Army, and marched out against them. And when he had learned the Occasion of their coming, he smiling said to those about him ;  
 " No Wonder a cowardly Race of People,  
 " were able to make so great Devastations  
 " in the Island of *Britain*, when the *Britains*  
 " are such Brutes and Fools. Was ever  
 " the like Folly heard of ? What are the  
 " Stones of *Ireland* better than those of *Britain*,  
 " that our Kingdom must be put to  
 " this Disturbance for them ? To Arms  
 " Soldiers, and defend your Country ; while  
 " I have Life, they shall not take from us  
 " the least Stone of the Giants Dance. "  
*Uther* seeing them prepared for a Battle, attacked them ; nor was it long e'er the *Britains* had the Advantage, who having dispersed and killed the *Irisb*, forced *Gillomanius* to fly. After the Victory they went to the Mountain *Killaraus*, and arrived at the Structure of Stones, the sight of which filled them both with Joy and Admiration. And while they were all standing round them, *Merlin* came up to them, and said : " Now  
 " try your Forces, young Men, and see  
 " whether Strength or Art can do more,  
 " towards the taking down these Stones. "  
 At this Word they all set to their Engines with one Accord, and attempted the removing of the Giants Dance. Some prepared Cables, others small Ropes, others Ladders  
 for

for the Work; but all to no Purpose. *Merlin* laughed at their vain Efforts, and then began his own Contrivances. At last when he had placed in Order the Engines that were necessary, he took down the Stones with an incredible Facility, and withal gave Directions for carrying them to the Ships, and placing them therein. This done, they with Joy set sail again, to return to *Britain*; where they arrived with a fair Gale, and repaired to the Burying-Place with the Stones. When *Aurelius* had Notice of it, he sent out Messengers to all the Parts of *Britain*, to summon the Clergy and People together to the Mount of *Amorius*, in order to celebrate with Joy and Honour the erecting of the Monument. Upon this Summons appeared the Bishops, Abbots, and People of all other Orders and Qualities; and upon the Day and Place appointed for their general Meeting, *Aurelius* placed the Crown upon his Head, and with Royal Pomp celebrated the Feast of Pentecost, the Solemnity whereof he continued the three following Days. In the mean Time all Places of Honour that were vacant, he bestowed upon his Domesticks, as Rewards for their good Services. At that Time were the two Metropolitan Sees of *York* and *Legions* vacant; and with the general Consent of the People, whom he was willing to please in this choice, he granted *York* to *Sanxo*, a  
Man

Man of great Quality, and much celebrated for his Piety; and the City of *Legions* to *Dubricius*, whom Divine Providence had pointed out as a most useful Pastor in that Place. As soon as he had settled these and other Affairs in the Kingdom, he ordered *Merlin* to set up the Stones brought over from *Ireland*, about the Sepulchre; which he accordingly did, and placed them in the same Manner as they had been in the Mountain *Killaraus*, and thereby gave a manifest Proof of the Prevalence of Art above Strength.

---

C H A P. XIII.

*Pascentius brings in the Saxons  
against the Britains.*

**A**T the same Time *Pascentius* the Son of *Vortegirn*, who had fled over into *Germany*, was levying all the Forces of that Kingdom against *Aurelius Ambrosius*, with a Design to revenge his Fathers Death; and promised his Men an immense Treasure of Gold and Silver, if with their Assistance he could succeed in reducing *Britain* under his Power. When he had at last corrupted all the Youth of the Country with his large Promises, he prepared a vast Fleet, and arrived

rived in the Northern Parts of the Island, upon which he began to make great Devastations. The King on the other hand, upon hearing this News, assembled his Army, and marched against them, and challenged the enraged Enemy to a Battle; which hereupon accordingly ensued, and in which by the Blessing of God the Enemy was defeated and put to Flight.

#### C H A P. XIV.

*Pascentius being assisted by the King of Ireland, again infests the Britains. Aurelius dies by the Treachery of Eopa a Saxon.*

**P**ASCENTIUS after this Flight, durst not return back to Germany, but shifting his Sails went over to Gillomanus in Ireland, by whom he was well received. And when he had given him an Account of his Misfortune, Gillomanus in Pity to him promised him his Assistance, and at the same Time vented his Complaint of the Injuries done him by Uther, the Brother of Aurelius, when he came for the Giants Dance. At last entring into Confederacy together, they made ready their Fleet, in which they embarked, and arrived at the City Menevia.

This

This News caused *Uther Pendragon* to levy his Forces, and march into *Cambria* to fight them. For his Brother *Aurelius* then lay sick at *Winchester*, and was not able to go himself. When *Pascentius*, *Gillomanus*, and the *Saxons* heard of it, they highly rejoiced, as flattering themselves, that his Sickness would facilitate to them the Conquest of *Britain*. And while this Occurrence was the Subject of the Peoples Discourse, one of the *Saxons*, named *Eopa*, came to *Pascentius*, and said ; “ What Reward will you give the Man, that shall kill *Aurelius Ambrosius* for you ? ” To whom *Pascentius* answered, “ Oh that I could find a Man of such Resolution ! I would give him a thousand Pounds of Silver, and my Friendship for Life ; and if by good Fortune I can but gain the Crown, I promise upon Oath to make him a Centurion. ” To this *Eopa* reply’d, I have learned the *British* Language, and know the Manners of the People, and have Skill in Physick. If therefore you will perform this Promise, I will pretend I am a *Christian* and a *Britain* ; and when, as a Physician, I shall be admitted into the Kings Presence, I will make him a Potion that shall dispatch him. And to gain the readier Access to him, I will withal put on the Appearance of a devout and learned Monk. ” Upon this Offer

Offer *Pascentius* entred into Covenant with him, and confirmed what he had promised with an Oath. *Eopa* therefore shaved his Beard and Head, and in the Habit of a Monk hasted towards *Winchester*, being loaden with Vessels full of Medical Preparations. As soon as he arrived there, he offered his Service to those that attended about the King, and was graciously received by them; for to them no Body was now more acceptable than a Physician. Then being introduced into the Kings Presence, he promised to restore him to his Health, if he would but take his Potions. Upon which he had his Orders forthwith to prepare one of them, into which when he had secretly conveyed a poisonous Mixture, he gave it the King. As soon as *Aurelius* had drunk it up, the wicked *Ambrosius* ordered him presently to cover himself close up, and fall asleep, that the detestable Potion might the better operate. The King readily obeyed his Prescriptions, and in great Hopes of a speedy Recovery fell asleep. But the Poison quickly diffused itself through all the Pores and Veins of his Body, so that upon the Sleep inexorable Death ensued. In the mean Time the wicked Traytor having slyly withdrawn himself first from one and then from another, was no longer to be found in the Court. During these Transactions at *Winchester*,

*chester*, there appeared a Star of a wonderful Magnitude and Brightness, darting forth a Ray, at the End whereof was a Globe of Fire in Form of a Dragon, out of whose Mouth issued forth two Rays; one of which seemed to stretch out itself beyond the Extent of *Gaul*, the other towards the *Irish* Sea, and ended in seven lesser Rays.

## C H A P. XV.

*A Comet presignifies the Reign of Uther.*

**A**T the Appearance of this Star, a general Fear and Amazement seized the People; and even *Uther* the Kings Brother, who was then upon his March with his Army into *Cambria*, being not a little terrified at it, was very curious to know of the learned Men, what it portended. Among others he ordered *Merlin* to be called, who also attended in this Expedition to give his Advice in the Management of the War; and who being now presented before him, was commanded to discover to him the Signification of the Star. At this he burst out into Tears, and with a loud Voice cry'd out, "O irreparable Loss! O distressed People of *Britain*! Alas! The illustrious

“ lustrious Prince is departed ! The re-  
 “ nowned King of the *Britains*, *Aurelius*  
 “ *Ambrosius*, is dead ! Whose Death will  
 “ prove fatal to us all, unless God be our  
 “ Helper. Make Haste therefore, most  
 “ Noble *Uther*, make Haste to engage the  
 “ Enemy : The Victory will be yours, and  
 “ you shall be King of all *Britain*. For the  
 “ Star, and the fiery Dragon under it, sig-  
 “ nifies yourself, and the Ray extending  
 “ towards the *Gallican* Coast, portends that  
 “ you shall have a most potent Son, to whose  
 “ Power all those Kingdoms shall be sub-  
 “ ject over which the Ray reaches. But  
 “ the other Ray signifies a Daughter, whose  
 “ Sons and Grandsons shall successively en-  
 “ joy the Kingdom of *Britain*.

## C H A P. XVI.

*Pascentius and Gillomanus are killed in Battle.*

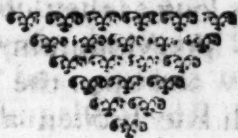
**U**THER, though he doubted of the Truth of what *Merlin* had declared, however pursued his March against the Enemy ; for he was now come within half a Days March of *Menevia*. When *Gillomanus*, *Pascentius*, and the *Saxons* were informed of his Approach, they went out to give

give him Battle. As soon as they were come within Sight of each other, both Armies began to form themselves into several Bodies, and then advanced to a close Attack, in which both Sides suffered a Loss of Men, as it usually happens in such Engagements. At last towards the Close of the Day, the Advantage was on *Uthens* Side, and the Death of *Gillomanius* and *Pascentius* made an open Way for compleat Victory. So that the Barbarians being put to Flight, hastened to their Ships, but were slain by their Pursuers. Thus by the Favour of *Christ*, the General had triumphant Success, and then with all possible Expedition, after so great a Fatigue, returned back to *Winchester*. For he had now been informed, by Messengers that arrived, of the Kings sad Fate, and of his Burial by the Bishops of the Country, near the Convent of *Ambrius*, within the Giants Dance, which in his Life-Time he had commanded to be made. For upon hearing the News of his Death, the Bishops, Abbots, and all the Clergy of that Province, had met together at *Winchester*, to solemnize his Funeral. And because in his Life-Time he had given Orders for his being buried in the Sepulchre which he had prepared, they therefore carried his Corps thither, and performed his Exequies with Royal Magnificence.

## C H A P. XVII.

## Uther Pendragon is made King of Britain.

**B**UT Uther his Brother, having assembled the Clergy of the Kingdom, took the Crown, and with an universal Consent was advanced to the Kingdom. And remembring the Explication *Merlin* had made of the Star above-mentioned, he commanded two Dragons to be made of Gold, in Likeness of the Dragon which he had seen at the Ray of the Star. As soon as they were finished, which was done with wonderful Nicety of Workmanship, he made a Present of one to the Cathedral Church of *Winchester*, but reserved the other for himself, to be carried along with him to his Wars. From this Time therefore he was called *Uther Pendragon*, which in the *British* Tongue signifies *The Dragons Head*; the Occasion of this Appellation being *Merlins* predicting, from the Appearance of a Dragon, that he should be King.



R

C H A P.

## C. H. A. P. XVIII.

*Octa and Eofa are taken in Battle.*

**I**N the mean Time *Octa* the Son of *Hengist*, and his Kinsman *Eofa*, seeing they were no longer bound by the Treaty they had made with *Aurelius Ambrosius*, began to raise Disturbances against the King, and infest his Countries. For they were now joining with the *Saxons* whom *Pascentius* had brought over, and sending away Messengers into *Germany* for the rest. Being therefore attended with a vast Army, he invaded the Northern Provinces, and in an outrageous Manner destroyed all the Cities and fortified Places, from *Albania* to *Tork*. At last as he was beginning the Siege of that City, *Uther Pendragon* came upon him with the whole Power of the Kingdom, and gave him Battle. The *Saxons* behaved themselves with great Gallantry, and after having sustained themselves against the Assaults of the *Britains*, forced them to fly; and upon this Advantage pursued them with Slaughter to the Mountain *Damen*, which was as long as they could do it with Day-Light. The Mountain was high, and had a Hazel-Wood upon the Top of it, and about the Middle broken and cavernous Rocks, which were a Harbour to wild Beasts.

Beasts. The *Britains* made up to it, and stay'd there all Night among the Rocks and Hazel-Bushes. But as it began to draw towards Day, *Uther* commanded the Consuls and Princes to be called together, that he might consult with them in what Manner to assault the Enemy. Whereupon they forthwith appeared before the King, who commanded them to give their Advice; and *Gortlos*, Duke of *Cornwal*, had Orders to deliver his Opinion first, out of Regard to his Years and great Experience. "There is no Occasion," says he, "for Ceremonies or Speeches, while we see the Night yet continues: But there is for Boldness and Courage, if you desire any longer Enjoyment of your Life and Liberty. The Pagans are very numerous, and eager to fight, and we much inferior to them in Number; so that if we stay till Day-break, we cannot in my Opinion attack them to Advantage. Come on therefore, while we have the Favour of the Night, let us go down in a close Body, and surprize them in their Camp with a sudden Assault. There can be no Doubt of Success, if with one Consent we fall upon them boldly, while they think themselves secure, and have no Expectation of our coming in such a Manner." The King and all that were present, were pleased with his Advice, and pursued it. For as soon as

they were armed and placed in their Ranks, they make towards the Enemies Camp, designing a general Assault. But upon their Approach to it, they were discovered by the Watch, who with Sound of Trumpet awaked their Companions. The Enemies being hereupon put into Confusion and Astonishment, part of them hasten towards the Sea, and part ran up and down whithersoever their Fear or Precipitation drove them. The *Britains* finding their coming discovered, hasten their March, and keeping still close together in their Ranks, invade the Camp; into which when they had found an Entrance, they ran with their drawn Swords upon the Enemy; who in this sudden Surprize, made but a faint Defence against the others vigorous and regular Attack. So the *Britains* pursue this Blow with great Eagerness, destroy some thousands of the Pagans, take *Octa* and *Eosa* Prisoners, and entirely disperse the *Saxons*.



C H A P.

## C H A P. XIX.

*Uther falling in Love with Igerna,  
enjoys her by the Assistance of  
Merlins Magical Operations.*

AFTER this Victory Uther repaired to the City of *Alclud*, where he settled the Affairs of that Province, and restored Peace every where. He also made a Progress round all the Countries of the *Scots*, and tamed the Fierceness of that rebellious People, by such a strict Administration of Justice, as none of his Predecessors had exercised before: So that in his Time Offenders were every where under great Terror, since they were sure of being punished without Mercy. At last when he had established Peace in the Northern Provinces, he went to *London*, and commanded *Oëta* and *Eofa* to be kept in Prison there. The Easter following he ordered all the Nobility of the Kingdom to meet him at that City, in order to celebrate that great Festival; in Honour of which he designed to wear his Crown. The Summons was every where obeyed, and there appeared a great Concourse from all Cities against the Day. So the King observed the Festival with great Solemnity, as he had designed,

and very joyfully entertained his Nobility, of whom there was a very great Appearance with their Wives and Daughters, suitable to the Magnificence of the Banquet prepared for them. And having been received with Joy by the King, they also expressed the same in their Deportment before him. Among the rest was present *Gorlois* Duke of *Cornwal*, with his Wife *Igern*, the greatest Beauty in all *Britain*. No sooner had the King cast his Eyes upon her among the rest of the Ladies, than he fell passionately in Love with her, and little regarding the rest, made her the Subject of all his Thoughts. She was the only Lady that he continually served with fresh Dishes, and to whom he sent Golden Cups by his Confidants; on her he bestowed all his Smiles, and to her addressed all his merry Discourse. The Husband discovering this, fell into a great Rage, and retired from the Court without taking Leave: Nor was there any Body that could stop him, while he was under Fear of losing the chief Object of his Delight. *Uther* therefore in great Wrath commanded him to return back to Court, to make him Satisfaction for this Affront. But *Gorlois* refused to obey; upon which the King was highly incensed, and swore he would destroy his Country, if he did not speedily compound for his Offence. And accordingly without Delay, while their  
Anger

Anger was hot against each other, the King got together a great Army, and marched into the Provinces of *Cornwal*, the Cities and Towns whereof he set on Fire. But *Gorlous* durst not engage with him, on Account of the Inferiority of his Numbers; and thought it a wiser Course to fortify his Towns, till he could get his Succours from *Ireland*. And as he was under more Concern for his Wife than himself, he put her into the Town of *Tintagol* upon the Sea-Shore, which he looked upon as a Place of great Safety. But he himself entred the Castle of *Dimilioc*, to prevent their being both at once involved in the same Danger, if any should happen. The King being informed of this, went to the Town where *Gorlous* was, which he besieged, and shut up all the Avenues to it. A whole Week was now past, when he retaining in mind his Love to *Igernia*, said to one of his Confidants, named *Ulfyn de Ricaradoch*: “ My  
 “ Passion for *Igernia* is such, that I can nei-  
 “ ther have Ease of Mind, nor Health of  
 “ Body, till I obtain her: And if you can-  
 “ not assist me with your Advice how to  
 “ accomplish my Desire, the inward Tor-  
 “ ments I endure will kill me.” “ Who  
 “ can advise you in this Matter, said *Ulfyn*,  
 “ when by no Force we can have Access to  
 “ her in the Town of *Tintagol*. For it is  
 “ situated upon the Sea, and on every Side

“surrounded by it; and there is but one  
“Entrance into it, and that through a  
“strait Rock, which three Men shall be  
“able to defend against the whole Power  
“of the Kingdom. Notwithstanding if  
“the Prophet *Merlin* would in Earnest set  
“upon this Attempt, I am of Opinion, you  
“may with his Advice obtain your Wishes.”  
The King readily believed what he was so  
well inclined to, and ordered *Merlin*, who  
was also come to the Siege, to be called.  
*Merlin* therefore being forthwith introduced  
into the Kings Presence, was commanded  
to give his Advice, how the King might  
accomplish his Desire with Respect to *Igera*.  
And he finding how great Anguish the King  
suffered, was moved to see such Effects of  
his excessive Love, and said, “To accom-  
“plish your Desire, you must make use of  
“such Arts as have not been heard of in  
“your Time. I know how by the Force  
“of my Medicines, to give you the exact  
“Likeness of *Gorlois*, so that in all Respects  
“you shall seem to be no other than him-  
“self. If you will therefore obey my Pre-  
“scriptions, I will metamorphize you into  
“the true Semblance of *Gorlois*, and *Ulfen*  
“into *Jordan* of *Tintagol*, his familiar Friend;  
“and I myself being transformed into ano-  
“ther Shape, will make the third in the  
“Adventure; and in this Disguise you may  
“go safely to the Town where *Igera* is,  
“and

“ and have Admittance to her.” The King comply’d with the Proposal, and acted with great Caution in this Affair ; and when he had committed the Care of the Siege to his intimate Friends, underwent the Medical Applications of *Merlin*, by whom he was transformed into the Likeness of *Gorlois* ; as was *Ulfen* also into *Jordan*, and *Merlin* himself into *Bricel* ; so that no Body could see any Remains now of their former Likeness. Then they set forward on their Way to *Tintagel*, at which they arrived in the Evening Twilight, and forthwith signified to the Porter, that the Consul was come ; upon which the Gates were opened, and the Men let in. For what Room could there be for Suspicion, when *Gorlois* himself seemed to be there present ? The King therefore stay’d that Night with *Igern*a, and had the full Enjoyment of her ; for she was deceived with the false Disguise he had put on, and the artful and amorous Discourses wherewith he entertained her. He told her he had left his own Place besieged, purely to provide for the Safety of her dear self, and the Town she was in ; so that she believing all that he said, refused him nothing he desired. The same Night therefore she conceived of the most renowned *Arthur*, whose Heroick and wonderful Actions have justly rendred his Name famous to Posterity.

## C H A P. XX.

*Gorlois being killed, Uther marries  
Igern.*

**I**N the mean Time as soon as the Kings Absence was discovered at the Siege, his Army unadvisedly make an Assault upon the Walls, and provoke the besieged Count to a Battle; who himself also acting as inconsiderately as they, sally'd forth with his Men, thinking with such a small Handful to oppose a Powerful Army; but happened to be killed in the very first Brunt of the Fight, and had all his Men routed. The Town also was taken; but all the Riches of it were not shared equally among the Besiegers, but every one greedily took what he could get, according as Fortune or his own Strength favoured him. After this bold Attempt, came Messengers to *Igern*, with the News both of the Dukes Death, and of the Event of the Siege. But when they saw the King in the Likeness of the Consul, sitting close by her, they were struck with Shame and Astonishment at his safe Arrival there, whom they had left Dead at the Siege; for they were wholly ignorant of the Miracles *Merlin* had wrought with his Medicines. The King therefore  
smiled

smiled at the News, and embracing the  
 Countess, said to her; "Your own Eyes  
 " may convince you that I am not dead,  
 " but alive. But notwithstanding, the De-  
 " struction of the Town, and the Slaughter  
 " of my Men, is what very much grieves  
 " me; so that there is Reason to fear the  
 " Kings coming upon us, and taking us in  
 " this Place. To prevent which, I will  
 " go out to meet him, and make my Peace  
 " with him, for fear of a worse Disaster."  
 Accordingly as soon as he was out of the  
 Town, he went to his Army, and having  
 put off the Disguise of *Gorlois*, was now  
*Uther Pendragon* again. When he had a full  
 Relation made to him how Matters had  
 succeeded, he was sorry for the Death of *Gor-*  
*lois*, but rejoiced that *Igern*a was now at  
 Liberty to marry again. Then he returned  
 to the Town of *Tintagol*, which he took,  
 and in it, what he impatiently wished for,  
*Igern*a herself. After this they continued to  
 live together in a passionate Affection for  
 each other, and got a Son and Daughter,  
 whose Names were *Arthur* and *Anne*.



## C H A P. XXI.

*Osta and Eofa renew the War.  
Lot, a Consul, marries the Kings  
Daughter.*

**I**N Process of Time the King was taken ill of a lingering Distemper; and the mean Time the Keepers of the Prison, wherein *Osta* and *Eofa*, (as we related before,) led a weary Life, had fled over with them into *Germany*, and occasioned great Fear over the Kingdom. For there was a current Report, of their great Levies in *Germany*, and the vast Fleet they had prepared for their Return to destroy the Island: Which the Event verified. For they did return in a very great Fleet, and with a prodigious Number of Men, and invaded the Parts of *Albania*, where they destroyed both Cities and Inhabitants with Fire and Sword. Whereupon in Order to repulse the Enemies, the Command of the *British* Army is committed to *Lot* of *Londonesia*, who was a Consul, and a most valiant Knight, and grown up to Maturity both of Years and Wisdom. Out of Respect therefore to his eminent Merits, the King had given him his Daughter *Anne*, and entrusted him with the Care of the Kingdom, during his Illness.

In

In his Expedition against the Enemies he had various Success, being often repulsed by them, and forced to retreat to the Cities; but he oftner routed and dispersed them, and compelled them to fly sometimes into the Woods, sometimes to their Ships. So that in a War that was attended with so many Turns of Fortune, it was hard to know which Side had the better. The greatest Injury to the *Britains* was their own Pride, in disdaining to obey the Consuls Commands; for which Reason all their Efforts against the Enemy were less Vigorous and Successful.

---

C H A P. XXII.

*Uther being ill, is carried in a Horse-Litter against the Enemy.*

THE Island being by this Conduct now almost laid waste, and the King having Information of the Matter, he fell into a greater Rage than his Weakness could bear, and commanded all his Nobility to come before him, that he might reprove them severely for their Pride and Cowardice. And as soon as they were all entred into his Presence, he sharply rebuked them in menacing Language, and swore he himself would lead them against the Enemy.

For

For this Purpose he ordered a Horse-Litter to be made, in which he designed to be carried, since his Infirmary would not suffer him to use any other sort of Vehicle ; and charged them to be all ready, to march against the Enemy the very first Opportunity. So without Delay, both the Horse-Litter and all his Attendants were got ready, and the Day appointed for their March now come.

### C H A P. XXIII.

*Oeta and Eofa with a great Number of their Men are killed.*

**T**H E King therefore being put into his Vehicle, they marched directly to *Verolam*, where the *Saxons* were grievously oppressing the People. When *Oeta* and *Eofa* had Intelligence that the *Britains* were come, and how the King was brought in a Horse-Litter, they disdained to fight with him, saying, it would be a Shame for such brave Men to fight with one that was half dead. For which Reason they retired into the City, and as it were in Contempt of any Danger from the Enemy, left their Gates wide open. But *Uther* upon Information hereof, instantly commanded his Men to lay Siege to the City,

City, and assault the Walls on all Sides; which Orders they strictly executed, and were just upon entering the Breaches they had made in the Walls, and ready to begin a general Assault; when the Saxons, seeing the Advantages the Britains had gained, and now being forced to abate somewhat of their haughty Pride, condescended so far as to put themselves into a Posture of Defence. They therefore mounted the Walls, from whence they poured down Showers of Arrows, and repulsed the Britains. On both Sides this warm Dispute continued till Night came on, to release them from the Fatigue of their Arms, which was what many of the Britains desired, though the greater Part of them were for having the Matter quickly decided with the Enemy. The Saxons on the other Hand finding how prejudicial their own Pride had been to them, and that the Advantage was on the Britains Side, resolved to make a Sally out at Break of Day, and try their Fortune with the Enemy in the open Field; which accordingly was done. For no sooner was it Day-Light, than they marched out with this Design, being all placed in their Ranks. The Britains seeing them, divided their Men into several Bodies, and then advanced towards them, and began the Attack first, their Part being to assault, while the others were only upon the Defensive. However much Blood  
was

was shed on both Sides, and the greatest Part of the Day spent in the Fight, when at last *Oeta* and *Eofa* being killed, the Saxons turned their Backs, and left the King of the *Britains* a compleat Victory. The King at this was in such an Extrasy of Joy, that whereas before he could hardly raise up himself with the Help of others, he now without any Difficulty sat upright in his Horse-Litter of himself, as if he was on a sudden restored to Health; and said with a laughing and merry Countenance, "These *Anglons* called me the half dead King, because my Sickness obliged me to lye on a Horse-Litter; and indeed so I was. Yet Victory to me half dead, is better than to be vanquished safe and sound. For to die with Honour, is preferable to living with Disgrace.

#### C H A P. XXIV.

*Uther, upon drinking Spring-Water that was treacherously poisoned by the Saxons, dies.*

**T**H E Saxons notwithstanding this Defeat, persisted still in their Malice, and entering the Northern Provinces, without Respite infested the People there. *Uthers* full

full Purpose was to have pursued them; but his Princes dissuaded him from it, because his Illness was increased since the Victory. This gave new Courage to the Enemy, who left nothing unattempted to make Conquest of the Kingdom. And now they have Recourse to their former treacherous Practises, and contrive how to compass the Kings Death by secret Villany. And because they could have no Access to him otherwise, they resolved to take him off by Poison; in which they succeeded. For while he was lying ill at *Verolam*, they sent away some Spies in a poor Habit, to learn the State of the Court: And when they had thoroughly informed themselves of the Posture of Affairs, they found out an Expedient by which they might best accomplish their Villany. For there was near the Court a Spring of very clear Water, which the King used to drink of, when his Distemper had made all other Liquors nauseous to him. This the detestable Conspirators made use of to destroy him, by so poisoning the whole Mass of Water which sprung up, that the next Time the King drunk of it, he was seized with sudden Death; as were also a hundred other Persons after him, till the Villany was discovered, and a Heap of Earth thrown over the Well. As soon as the Kings Death was divulged, the Bishops  
S and

and Clergy of the Kingdom assembled,  
and carried his Body to the Convent of  
*Ambrinus*, where they buried it with Regal  
Solemnity, close by *Aurelius Ambrosius*,  
within the the Giants Dance.



T H E



# British History.

## The Ninth Book.

### CHAP. I.

*Arthur succeeds Uther his Father  
in the Kingdom of Britain, and  
besieges Colgrin.*



**U**THER Pendragon being dead, the Nobility from several Provinces assembled together at Cilcestre, and proposed to *Dabrilus* Archbishop of *Legions*, that he should consecrate *Arthur*, *Uther's* Son, for their King. For they were now under great Straits, because upon hearing of the Kings Death, the

*Saxons* had invited over their Countrymen from *Germany*, and under the Command of *Colgrin*, were attempting to rout out the whole *British* Race. They had also entirely subdued all that Part of the Island which extends from the *Humber*, to the Sea of *Cathness*. *Dubricius* therefore grieving for the Calamities of his Country, did in Conjunction with the other Bishops set the Crown upon *Arthurs* Head. *Arthur* was then fifteen Years old, but a Youth of such unparalleled Courage and Generosity, joined with that Sweetness of Temper and innate Goodness, as gained him an universal Love. When his Coronation was over, he according to usual Custom shew'd his Bounty and Munificence to the People. And such a Number of Soldiers flocked to him upon it, that his Treasury was not able to answer that vast Expence. But such a Spirit of Generosity, joined with Valour, can never long want Means to support itself. *Arthur* therefore the better to keep up his Munificence, resolved to make use of his Courage, and to fall upon the *Saxons*, that he might enrich his Followers with their Wealth. To this he was also moved by the Justice of the Cause, since the entire Monarchy of *Britain* belonged to him by Hereditary Right. Hereupon assembling the Youth under his Command, he marched to *Tork*; of which when *Colgrin* had Intelligence, he met him with  
a very

a very great Army, composed of *Saxons*, *Scots*, and *Picts*, by the River *Douglas*; where a Battle happened, with the Loss of the greater Part of both Armies. Notwithstanding the Victory fell to *Arthur*, who pursued *Colgrin* to *York*, and there besieged him. *Baldulph* upon the News of his Brothers Flight, went towards the Siege with a Body of six thousand Men, to his Relief: For at the Time of the Battle he was upon the Sea-Coast, waiting the Arrival of Duke *Cheldric* with Succours from *Germany*. And being now no more than ten Miles distant from the City, his Purpose was to make a speedy March in the Night-Time, and fall upon the Enemy by Way of Surprise. But *Arthur* having Intelligence of his Design, sent out a Detachment of six hundred Horse, and three thousand Foot, under the Command of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal*, to meet him the same Night. *Cador* therefore falling into the same Road along which the Enemy was passing, made a sudden Assault upon them, and entirely defeated the *Saxons*, and put them to Flight. *Baldulph* was excessively grieved at this Disappointment in the Relief he intended his Brother, and began to think of some other Stratagem to gain Access to him; in which if he could but succeed, he thought they might concert Measures together for their Safety. And since he had no other Way for it, he shaved

his Head and Beard, and put on the Habit of a Jester with a Harp, and in this Disguise walked up and down in the Camp, playing upon his Instrument as if he had been a Harper. In this Disguise he passed unsuspected, and by little and little went up to the Walls of the City; where he was at last discovered by the Besieged, who thereupon drew him up with Cords, and conducted him to his Brother. At this unexpected, though much desired Meeting, they spent some Time in joyfully embracing each other; and then began to consider various Stratagems for their Delivery. At last, just as they were concluding their Case desperate, the Ambassadors returned from *Germany*, and had brought along with them to *Albania* a Fleet of six hundred Sail, laden with brave Soldiers, under the Command of *Cheldric*. Upon this News, *Arthur* was dissuaded by his Council from continuing the Siege any longer, for fear of hazarding a Battle with so potent and numerous an Army.



## C H A P.

## C H A P. II.

*Hoel sends fifteen thousand Men to  
Arthurs Assistance.*

**A**RTHUR comply'd with their Advice, and then made his Retreat to *London*, where he called together an Assembly of all the Clergy and Nobility of the Kingdom, to ask their Advice, what Course to take against such a formidable Power of the Pagans. After some Deliberation, it was agreed, that Ambassadors should be dispatched away into *Armorica*, to King *Hoel*, to represent to him the Calamitous State of *Britain*. *Hoel* was the Son of *Arthurs* Sister by *Dubricius* King of the *Armorican Britains*; so that upon Advice of the Disturbances his Uncle was threatned with, he ordered his Fleet to be got ready, and having assembled together fifteen thousand Men, he arrived with the first fair Wind at *Hamo's* Port; and was received with all suitable Honour by *Arthur*, and most affectionately embraced by him.



## C H A P. III.

*Arthur makes the Saxons his Tributaries.*

AFTER a few Days they go to the City *Kacrliudcoit*, that was besieged by the Pagans; which being situated upon a Mountain, between two Rivers in the Province of *Lindisa*, is called by another Name *Lindocolinum*. As soon as they arrived there with all their Forces, they fought with the *Saxons*, and made a grievous Slaughter of them, to the Number of six thousand; Part of whom were drowned in the Rivers, Part fell by the Hands of the *Britains*. The rest in a great Consternation quitted the Siege and fled, but were closely pursued by *Arthur*, till they came to the Wood of *Caledon*, where they endeavoured to form themselves into a Body again, and make a Stand. And here they again join Battle with the *Britains*, and make a brave Defence, the Trees that were in the Place securing them against the Enemies Arrows. *Arthur* seeing this, commanded the Trees that were in that Part of the Wood to be cut down, and the Trunks to be placed quite round them, so as to hinder their getting out; as resolving to keep them pent up  
here

here till he could reduce them by Famine. Which done, he commanded his Troops to besiege the Wood, and continued three Days in that Place. The Saxons having now no Provisions to sustain them, and being just ready to starve with Hunger, begged for Leave to go out; in Consideration whereof they offered to leave all their Gold and Silver behind them, and return back to *Germany* with nothing but their empty Ships. They promised also that they would pay him Tribute from *Germany*, and leave Hostages with him. *Arthur* after Consultation about it, granted their Petition; allowing them only Leave to depart, and retaining all their Treasures, as also Hostages for Payment of the Tribute. But as they were under Sail in their Return Home, they repented of their Bargain, and so tacked about to make again towards *Britain*, and went on Shore at *Totness*. And no sooner were they landed, than they made an utter Devastation of the Country as far as the *Severn* Sea, and put all the Peasants to the Sword. From thence they pursued their furious March to the Town of *Badon*, and laid Siege to it. When the King had Intelligence of it, he was beyond Measure surprized at their heinous Proceedings, and immediately gave Orders for the Execution of the Hostages. And desisting from an Attempt he had entred upon to reduce the  
*Scots*

*Scots and Picts*, he marched with the utmost Expedition to raise the Siege; but laboured under very great Difficulties, because he had left his Nephew *Hoel* sick at *Alclud*. At length having entered the Province of *Somerset*, and beheld how the Siege was carried on, he addressed himself to his Followers in these Words; "Since these most impious and detestable *Saxons*, have disdained to keep Faith with me, I, to keep Faith with God, will endeavour to revenge the Blood of my Countrymen this Day upon them. To Arms, Soldiers, to Arms, and courageously fall upon these perfidious Wretches; over whom we shall, with *Christ* assisting us, undoubtedly obtain the Victory.

#### CH A P. IV.

*Dubricius's Speech against the treacherous Saxons. Arthur with his own Hand kills four hundred and seventy Saxons in one Battle. Colgrin and Baldulph are killed in the same.*

**W**HEN he had done speaking, *St. Dubricius* Archbishop of *Leions*, getting upon the Top of a Hill, cry'd out with a loud

and Voice ; “ You that have the Honour to profess the *Christian* Faith, keep fixed in your Minds the Piety you owe your Country and Fellow Subjects, whose Sufferings by the Treachery of the Pagans, will be an everlasting Reproach to you, if you do not courageously defend them. ’Tis your Country you fight for, and for which you should when required voluntarily suffer Death : For that itself is Victory, and the Cure of the Soul. For he that shall die for his Brethren, offers himself a living Sacrifice to God, and has Christ for his Example, who condescended to lay down his Life for his Brethren. If therefore any of you shall be killed in this War, that Death itself which is suffered in so glorious a Cause, shall be to him for Penance and Absolution of all his Sins. ” At these Words, all of them, encouraged with the Benediction of the holy Relate, instantly armed themselves, and prepared to obey his Orders. Also *Arthur* himself having put on a Coat of Mail suitable to the Grandeur of so potent a King, put his golden Helmet upon his Head, on which was engraven the Figure of a Dragon ; and on his Shoulders his Shield called *Prüwen* ; on which the Picture of the blessed *Mary* Mother of God being drawn, put him frequently in Mind of her. Then girding on *Caliburn*, which was an excellent Sword made

made in the Isle of *Avallon*, he graced his right Hand with his Lance, named *Rondell*, which was hard, broad, and fit for Slabgater. After this having placed his Men in Order, he boldly attacked the *Saxons*, who were drawn out Wedge-wise, as their Manner was. And they, notwithstanding the *Britains* fought with great Eagerness, made a noble Defence all that Day; but at length towards Sun-setting, climb'd up the next Mountain, which served them for a Camp: For they desired no large Extent of Ground, since they confided so much in their Numbers. The next Morning *Arthur* with his Army goes up the Mountain, but lost many of his Men in the Ascent, by the Advantage the *Saxons* had in their Station on the Top, from whence they could pour down upon him with much greater speed, than he was able to advance against them. Notwithstanding after a very hard struggle the *Britains* gain the Summit of the Hill, and quickly come to an Engagement with the Enemy, who again gave them a warm Reception, and made a very vigorous Defence. In this March was a great Part of that Day also spent, which *Arthur*, provoked to see the little Advantage he had yet gained, and the Victory still continued in suspense, drew out his *Caliburn*, and calling upon the Name of the blessed Virgin, rushed forward with

great Violence into the thickest of the Enemies Ranks ; of whom (such was the Merit of his Prayers,) not one escaped alive that felt the Fury of his Sword ; neither did he give over the Fury of the Assault, before he had with his *Caliburn* alone killed four hundred and seventy Men. The Britains seeing this, follow their Leader in great crowds, and make Slaughter on all Sides ; that *Colgrin* and *Baldulph* his Brother, and many thousands more fell before them. But *Cheldric*, upon this imminent Danger of his Men, betook himself to Flight.

## CHAP. V.

The Saxons, after their Leader *Cheldric* was killed, are all compelled by *Cador* to surrender.

THE Victory being thus gained, the King commanded *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal* to pursue them, while he himself would hasten his March into *Albania* ; from whence he had Advice, that the *Scots* and *Picts* were besieging *Alclud*, in which, as we said before, *Hoel* lay sick. Therefore he hastened to his Assistance, for Fear he might fall into the Hands of the Barbarians. In the mean Time the Duke of *Cornwal*, who

who had the Command of ten thousand Men, would not as yet pursue the Saxons in their Flight, but speedily made himself Master of their Ships, to hinder their getting on board them, and manned them with his best Soldiers, who were to beat back the Pagans in Case they should fly to them. This done, he according to *Arthurs* Command, hastily pursued the Enemy, and allowed no Quarter to those he could overtake. So that they whose Behaviour before was so cruel and insolent, do now with timorous Hearts fly for Shelter, sometimes to the Coverts of the Woods, sometimes to Mountains and Caves, to prolong a wretched Life. At last when none of these Places could afford them a safe Retreat, they enter the Isle of *Thanet* with their broken Forces; but neither do they there get free from the Duke of *Cornwall's* Pursuit, who still continued the Slaughter of them, and gave them no Respite till he had killed *Cheladric*, and taken Hostages for the Surrender of the rest.



## C H A P. VI.

*Arthur grants a Pardon to the Scots  
and Picts, besieged at the Lake  
Lumond.*

HAVING therefore settled Peace here, he directed his March to *Alclud*, which *Arthur* had relieved from the Oppression of Barbarians, and from thence conducted his Army to *Mureif*, where the *Scots* and *Picts* were besieged; who after three several Battles with the King and his Nephew, had fled as far as this Province, and entering upon the Lake *Lumond*, sought for Refuge in the Islands that are upon it. This Lake contains sixty Islands, and receives sixty Rivers into it, which empty themselves into the Sea by no more than one Mouth. Equal to the Number of the Islands, is that of the Rocks in them, as also of the Eagles Nests in those Rocks, who flocked together there every Year, and by the loud and general Noise they made, foreboded some remarkable Event that should happen in the Kingdom. To these Islands therefore had the Enemy fled, thinking the Lake would serve them instead of a Fortification, but it proved of little Advantage to them. For *Arthur* having got together

gether a Fleet, sailed round the Rivers, and besieged the Enemy fifteen Days together, by which they were so straitned with Hunger, that they died by thousands. While he was infesting them in this Manner, *Guillamurius* King of *Ireland*, came up in a Fleet with a very great Army of Barbarians, in order to relieve the Besieged. This obliged *Arthur* to raise the Siege, and turn his Arms against the *Irish*, whom he slew without Mercy, and compelled the rest to return back to their Country. After this Victory, he proceeded in his first Attempt, which was to extirpate the whole Race of the *Scots* and *Picts*, and treated them with an unparallelled Severity. And as he allow'd Quarter to none he found, therefore the Bishops of that miserable Country, with all the inferior Clergy, met together, and bearing the Reliques of the Saints, and other Consecrated Things of the Church before them, bare-footed, they went to implore the Kings Mercy for their People. As soon as they were admitted into his Presence, they fell down upon their Knees, and humbly besought him to have Pity on their distressed Country, since the Sufferings he had already made it undergo, were sufficient; nor was there any Necessity to cut off the small Remainder to a Man; and that he would allow them the Enjoyment of a small Part of the Country, since they were willing

ling to bear the Yoke he should impose upon them. The King was moved at the Manner of their delivering this Petition, and could not forbear expressing his Clemency to them with Tears; and at the Request of those Holy Men, granted them Pardon.

## C H A P. VII.

*Arthur relates the wonderful Nature of some Ponds.*

THIS Affair being concluded, *Hoel* had the Curiosity to view the Situation of the Lake, and wondred to find the Number of the Rivers, Islands, Rocks, and Eagles Nests, so exactly correspond: And while he was reflecting upon it as something that appeared miraculous, *Arthur* came to him, and told him of another Pond in the same Province, which was yet more wonderful. For not far from thence was one whose Length and Breadth were each twenty Foot, and Depth five Foot. But whether its square Figure was Natural or Artificial, the Thing that was admirable in it, was the four different Sorts of Fishes in the four several Corners of it, none of which were ever found in any other Part of the Pond but their own. He told him like-

T

wise

wise of another Pond in *Wales*, near the *Severn*, called by the Country People *Lingwan*, into which when the Sea flows, it receives it in manner of a Gulph, but so as to swallow up the Tide, and never be filled, or have its Banks covered by it. But at the Ebbing of the Sea, it belches out the Waters it had swallowed up, as high as a Mountain, and at last dashes and covers the Banks with them. In the mean Time, if all the People of that Country should stand near with their Faces towards it, and happen to have their Clothes sprinkled with the dashing of the Waves, they would hardly, if at all, escape being swallowed up of the Pond. But with their Backs towards it, they need not fear being dashed, though they stood upon the very Banks.

---

### C H A P. VIII.

*Arthur restores York to its ancient Beauty, especially as to its Churches.*

**T**H E King after his general Pardon granted to the *Scots*, went to *York* to celebrate the Feast of Christs Nativity, which was now at Hand. At his entring the City, he beheld with Grief the Desolation of the Churches ;

Churches; for upon the Expulsion of the Holy Archbishop *Sanxo*, and of all the Clergy there, the Temples which were half burnt down, had no longer Divine Service performed in them: So much had the impious Rage of the Pagans prevailed. After this, in an Assembly which he called of the Clergy and People, he appointed *Pyramus* his Chaplain Metropolitan of that See. The Churches that lay level with the Ground, he rebuilt, and which was their chief Ornament, saw them filled with Assemblies of devout Persons of both Sexes. Also the Nobility that were driven out by the Disturbances of the *Saxons*, he restored to the Honours of their Country.

## CHAP. IX.

*Arthur honours Augusel with the Sceptre of the Scots; Urian with that of Mureif; and Lot with the Consulship of Londonesia.*

**T**HERE were there three Brothers of Royal Blood, *viz. Lot, Urian, and Augusel*, who before the *Saxons* had prevailed, held the Government of those Parts. Being willing therefore to bestow on these, as he did

on others, the Rights of their Ancestors, he restored to *Augustel* the Sovereignty over the *Scots*; his Brother *Urian* he honoured with the Sceptre of *Mureif*; and *Lot*, who in the Time of *Aurelius Ambrosius* had married his Sister, by whom he had two Sons, *Walgan* and *Modred*, he re-established in the Consulship of *Londonesia*, and the other Provinces belonging to him. At length when the whole Country was reduced by him to its ancient State, he took to Wife *Guanhumara*, descended from a Noble Family of *Romans*, who was educated under Duke *Cador*, and in Beauty surpassed all the Women of the Island.

---

C H A P. X.

Arthur adds to his Government  
Ireland, Ifeland, Godland, and  
the Orkneys.

THE next Summer he fitted out a Fleet, and made an Expedition into *Ireland*, which he was desirous to reduce. Upon his landing there, he was met by King *Guillamurius* before mentioned, with a vast Number of Men, who came with a Design to fight him; but at the very Beginning of the Battle, those naked and unarmed People being

being miserably disperſed and routed, quickly fled to ſuch Places as lay open to them for ſhelter. *Guillamarius* alſo in a ſhort Time was taken Priſoner, and forced to ſubmit; as were alſo all the other Princes of the Country after the Kings Example, being under great Conſternation for what had happened. After an entire Conqueſt of all the Parts of *Ireland*, he made a Voyage with his Fleet to *Iſeland*, which he alſo ſubdued. And now a Rumour ſpreading over the reſt of the Iſlands, that no Country was able to withſtand him, *Doldarius* King of *Godland*, and *Gunſafius* King of the *Orkneys*, came voluntarily, and made their Submiſſion, with a Promise of paying Tribute. Then as ſoon as Winter was over, he returned back to *Britain*, where eſtabliſhing the Kingdom in a firm State of Peace, he reſided in it for twelve Years together.

---

## C H A P. XI.

*Arthur ſubdues Norway, Dacia,  
Aquitain, and Gaul.*

**A**FTER this, having invited over to him all Perſons whatſoever that were Famous for Valour in Foreign Nations, he began to augment the Number of his

T 3      Domesticks,

Domesticks, and introduced such Politeness into his Court, as People of the remotest Countries thought worthy their Imitation. So that there was not a Nobleman who thought himself of any Consideration, unless his Clothes and Arms were made in the same Fashion as those of *Arthurs* Knights. At length the Fame of his Munificence and Valour spreading over the whole World, he became a Terror to the Kings of other Countries, who grievously feared the Loss of their Dominions, if he should make any Attempt upon them. Being much perplexed with these anxious Cares, they repaired their Cities and Towers, and built Towns in convenient Places, the better to fortify themselves against any Enterprize of *Arthur*, when Occasion should require. *Arthur* upon Information of the Dispositions they were making, was delighted to find how much they stood in Awe of him, and formed a Design for the Conquest of all *Europe*. Then having prepared his Fleet, the first Place he attempted was *Norway*, that he might procure the Crown of it for *Lot* his Sisters Husband. This *Lot* was the Nephew of *Sichelin*, King of the *Norwegians*, who being then dead, had appointed him his Successor in the Kingdom. But the *Norwegians* disdaining to receive him, had advanced one *Riculf* to the Sovereignty, and having fortified their Cities, thought they were able to oppose

oppose *Arthur*. *Walgan* the Son of *Lot*, was then a Youth twelve Years old, and was recommended by his Uncle to the Service of Pope *Suplicius*, from whom he received Arms. But to return to the Story; as soon as *Arthur* arrived at the Coast of *Norway*, King *Riculf* attended with the whole Power of that Kingdom met him, and gave him Battle, in which after a great Loss of Blood on both Sides, the *Britains* at length had the Advantage, who making a vigorous Push, killed *Riculf* and many others with him. Having thus defeated them, they set the Cities on Fire, dispersed the Country People, and pursued the Victory till they had reduced all *Norway*, as also *Dacia*, under the Dominion of *Arthur*. After the Conquest of these Countries, and Establishment of *Lot* upon the Throne of *Norway*, *Arthur* made a Voyage to *Gaul*, and dividing his Army into several Bodies, began to lay waste that Country on all Sides. The Province of *Gaul* was then committed to *Floilo*, a Roman Tribune, who held the Government of it under the Emperor *Leo*. Upon Intelligence of *Arthurs* coming, he raised all the Forces that were under his Command, and made War against him, but without Success. For *Arthur* was attended with the Youth of all the Islands he had subdued; for which Reason he was reported to have such an Army as was thought

invincible. And even the greater Part of the *Gallican* Army, being encouraged by his Bounty, came over to his Service. Therefore *Flollo* seeing the Disadvantages he lay under, left his Camp, and fled with a small Number to *Paris*. There having recruited his Army, he fortified the City, and resolved to stand another Engagement with *Arthur*. But while he was thinking of strengthening himself with Auxiliary Forces in the neighbouring Countries, *Arthur* came upon him unawares, and besieged him in the City. A Month was now past, when *Flollo* with Grief observing his People perish with Hunger, sent a Message to *Arthur*, that they two alone should decide the Contest for the Kingdom in a Duel: For being a Person of great Stature, Boldness and Courage, he gave this Challenge in great Confidence of Success. *Arthur* was extremely pleased at *Flollo's* Proposal, and sent him Word back again, that he would give him the Meeting he desired. A Treaty therefore being on both Sides agreed to, they met together in the Island without the City, where the People waited to see the Event. They were both gracefully Armed, and mounted on admirable swift Horses; and it was hard to tell which gave greater Hopes of Victory. When they had presented themselves against each other with their Lances bore aloft, they forthwith put Spurs to their Horses, and

and began a fierce Encounter. But *Arthur* who handled his Lance more warily, struck it into the upper Part of *Flollo's* Breast, and avoiding his Weapon, with all his Might laid him prostrate upon the Ground, and was just going to dispatch him with his drawn Sword. But *Flollo* starting up on a sudden, met him with his Lance couched, wherewith he mortally stabbed the Breast of *Arthurs* Horse, and caused both him and his Rider to fall. The *Britains* when they saw their King lying prostrate on the Ground, fearing he was killed, could hardly be restrained from Breach of Covenant, and falling with one Consent upon the *Gauls*. But just as they were upon rushing into the Lists, *Arthur* hastily got up, and guarding himself with his Shield, advanced with Speed against *Flollo*. And now they renew the Assault with great Rage, being eagerly bent upon one anothers Destruction. At length *Flollo* watching his Advantage, gave *Arthur* a Blow upon the Forehead, which might have proved mortal, had he not blunted the Edge of his Weapon, by striking it against the Helmet. When *Arthur* saw his Coat of Mail and Shield all red with the Blood gushing out, he was inflamed with still greater Rage, and lifting up his *Caliburn* with his utmost Strength, struck it quite through the Helmet into *Flollo's* Head, in which he made a terrible Gash. With  
this

this Wound *Floilo* fell down, beat the Ground with his Spurs, and expired. As soon as this was noised through the Army, the Citizens ran together, and opening the Gates, surrendered the City to *Arthur*. After the Victory, he divided his Army into two Parts, one of which he committed to the Conduct of *Hoel*, whom he ordered to march against *Guitard*, Commander of the *Pictavians*; while he with the other Part should endeavour to reduce the other Provinces. *Hoel* upon this entred *Aquitain*, possessed himself of the Cities of that Country, and after distressing *Guitard* in several Battles, forced him to surrender. He also destroy'd *Gascony* with Fire and Sword, and subdued the Princes of it. At the End of nine Years, in which Time all the Parts of *Gaul* were entirely reduced, *Arthur* returned back to *Paris*, where he kept his Court, and calling an Assembly of the Clergy and People, settled Peace and Administration of the Laws in that Kingdom. Then he bestowed *Neustria*, now called *Normandy*, upon *Bedver* his Butler; the Province of *Andegavia* upon *Caius* his Sewer, and several other Provinces upon his great Men that attended him. Thus having settled the Peace of the Cities and Countries there, he returned back in the Beginning of the Spring to *Britain*.

## C H A P. XII.

*Arthur summons a great many Kings, Princes, Archbishops, &c. to a Solemn Assembly at the City of Legions.*

**U**PON the Approach of the Feast of Pentecost, *Arthur*, the better to demonstrate his Joy after such triumphant Success, and for the more solemn Observation of that Festival, and reconciling the Minds of the Princes that were now subject to him, resolved during that Season, to hold a magnificent Court, to place the Crown upon his Head, and to invite all the Kings and Dukes under his Subjection, to the Solemnity. And when he had communicated his Design to his familiar Friends, he pitched upon the City of *Legions* as a proper Place for his Purpose. For besides the great Wealth of it above the other Cities, its Situation, which was in *Glamorganshire* upon the River *Uske* near the *Severn* Sea, was most pleasant, and fit for so great a Solemnity. For on one Side it was washed by that noble River, so that the Kings and Princes from the Countries beyond the Seas, might have the Convenience of sailing up to it. On the other Side the Beauty of the Meadows

Meadows and Groves, and Magnificence of the Royal Palaces with lofty gilded Roofs that adorned it, made it even rival the Grandeur of *Rome*. It was also famous for two Churches, whereof one was built in Honour of the Martyr *Julius*, and adorned with a Choir of Virgins, who had devoted themselves wholly to the Service of God ; but the other, which was founded in Memory of *St. Aaron* his Companion, and maintained a Convent of Canons, was the third Metropolitan Church of *Britain*. Besides there was a College of two hundred Philosophers, who being learned in Astronomy and the other Arts, were diligent in observing the Courses of the Stars, and gave *Arthur* true Predictions of the Events that would happen at that Time. In this Place therefore affording such Plenty of Delights, were Preparations made for the ensuing Festival. Then Ambassadors were sent away into several Kingdoms, to invite to Court the Princes both of *Gaul* and all the adjacent Islands. Accordingly there came *Augusel* King of *Albania*, now *Scotland* ; *Urian* King of *Mureif* ; *Cadwallo* *Lewirh* King of the *Venedotians*, now called the *North-Wales Men* ; *Sater* King of the *Demetians*, or *South-Wales Men* ; *Cador* King of *Cornwal* ; also the Archbishops of the three Metropolitan Sees, *London*, *York*, and *Dubricius* of the City of *Legions*. This Prelate, who was

was Primate of *Britain*, and Legate of the Apostolical See, was so eminent for his Piety, that by his Prayers he could cure any sick Person. There came also the Consuls of the principal Cities, viz. *Morvid* Consul of *Glocester*, *Mauron* of *Worcester*, *Anaraut* of *Salisbury*, *Arthgal* of *Cargueit* or *Warguit*, *Jugein* of *Leicester*, *Cursalen* of *Kaicester*, *Kinmare* Duke of *Dorobernia*, *Galluc* of *Salisbury*, *Urgennius* of *Badon*, *Jonathal* of *Dorchester*, *Bofo* of *Ridoc*, that is, *Oxford*. Besides the Consuls, came the following Worthies of no less Dignity; *Danaut*, *Map papo*; *Cheneus*, *Map coil*; *Peredur*, *Mab eridur*; *Guiful*, *Map Nogoit*; *Regin*, *Map claut*; *Eddelein*, *Map cledauc*, *Kincar*, *Mab bagan*; *Kimmare*; *Gorboroniam*, *Map goit*; *Clofaut*, *Rupmaneton*; *Kimbelim*, *Map trunat*; *Cathleus*, *Mapcatel*; *Kinlich*, *Map neton*; and many others too tedious to enumerate. From the adjacent Islands came *Guillamurius* King of *Ireland*, *Malvasius* King of *Iseland*, *Doldarius* King of *Godland*, *Gunfasius* King of the *Orkneys*, *Lot* King of *Norway*, *Aschillius* King of the *Dacians*. From the Parts beyond the Seas, came *Holdin* King of *Ruteni*, *Leodegarius* Consul of *Bolonia*, *Bedver* the Butler Duke of *Normandy*, *Borellus* of *Cenomania*, *Cains* the Sewer Duke of *Andegavia*, *Guitard* of *Pistavia*; also the twelve Peers of *Gaul*, whom *Gaerinus Carnotensis* brought along with him: *Hoel* Duke of the *Armorican Britains*,

sains, and his Nobility, who came with such a Train of Mules, Horses, and rich Furniture, as is hard to describe. Besides these, there remained no Prince of any Consideration on this Side of *Spain*, who came not upon this Invitation. And no Wonder, when *Arthurs* Munificence, which was celebrated over the whole World, made him beloved by all People.

### C H A P. XIII.

#### *A Description of the Royal Pomp at the Coronation of Arthur.*

WHEN all were assembled together in the City, upon the Day of the Solemnity the Archbishops were conducted to the Palace, in Order to place the Crown upon the Kings Head. Therefore *Dubricius*, in Regard the Court was kept in his Diocess, made himself ready to celebrate the Office, and undertook the Ordering of whatever related to it. As soon as the King was invested with his royal Habiliments, he was conducted in great Pomp to the Metropolitan Church, being supported on each Side by two Archbishops, and having four Kings, viz. of *Albania*, *Cornwal*, *Demetia*, and *Venedotia*, whose Right it was, bearing four Golden

Golden Swords before him. He was also attended with a Consort of all sorts of Musick, which made most excellent Harmony. From another Part was the Queen, being dressed out in her richest Ornaments, conducted by the Archbishops and Bishops to the Temple of Virgins; the four Queens also of the Kings last mentioned, bearing before her four white Doves according to ancient Custom; and after her there followed a Retinue of Women, giving all imaginable Demonstrations of Joy. When the whole Procession was ended, so transporting was the Harmony of the musical Instruments and Voices, whereof there was a vast variety in both Churches, that the Knights who attended were in Suspence which to prefer, and therefore crowded from the one to the other by Turns, and were far from being tired with the Solemnity, though the whole Day had been spent in it. At last when Divine Service was over at both Churches, the King and Queen put off their Crowns, and putting on their lighter Ornaments, go to the Banquet; he to one Palace with the Men, and she to another with the Women. For the *Britains* still observing the ancient Custom of *Troy*, the Men and Women used to celebrate their Festivals apart. When they had all taken their Seats according to their Precedence, *Cains* the Sewer, in rich Robes of Ermine, with

with a thousand young Noblemen, all in like manner clothed with Ermine, served up the Dishes. From another Part, *Bedover* the Butler was followed with the same Number of Attendants, in Variety of Habits, who waited with all Kinds of Cups and drinking Vessels. In the Queens Palace were innumerable Waiters, dressed with Variety of Ornaments, all performing their respective Offices; which if I should describe particularly, I should draw out the History to a tedious Length. For at that Time *Britain* was arrived to such a Pitch of Grandeur, that whether we respect its Affluence of Riches, Luxury of Ornaments, or Politeness of Inhabitants, it far surpassed all other Kingdoms. The Knights in it that were famous for Feats of Chivalry, wore their Clothes and Arms all of the same Colour and Fashion: And the Women also no less celebrated for their Wit, wore all the same Kind of Apparel; and esteemed none worthy of their Love, but such as had given a Proof of their Valour in three several Battles. Thus was the Valour of the Men an Encouragement for the Womens Chastity, and the Love of the Women a Spur to the Soldiers Bravery.



C H A P.

## C H A P. XIV.

*After a Variety of Sports at the Coronation, Arthur most amply rewards his Servants.*

AS soon as the Banquets were over, they went into the Fields without the City, to divert themselves with various Kinds of Sports. The military Men composed a Kind of Diversion in Imitation of a Fight on Horseback; and the Ladies being placed on the Top of the Walls as Spectators, in a sportive Manner darted their amorous Glances at the Courtiers, the more to encourage them. Others spent the Remainder of the Day in other Diversions, as shooting with Bows and Arrows, tossing the Pike, casting of heavy Stones and Rocks, Playing at Dice and the like, and all these inoffensively and without quarrelling. Whoever gained the Victory in any of these Sports, was rewarded with a rich Prize by *Arthur*. In this Manner were the first three Days spent, and on the fourth all that upon Account of their Titles, bore any Kind of Office at this Solemnity, were called together to receive Honours and Preferments in Reward of their Services, and to fill up the Vacancies in the Governments of Cities and  
U Castles,

Castles, Archbishopricks, Bishopricks, Abbeys, and other Posts of Honour.

### C H A P. XV.

*A Letter from Lucius Tiberius, General of the Romans, to Arthur being read, they consult about an Answer to it.*

**B**UT St. Dubricius out of a pious Desire of leading a Hermits Life, made a voluntary Resignation of his Archiepiscopal Dignity; and in his Room was Consecrated David the Kings Unkle, whose Life was a perfect Example of that Goodness which by his Doctrine he taught. In the Place of St. Samson Archbishop of Dole, was appointed Chelianus a famous Priest of Landaff, with the Consent of Hoel King of the Armorican Britains, this Person being highly recommended for his good Life and Character. The Bishoprick of Silcestre was conferred upon Mauganius, that of Winchester upon Diwanus, and that of Alclud upon Eledanius. While he was disposing of these Preferments among them, it happened that twelve Men of an advanced Age, and venerable Aspect, and bearing Olive Branches in their  
Right

Right Hands, for a Token that they were come upon an Embassy, made their Entry to the King, moving towards him with a slow Pace, and speaking with a soft Voice; and after their Complements paid, presented him with a Letter from *Lucius Tiberius*, in these Words.

“*Lucius*, Procurator of the Common-  
 “wealth, to *Arthur* King of *Britain*; ac-  
 “cording to his Desert. The Insolence of  
 “your Tyranny is what fills me with the  
 “highest Admiration; and the Injuries you  
 “have done to *Rome*, still increase my  
 “Wonder. But it is provoking to reflect,  
 “that you are grown so much above your-  
 “self, as wilfully to avoid seeing this; nor  
 “do you consider what it is to have offend-  
 “ed by unjust Deeds a Senate, to whom  
 “you cannot be ignorant the whole World  
 “owes Vassalage. For the Tribute of *Brit-  
 “tain*, which the Senate had enjoined you  
 “to pay, and which used to be paid to the  
 “*Roman* Emperors successively from the  
 “Time of *Julius Caesar*, you have had the  
 “Presumption to detain in Contempt of  
 “their Imperial Authority. You have  
 “seized upon the Province of the *Allobroges*,  
 “and all the Islands of the Ocean, whole  
 “Kings, while the *Roman* Power prevail-  
 “ed in those Parts, paid Tribute to our  
 “Ancestors. And because the Senate have

“ decreed to demand Justice of you for such  
“ repeated Injuries, I command you to ap-  
“ pear at *Rome* before the Middle of *August*  
“ the next Year, there to make Satisfaction  
“ to your Masters, and undergo such Sen-  
“ tence as they shall in Justice pass upon  
“ you. Which if you refuse to do, I shall  
“ come to you, and endeavour to recover  
“ with my Sword, what you in your Mad-  
“ nefs have robbed us of.

As soon as the Letter was read in the Pre-  
sence of the Kings and Consuls, *Arthur* with-  
drew with them into the Giants Tower,  
which was at the Entrance of the Palace,  
to treat of such an Answer as was fit to be  
returned to such an insolent Message. As they  
were going up the Stairs, *Cador* Duke of  
*Cornwal*, who was a Man of a merry Dis-  
position, said to the King in a jocular Man-  
ner; “ I have been till now under Fear, lest  
“ the easy Life the *Britains* lead, by enjoy-  
“ ing a long Peace, might make them Cow-  
“ ards, and extinguish the Fame of their  
“ Gallantry, by which they have raised  
“ their Name above all other Nations. For  
“ where the Exercise of Arms is wanting,  
“ and the Pleasures of Women, Dice, and  
“ other Diversions take Place, no Doubt  
“ the Remains of Vertue, Honour, Courage,  
“ and Thirst of Praise, will be stained with  
“ the Rust of Idleness. For now almost five  
“ Years

“ Years have passed, since we have been  
 “ abandoned to these Delights, and have  
 “ had no Exercise of War. Therefore to  
 “ deliver us from Sloth, God has stirred up  
 “ this Spirit of the *Romans*, who are to re-  
 “ store our Military Virtues to their ancient  
 “ State.” In this Manner did he enter-  
 tain them with Discourse, till they were  
 come to their Seats, on which when they  
 were all placed, *Arthur* spoke to them after  
 this manner.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Arthur holding a Council with the  
 Kings, desires every one of them  
 to deliver their Opinions.*

“ MY Companions both in good and  
 “ bad Fortune, whose Abilities  
 “ both in Counsel and War I have hitherto  
 “ experienced; the present Exigence of Af-  
 “ fairs, after the Message we have received,  
 “ requires your careful Deliberation and  
 “ prudent Resolutions: For whatever is  
 “ wisely concerted, is easily executed.  
 “ Therefore we shall be the better able to  
 “ bear the Disturbance *Lucius* threatens to  
 “ give us, if we unanimously apply our  
 U 3      “ selves

“ selves to consider well how to lessen it.  
“ In my Opinion we have no great Reason  
“ to fear him, when we reflect upon the  
“ unjust Pretence he makes for demanding  
“ Tribute of us. He says he has a Right  
“ to it, because it was paid to *Julius Caesar*,  
“ and his Successors, who invaded *Britain*  
“ with an Army at the Invitation of the  
“ ancient *Britains*, upon their quarrelling  
“ among themselves, and by Force reduced  
“ the Country under their Power, when  
“ weakned by civil Dissension. And be-  
“ cause they gained it in this Manner, they  
“ had the Injustice to take Tribute of it.  
“ For that can never be possessed justly,  
“ which is gained by Force and Violence.  
“ So that he has no reasonable Grounds to  
“ pretend we are of Right his Tributaries.  
“ But since he has the Presumption to make  
“ an unjust Demand of us, we have cer-  
“ tainly as good Reason to demand of him  
“ the Tribute of *Rome*; and let the longer  
“ Sword determine the Right of the Cause  
“ between us. For if *Rome* has decreed that  
“ Tribute ought to be paid to it from *Brit-*  
“ *tain*, on Account of its having been for-  
“ merly under the Yoke of *Julius Caesar*, and  
“ other *Roman* Emperors: I for the same  
“ Reason now decree, that *Rome* ought to  
“ pay Tribute to me, because my Prede-  
“ cessors formerly held the Government of  
“ it. For *Belinus*, that most glorious King  
“ of

“ of the *Britains*, with the Assistance of his  
 “ Brother *Brennus*, Duke of the *Allobroges*,  
 “ after they had hanged up twenty Noble  
 “ *Romans* in the Middle of the Market-  
 “ Place, took their City, and kept Possessi-  
 “ on of it a long Time. Likewise *Constan-*  
 “ *tine* the Son of *Helena*, as also *Maximian*,  
 “ who were both near of Blood to me, and  
 “ both wore the Crown of *Britain*, gained  
 “ the Imperial Throne of *Rome*. Do not  
 “ you therefore think that we ought to de-  
 “ mand Tribute of the *Romans*? As for  
 “ *Gaul* and the adjacent Islands of the  
 “ Ocean, we have no occasion to return  
 “ them any Answer, since they avoided  
 “ defending them, when we attempted to  
 “ free them from under their Power.” As  
 soon as he had done speaking to this Effect,  
*Hoel* King of the *Armorican Britains*, who  
 had the Precedence of all the rest, made  
 Answer in these Words.

---

## C H A P. XVII.

*The Opinion of Hoel King of Armo-*  
*rica concerning a War with the*  
*Romans.*

“ **A**FTER the most profound Deli-  
 “ beration that any of us shall be  
 “ able to make, I think better Advice can-

“ not be given, than what your Majesty in  
“ your great Wisdom and Policy now of-  
“ fers. Your Speech, which was adorned  
“ with no less Wisdom than Eloquence,  
“ has superseded all Consultation on our  
“ Part; and nothing remains for us to do,  
“ but to admire and gratefully acknow-  
“ ledge your Majesty’s Firmness of Mind,  
“ and Depth of Policy to which we owe  
“ such excellent Advice. For if upon this  
“ Motive you are pleased to make an Ex-  
“ pediton to *Rome*, I doubt not but it will  
“ be crowned with glorious Success; since  
“ it will be undertaken for the Defence of  
“ our Liberties, and demanding justly of  
“ our Enemies, what they have unjustly  
“ demanded of us. For that Person that  
“ would rob another, deserves to lose his  
“ own by him against whom the Attempt  
“ is made. And therefore since the *Romans*  
“ threatned us with this Injury, it will un-  
“ doubtedly turn to their own Loss; if we  
“ can have but an Opportunity of engag-  
“ ing with them. This is what the *Britains*  
“ universally desire: This is what we  
“ have promised us in the *Sibylline* Prophe-  
“ cies, which expressly declare, that the  
“ *Roman* Empire shall be obtained by three  
“ Persons Natives of *Britain*. The Oracle  
“ is fulfilled in two of them, since it is ma-  
“ nifest (as your Majesty observed) that  
“ those two celebrated Princes, *Belinus* and  
“ *Constantine*,

“ *Constantine*, governed the *Roman Empire*:  
 “ And now you are the third to whom this  
 “ supreme Dignity is promised. Make  
 “ haste therefore to receive what God makes  
 “ no delay to give you; to subdue those  
 “ who are ready to receive your Yoke;  
 “ and to advance us all, who for your Ad-  
 “ vancement will spare neither Limbs nor  
 “ Life. And that you may accomplish this,  
 “ I my self will attend you in Person with  
 “ ten thousand Men.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*The Opinion of Augufel.*

W H E N *Hoel* concluded his Speech,  
*Augufel* King of *Albania* declared his  
 good Affection for the Cause after this Man-  
 ner. “ I am not able to express the Joy  
 “ that has transported me, since my Lord  
 “ has declared to us his Designs. For we  
 “ seem to have done nothing by all our  
 “ past Wars with so many and potent  
 “ Princes, if the *Romans* and *Germans* be  
 “ suffered to enjoy Peace, and we not se-  
 “ verely revenge on them the grievous Op-  
 “ pressions they formerly brought upon this  
 “ Country. But now since we are at Li-  
 “ berty to encounter them, I am even  
 “ over-

“ overwhelmed with Joy and Eagerness, of  
“ Desire, to see a Battle with them; When  
“ the Blood of those cruel Oppressors will  
“ be no less acceptable to me, than a Spring  
“ of Water is to one that is parched with  
“ Thirst. If I shall but live to see that  
“ Day, how sweet will be the Wounds  
“ which I shall then either receive or give?  
“ Nay, how sweet even Death itself, when  
“ suffered in revenging the Injuries done to  
“ our Ancestors, in defending our Liberties,  
“ and in promoting the Glory of our King?  
“ Let us then begin with these Poltrons,  
“ and spoil them of all their Trophies, by  
“ making an entire Conquest of them. And  
“ I for my share will add to the Army  
“ two thousand Horse, besides Foot.

---

C H A P. XIX.

*They unanimously agree upon a War  
with the Romans.*

**T**O the same Effect spoke all the rest,  
and promised each of them their  
full Quota of Forces: So that besides those  
promised by the Duke of *Armorica*, the Num-  
ber of Men from the Island of *Britain* alone  
was sixty thousand, all compleatly armed. But  
the Kings of the other Islands, as they had  
not

not been accustomed to any Cavalry, promised their Quota of Infantry; and from the six provincial Islands, viz. *Ireland, Iseland, Godland, the Orkneys, Norway, and Dacia*, were reckoned a hundred and twenty thousand. From the Dutchies of *Gaul*, that is, of the *Ruteni*, the *Portunians*, the *Estrusians*, the *Cenomanni*, the *Andegavians*, and *Pictavians*, were eighty thousand. From the twelve Consulships of those who came along with *Guerinus Carnotensis*, twelve hundred. All together made up an hundred eighty three thousand and two hundred, besides Foot which did not easily fall under Number.

## C H A P. XX.

*Arthur prepares for a War, and refuses to pay Tribute to the Romans.*

**K**ING *Arthur* seeing all unanimously ready for his Service, ordered them to return back to their Countries with speed, and get ready the Forces they had promised, and to hasten to the general Rendezvous upon the Kalends of *August*, at the Mouth of the River *Barba*, that from thence they might advance with them to the Borders of the *Allobroges*, to meet the *Romans*. Then he sent

sent Word back to the Emperors by their Ambassadors; that as to the paying them Tribute he would in no wise obey their Command, and that the Journey he was about to make to *Rome*, was not to stand the Award of their Sentence, but to demand of them, what they had judicially decreed to demand of him. With this Answer the Ambassadors depart: And at the same Time also depart all the Kings and Noblemen, to perform with all Expedition the Orders that had been given them.



THE



THE  
British History.

The Tenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Lucius Tiberius *calls together the Eastern Kings against the Britains.*



LUCIUS TIBERIUS, upon Receipt of this Answer, by Order of the Senate published a Decree, for the Eastern Kings to come with their Forces, and assist in the Conquest of Britain. In Obedience to which there came in a very short Time, *Epistrophius* King of the Grecians, *Mustensar* King of the Africans, *Alifantinam* King of Spain, *Hirtacius* King

King of the Parthians, Bocchus of the Medes, Sertorius of Libya, Teucer King of Phrygia, Serfes King of the Itureans, Pandrasus King of Egypt, Micipsa King of Babylon, Polytetes Duke of Bithynia, Teucer Duke of Phrygia, Evander of Syria, Aethion of Boeotia, Hippolytus of Crete, with the Generals and Nobility under them. Of the Senatorian Order also came, Lucius Catellus, Marius Lepidus, Caius Metellus Cotta, Quintus Milvius Catulus, Quintus Carutius, and as many others as made up the Number of forty thousand one hundred and sixty.

## CHAP. II.

*Arthur commits to his Nephew, Modred the Government of Britain. His Dream at Hamo's Port.*

**A**FTER the necessary Dispositions were made, upon the Kalends of *August* they begin their March towards *Britain*: Which when *Arthur* had Intelligence of, he committed the Government of the Kingdom to his Nephew *Modred* and Queen *Ganhumara*, and marched with his Army to *Hamo's Port*, where the Wind stood fair for him. But while he, surrounded with all his numerous Fleet, was sailing joyfully

joyfully with a brisk Gale, it happened that about Midnight he fell into a very sound Sleep, and in a Dream saw a Bear flying in the Air, at the Noise of which all the Shores trembled : Also a terrible Dragon flying from the West, which enlightened the Country with the Brightness of its Eyes. When these two met they began a dreadful Fight ; but the Dragon with its fiery Breath burnt the Bear which often assaulted him, and threw him down scorched to the Ground. *Arthur* upon this awaking, related his Dream to those that attended about him, who took upon them to interpret it, and told him ; That the Dragon signified himself, but the Bear some Giant that should encounter with him : And that the Fight portended the Duel that would be between them, and the Dragons Victory the same that would happen to himself. But *Arthur* conjectured it portended something else, and that the Vision was applicable to himself and the Emperor. As soon as the Morning after this Nights Sail appeared, they found themselves arrived at the Mouth of the River *Barba*. And there they pitched their Tents, to wait the Arrival of the Kings of the Islands, and the Generals of the other Provinces.

## C H A P. III.

*Arthur kills a Spanish Giant who had stole away Helena the Neice of Hoel.*

**I**N the mean Time *Arthur* has News brought him, that a Giant of monstrous Size was come from the Parts of *Spain*, and had forcibly taken away *Helena* the Neice of Duke *Hoel* from her Guard, and fled with her to the Top of that which is now called *The Mount of Michael*: And that the Soldiers of the Country who pursued him, were able to do nothing against him. For whether they attacked him by Sea or Land, he either overturned their Ships with vast Rocks, or killed them with several sorts of Darts, besides many of them that he took and devoured half alive. The next Night therefore at the second Hour, *Arthur* taking along with him *Caius* the Sewer and *Bedver* the Butler, went out privately from the Camp, and hastened towards the Mountain. For being a Man of undaunted Courage, he did not care to lead his Army against such Monsters; both because he could in this Manner animate his Men by his own Example; and also because he was alone sufficient to deal with them. As  
foon

soon as they came near the Mountain, they saw a Fire burning upon the Top of it; and another on a lesser Mountain, that was not far from it. And being in Doubt upon which of them the Giant dwelt, they send away *Bedver* to know the Certainty of the Matter. So he finding a Boat, sailed over in it first to the lesser Mountain, to which he could no other Way have Access, because it was situate in the Sea. When he had begun to climb up to the Top of it, he was at first frightened with a dismal howling Cry of a Woman from above, and imagined the Monster to be there: But quickly rousing up his Courage, he drew his Sword, and having reached the Top, found nothing but the Fire which he had before seen at a Distance. He discovered also a Grave newly made, and an old Woman weeping and howling by it; who at the Sight of him instantly cry'd out in Words interrupted with Sighs; "O unhappy Man, " what Misfortune brings you to this Place! " O the inexpressible Tortures of Death " that you must suffer! I pity you, I pity " you, because the detestable Monster will " this Night destroy the Flower of your " Youth. For that most wicked and odious Giant, who brought the Dukes Neice, " whom I have just now buried here, and " me her Nurse along with her into this " Mountain, will come and immediately

X

" murder

“murder you in a most cruel Manner. O  
“deplorable Fate ! This most illustrious  
“Princess, sinking under the Fear her ten-  
“der Heart conceived, while the foul Mon-  
“ster would have embraced her, fainted  
“away and expired. And when he could  
“not satiate his brutish Lust upon her,  
“who was to me the very Soul, Joy and  
“Happiness of my Life, being enraged at  
“the Disappointment of his bestial Desire,  
“he forcibly committed a Rape upon me,  
“who (let God and my Old-age witness)  
“abhorred his Embraces. Fly, dear Sir,  
“fly, for Fear he come, as he usually does  
“to lie with me, and finding you here most  
“barbarously butcher you.” *Beduer*, tho’  
moved at what she said, as much as it is possi-  
ble for human Nature to be, yet endeavoured  
with kind Words to assuage her Grief, and to  
comfort her with the Promise of speedy Help :  
And then returned back to *Arthur*, and gave  
him an Account of what he had met with.  
*Arthur* very much lamented the Damsels  
sad Fate, and ordered his Companions to  
leave him to deal with him alone ; unless  
there was an absolute Necessity, and then  
they were to come in boldly to his Assistance.  
From hence they went directly to the next  
Mountain, leaving their Horses with their  
Armour-Bearers, and ascended to the Top,  
*Arthur* leading the Way. The deformed Sa-  
vage was then by the Fire, with his Face all  
besmeared

besmeared with the clotted Blood of Swine, Part of which he had already devoured, and was roasting the Remainder upon Spits by the Fire. But at the Sight of them, whose Appearance was a Surprize to him, he hastened to his Club, which two strong Men could hardly lift from the Ground. Upon this the King drew his Sword, and guarding himself with his Shield, ran with all his speed to prevent his getting it. But the other, who was not ignorant of his Design, had by this Time snatched it up, and gave the King such a terrible Blow upon his Shield, that he made the Shores ring with the Noise, and perfectly stunned the Kings Ears with it. *Arthur* at this being fired with Rage, lifted up his Sword, and gave him a Wound in the Forehead, which was not indeed mortal, but yet such as made the Blood gush out over his Face and Eyes, and so blinded him; for he had partly warded off the Stroke from his Forehead with his Club, and prevented its being fatal. However his Loss of Sight, by Reason of the Blood flowing over his Eyes, made him exert himself with greater Fury, and like an enraged Boar against a Hunting-Spear, so did he rush in against *Arthurs* Sword, and grasping him about the Waste forced him down upon his Knees. But *Arthur* nothing daunted nimbly slid out of his Hands, and now so bestirred himself with his Sword, that

he gave the Giant no Respite till he had struck it up to the very Back within his Skull. At this the hideous Monster raised a dreadful Roar, and like an Oak torn up by the Roots by Force of Winds, so did he make the Ground resound with his Fall. *Arthur* bursting out into a Fit of Laughter at the Sight, commanded *Bedver* to cut off his Head, and give it to one of the Armour-Bearers, who was to carry it to the Camp, and there expose it to publick View, but with Orders for the Spectators of this Combat to keep Silence. He told them he had found none of so great Strength, since he killed the Giant *Ritho* upon the Mountain *Aravius*, who had challenged him to fight. This Giant had made himself Furs of the Beards of Kings he had killed, and had sent Word to *Arthur* carefully to flea off his Beard and send it to him; and then out of Respect to his Pre-eminence over other Kings, his Beard should have the Honour of the principal Place. But if he refused to do it, he challenged him to a Duel, with this Offer, that the Conqueror should have the Furs, and also the Beard of the vanquished for a Trophy of his Victory. In this Conflict therefore, *Arthur* proved victorious, and took the Beard and Spoils of the Giant; and, as he said before, had met with none that could be compared to him for Strength, till his last Engagement. After

ter this Victory they returned at the second Watch of the Night to the Camp with the Head; to the Sight of which there was a great Concourse of People, all extolling this wonderful Exploit of *Arthur*, by which he had freed the Country from a most destructive and voracious Monster. But *Hoel*, in great Grief for the Loss of his Niece, commanded a *Mausoleum* to be built over her Body in the Mountain where she was buried, which taking the Damsels Name, is called *Helena's Tomb* to this Day.

---

#### C H A P. IV.

*Arthurs Ambassadors to Lucius Tiberius deliver Petreius Cotta, whom they took Prisoner, to Arthur.*

AS soon as all the Forces were arrived which *Arthur* expected, he marches from thence to *Augustodunum*, where he supposed the General was. But when he came to the River *Alba*, he had Intelligence brought him of his having encamped not far off, and that he was come with so vast an Army, as he could not be able to withstand. However this did not deter him from pursuing his Enterprize, but he pitch-

ed his Camp upon the Bank of the River, to facilitate the bringing up of his Forces, and to secure his Retreat, if there should be Occasion ; And sent *Bofo* the Consul of *Oxford*, and *Guerinus Carnotensis*, with his Nephew *Walgan* to *Lucius Tiberius*, requiring him either to retire from the Coasts of *Gaul*, or come the next Day, that they might try their Right to that Country with their Swords. The Retinue of young Courtiers that attended *Walgan*, highly rejoycing at this Opportunity, were urgent with him to find some Occasion for a Quarrel in the Commanders Camp, that so they might engage the *Romans*. Accordingly they went to *Lucius*, and commanded him to retire out of *Gaul*, or hazard a Battle the next Day. But while he was answering them, that he was not come to retire, but to govern the Country, there was present *Caius Quintilianus* his Nephew, who said ; “ That “ the *Britains* were better at boasting and “ threatning, than they were at fighting.” *Walgan* immediately took Fire at this, and ran upon him with his drawn Sword, wherewith he cut off his Head, and then retreated speedily with his Companions to their Hories. The *Romans* both Horse and Foot pursue, to revenge the Loss of their Countryman upon the Ambassadors, who fled with great Precipitation. But *Guerinus Carnotensis*, just as one of them was come

up

up to him, rallied on a sudden, and with his Lance struck at once through his Armour and the very middle of his Body, and laid him prostrate on the Ground. The Sight of this noble Exploit raised the Emulation of *Boso of Oxford*, who wheeling about his Horse, struck his Lance into the Throat of the first Man he met with, and dismounted him mortally wounded. In the mean Time *Marcellus Mutius*, with great Eagerness to revenge *Quintilians* Death, was just upon the Back of *Walgan*, and laid hold of him; which the other quickly obliged him to quit, by cleaving both his Helmet and Head to the Breast with his Sword. He also bid him, when he arrived at the infernal Region, tell the Man he had killed in the Camp; "That in this Manner the *Britains* were full of their *Boasting and Threatning*." Then having re-assembled his Men, he encouraged them to dispatch every one his Pursuer, in the same Manner as he had done; which accordingly they did not fail to accomplish. Notwithstanding the *Romans* continued their Pursuit with Lances and Swords, wherewith they annoy'd the others, though without Slaughter or taking any Prisoners. But as they came near a certain Wood, a Party of six thousand *Britains*, upon seeing the Flight of the Consuls, had bid themselves, to be in Readiness for their Assistance. Then falling forth they put

Spurs to their Horses, and rend the Air with their loud Shouts, and being well fenced with their Shields, on a sudden assault the *Romans*, and force them to fly. And now it was the *Britains* Turn to pursue, which they did with better Success, since they dismounted, killed, or took several of the Enemy. *Petreius* the Senator, upon this News, hastens to the Assistance of his Countrymen with ten thousand Men, and compelled the *Britains* to retreat to the Wood from whence they had sallied forth; though not without Loss of his own Men. For the *Britains* being well acquainted with the Ground, did in their Flight kill a great Number of their Pursuers. The *Britains* thus giving Ground, *Hider* with another Reinforcement of five thousand Men, advances with speed to sustain them; so that they now again face those, upon whom they had turned their Backs, and renew the Assault with great Vigour. The *Romans* also stand their Ground, and continue the Fight with various Success. The great Fault of the *Britains* was, that though they had been very eager to begin the Fight, yet when begun they were less careful of the Hazard they run. Whereas the *Romans* were under better Discipline, and had the Advantage of a prudent Commander, *Petreius Cotta*, to tell them where to advance, and where to give Ground, and by that Means did great Injury

to the Enemy. When *Boso* observed this, he drew off from the rest a large Party of those whom he knew to be the stoutest Men, and spoke to them after this Manner; "Since we have begun this Fight without *Arthurs* Knowledge, we must take Care that we be not defeated in the Enterprize. For if we should, we shall both very much endanger our Men, and incur the Kings high Displeasure. Rouse up your Courage, and follow me through the Roman Squadrons, that with the Favour of good Fortune we may either kill or take *Petreius* Prisoner." With this they put Spurs to their Horses, and piercing through the Enemies thickest Ranks, reached the Place where *Petreius* was giving his Commands. *Boso* hastily run in upon him, and grasping him about the Neck, fell down with him to the Ground, according to the Design he had formed. The Romans hereupon ran to his Delivery, as did the Britains to *Boso's* Assistance; which occasioned on both Sides great Slaughter, Noise and Confusion, while one Party strove to rescue their Leader, and the other to keep him Prisoner. So that this proved the sharpest Part of the whole Fight, and wherein their Spears, Swords and Arrows had the fullest Employment. At length the Britains joining in a close Body, and sustaining patiently the Assaults of the Romans, retire to the  
main

main Body of their Army with *Petrijus*; Which they had no sooner done than they again attack them, being now deprived of their Leader, very much weakened, dispirited, and just beginning to fly. They therefore eagerly pursue, beat down, and kill several of them, and as soon as they had plundered them pursued the rest: But they took the greatest Number of them Prisoners, as being desirous of presenting them to the King. When they had at last sufficiently harassed them, they returned back with their Plunder and Prisoners to the Camp; where they gave an Account of what had happened, and presented *Petrijus* Cotte with the other Prisoners before *Arthur*, with great Joy for the Victory. *Arthur* congratulated them upon it, and promised them Advancement to greater Honours, for behaving themselves so gallantly when he was absent from them. Then he gave his Command to some of his Men, to conduct the Prisoners the next Day to *Paris*, and deliver them to be kept in Custody there till further Orders. The Party that were to undertake this Charge, he ordered *Cador*, *Bedver*, and the two Consuls *Borellus* and *Richerius* with their Servants, to conduct so far, till they should be out of all Fear of Disturbance from the *Romans*.

## C H A P. V.

*The Romans attack the Britains with a very great Force, but are put to Flight by them.*

**B**UT the Romans happening to get Intelligence of their Design, at the Command of their General chose out fifteen thousand Men, who that Night were to get before the others in their March, and rescue their Fellow Soldiers out of their Hands. They were to be commanded by *Vulturnus Catellus*, and *Quintus Carutius* Senators, as also *Evander* King of Syria, and *Sertorius* King of Libya. And accordingly they begun the March appointed them that very Night, and possessed themselves of a Place convenient for their lying in Ambuscade, through which they supposed the others would pass. In the Morning the Britains set forward along the same Road with their Prisoners, and were now approaching the Place, in perfect Ignorance of the cunning Stratagem of the Enemy. No sooner were they entered it, than the Romans to their great Surprise sprung forth and fell furiously upon them. Notwithstanding the Britains at length recovering from their Consternation, assemble together, and prepare for a bold Oppo-

Opposition, by appointing a Party to guard the Prisoners, and drawing out the rest in Order of Battle against the Enemy. *Richerius* and *Beduer* had the Command of the Party that were set over the Prisoners ; but *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal*, and *Borellus* headed the others. But all the *Romans* had made their Sally without being placed in any Order, and cared not to form themselves, that they might lose no Time in the Slaughter of the *Britains*, whom they saw busied in marshalling their Troops and preparing only for their Defence. By this Conduct the *Britains* were extremely weakened, and would have shamefully lost their Prisoners, had not good Fortune hastened to their Assistance. For *Guitard* Commander of the *Pictavians*, happened to get Knowledge of the designed Stratagem, and was come up with three thousand Men, by the Help of which they at last got the Advantage, and repaid back the Slaughter upon their insolent Assailants. Notwithstanding the Loss they sustained at the Beginning of this Action was very considerable. For they lost *Borellus* the famous Consul of the *Cenomanni*, in an Encounter with *Evander* King of *Syria*, who struck his Lance into his Throat ; besides four Noblemen, viz. *Hirelgas Deperirus*, *Mauricius Cadocanensis*, *Aliduc* of *Tintagol*, and *Hider* his Son, than whom braver Men were hardly to be found. But yet neither did this Loss dispirit the *Britains*,  
but

but rather made them more resolute to keep the Prisoners, and kill the Enemy. The Romans now finding themselves unable to maintain the Fight any longer, on a sudden quitted the Field, and made back towards their Camp; but were pursued with Slaughter by the Britains, who also took many of them, and allowed them no Respite till they had killed *Valerius Catellus*, and *Evander King of Syria*, and wholly dispersed the rest. Which done, they sent away their former Prisoners to *Paris*, whither they were to conduct them, and returned back with those newly taken to the King; to whom they gave great Hopes of a compleat Conquest of their Enemies, since very few of the great Number that came against them, had met with any Success.

## C H A P. VI.

*Lucius Tiberius goes to Lengria.  
Arthur designing to vanquish him,  
by a Stratagem possesses himself  
of the Valley of Suefia.*

THESE repeated Disasters wrought no small Disturbance in the Breast of *Lucius Tiberius*, and made him hesitate with anxious and fluctuating Thoughts, whether  
to

to bring it to a general Battle with *Arthur*, or to retire into *Augustodunum*; and stay till the Emperor *Leo* with his Forces could come to his Assistance. At length giving way to his Fears, he enters *Lengria* with his Army, intending to reach the other City the Night following. *Arthur* finding this, and being desirous to get before him in his March, leaves the City on the left Hand, and the same Night enters a certain Valley called *Suesia*, through which *Lucius* was to pass. There he divided his Men into several Bodies, commanding one Legion, over which *Morvid* Consul of *Glocester* was appointed General, to attend hard by, that he might retreat to them if there should be Occasion, and from thence rally his broken Forces for a second Battle. The rest he divided into seven Parts, in each of which he placed five thousand five hundred and fifty five Men, all compleatly armed. He also appointed different Stations to his Horse and Foot, and gave Command, that just as the Foot should advance to the Attack, the Horse keeping close together in their Ranks, should the same Moment march up obliquely, and endeavour to put the Enemy into Disorder. The Companies of Foot were after the *British* Manner drawn out into a Square, with a right and left Wing; one of which was commanded by *Augustel* King of *Albania*, and *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal*, the one presiding

ding over the right Wing, the other over the left. Over another Party were placed the two famous Consuls, *Guerinus Carnotensis*, and *Bose of Richiden*, called in the Saxon Tongue *Oxineford*: Over a third were *Aschillius* King of the *Dacians*, and *Lot* King of the *Norwegians*. The fourth being commanded by *Hoel* Duke of the *Armaricans*, and *Walgan* the Kings Nephew. After these were four other Parties placed in the Reer; the first commanded by *Caius* the Sewer, and *Bedwer* the Butler; the second by *Holdin* Duke of the *Ruteni*, and *Guitard* of the *Pictavians*; the third by *Vigenis* of *Leicester*, *Jonathal* of *Dorchester*, and *Cursalem* of *Caicester*; the fourth by *Urbgenius* of *Badon*. Behind all these *Arthur*, for himself and the Legion that was to attend near him, made Choice of a Place, where he set up a Golden Dragon for a Standard, whither the wounded or fatigued might in Case of Necessity retreat as into their Camp. The Legion that was with him, consisted of six thousand six hundred and sixty six Men.



## C H A P. VII

## Arthurs Exhortation to his Soldiers.

AFTER he had thus placed them all in their Stations, he made the following Speech to his Soldiers. " My brave  
" Countrymen, who have made *Britain*  
" the Mistress of thirty Kingdoms, I congratulate you upon your late Noble Exploit, which to me is a Proof that your  
" Valour is so far from being impaired, that  
" it is increased rather. Though you have  
" been five Years without Exercise, wherein the softning Pleasures of an easy Life,  
" had a greater Share of your Time, than  
" the use of Arms; yet all this has not  
" made you in the least degenerate from  
" your natural Bravery, which you have  
" shewn in forcing the *Romans* to fly. The  
" Pride of their Leaders has animated them  
" to attempt the Invasion of your Liberties:  
" They have tried you in Battle, with  
" Numbers Superiour to yours, and have  
" not been able to stand before you; but  
" have basely withdrawn themselves into  
" that City, from whence they are now  
" ready to march out, and to pass through  
" this Valley in their Way to *Augustodunum*; so that you may have an Opportunity of falling upon them unawares like a  
" Flock

“ Flock of Sheep. Certainly they expected  
“ to find in you the Cowardice of the  
“ Eastern Nations, when they thought to  
“ make your Country Tributary, and you  
“ their Slaves. What have they never heard  
“ of your Wars with the *Dacians*, *Norwe-*  
“ *gians*, and Princes of the *Gauls*, whom  
“ you reduced under my Power, and freed  
“ from their shameful Yoke? We then that  
“ have had Success in a greater War, need  
“ not doubt of it in a less, if we do but en-  
“ deavour with the same Spirit to vanquish  
“ these Poltrons. You shall want no Re-  
“ wards of Honour, if as faithful Soldiers  
“ you do but strictly obey my Commands.  
“ For as soon as we have routed them, we  
“ will march straight to *Rome*, and take it;  
“ and then all the Gold, Silver, Palaces,  
“ Towers, Towns, Cities, and other Riches  
“ of the vanquished shall be yours.” He  
had hardly done speaking, before they all  
with one Voice declared, that they were  
ready to suffer Death, rather than quit the  
Field while he had Life.



Y

C H A P.

## C H A P. VIII.

Lucius Tiberius *discovering Arthurs Design, in a Speech animates his Followers to fight.*

**B**UT *Lucius Tiberius* discovering the Designs that were formed against him, would not fly as he had at first intended, but taking new Courage, resolved to march to the same Valley against them; and calling together his principal Commanders, spoke to them in these Words. "Venerable  
" Fathers, to whose Empire both the East-  
" ern and Western Kingdoms owe Obedi-  
" ence, remember the Virtues of your An-  
" cestors, who were not afraid to shed  
" their Blood, when the vanquishing of the  
" Enemies of the Commonwealth required  
" it; but to leave an Example of their  
" Courage and military Virtues to their  
" Posterity, behaved themselves in all Bat-  
" tles with that Contempt of Death, as if  
" God had given them some Security a-  
" gainst it. By this Conduct they often  
" triumphed, and by triumphing escaped  
" Death. Such was the Reward of their  
" Virtue from Divine Providence, which  
" overrules all Events. The Increase of the  
" Commonwealth, and of their own Va-  
" lour,

“lour, was owing to this; and all those  
“Virtues that usually adorn the Great, as  
“Integrity, Honour, and Munificence,  
“flourishing a long Time in them, raised  
“them and their Posterity to the Empire of  
“the whole World. Let their noble Ex-  
“amples animate you; rouse up the Spirit  
“of the ancient *Romans*, and be not afraid  
“to march out against our Enemies that  
“are lying in Ambush for us in the Valley,  
“but boldly with your Swords demand of  
“them your just Rights. Do not think  
“that I retired into this City for fear of  
“engaging with them; but I thought that  
“as their Pursuit of us was rash and foolish,  
“so we might hence on a sudden intercept  
“them in it, and by dividing their main  
“Body make a great Slaughter of them.  
“But now since they have altered the Mea-  
“sures we supposed they had taken, let us  
“also alter ours. Let us go in quest of  
“them, and bravely fall upon them; or if  
“they shall happen to have the Advantage  
“in the Beginning of the Battle, let us  
“only stand our Ground during the Fury  
“of their first Assault, and the Victory will  
“undoubtedly be ours; for in many Bat-  
“tles this Manner of Conduct has been at-  
“tended with Victory.” As soon as he  
had made an end of speaking these and other  
Things, they all declared their Assent, pro-  
mised with an Oath to stand by him, and

hastened to arm themselves. Which when they had done, they marched out of *Lengria* to the Valley where *Arthur* had drawn out his Forces in Order of Battle. Then they also began to marshal their Army, which they divided into twelve Companies, and according to the *Roman* Manner of Embattelling, drew out each Company into the Form of a Wedge, consisting of six thousand six hundred and sixty six Men. Each Company also had its respective Leaders, who were to give Direction when to advance, or when to be upon the Defensive. One of them was headed by *Lucius Catellus* the Senator, and *Alifantinam* King of Spain; another by *Hirtacius* King of the *Parthians*, and *Marius Lepidus* a Senator; a third by *Boccus* King of the *Medes*, and *Caius Metellus* a Senator; a fourth by *Sertorius* King of *Libya*, and *Quintus Milvius* a Senator. These four Companies were placed in the Front of the Army. In the Rear of these were four others, whereof one was commanded by *Serfes* King of the *Itureans*; another by *Pandrasus* King of *Egypt*; a third by *Polytetes* Duke of *Bithynia*; a fourth by *Teucer* Duke of *Phrygia*. And again behind all these four others, whereof the Commanders were *Quintus Carucius* a Senator, *Lalius Hostiensis*, *Sulpitius Subuculus*, and *Mauricius Sylvanus*. As for the General himself, he was sometimes in one Place, sometimes another, to encourage

encourage and direct as there should be Occasion. For a Standard he ordered a Golden Eagle to be firmly set up in the Center, for his Men to repair to, whenever they should happen to be separated from their Company.

## C H A P. IX.

### *A Battle between Arthur and Lucius Tiberius.*

**A**ND now did the *Britains* and *Romans* stand presented with their Arms before each other; when forthwith at the sounding of the Trumpets, the Company that was headed by the King of *Spain* and *Lucius Catellus*, boldly rushed forward against that which the King of *Scotland* and Duke of *Cornwal* led up, but were not able to make the least Breach in their firm Ranks. So that while these stood their Ground, up came *Guerinus* and *Boso* with a Body of Horse upon their full Speed, broke through the Party that began the Assault, and met with another which the King of the *Parthians* was just leading up against *Aschillius* King of *Dacia*. After this first Onset, immediately followed a general Engagement of both Armies with great Violence, and

several Breaches made on each Side. The Shouts, the Slaughter, the vast Quantity of Blood spilled, and the Agonies of the dying, made a dreadful Scene of Horror. At first the *Britains* sustained a great Loss, by having *Bedver* the Butler killed, and *Caius* the Sewer mortally wounded. For as *Bedver* met *Boccus* King of the *Medes*, he fell down dead by a Stab of his Lance amidst the Enemies Troops. And *Caius* in endeavouring to revenge his Death, was surrounded by the *Median* Troops, and there received a mortal Wound; yet as a brave Soldier he opened himself a Way with the Wing which he led, killed and dispersed the *Medes*, and would have made a safe Retreat with all his Men, had he not happened to meet with the King of *Libya* with the Forces under him, who put his whole Company into Disorder; yet not so great, but that he was still able to get off with a few, and fly with *Bedvers* Corps to the Golden Dragon. The *Neustrians* grievously lamented at the Sight of their Leaders mangled Body; and so did the *Andegavians*, when they beheld their Consul wounded. But there was now no room for mournful Complaints, when the furious and bloody Shocks of both Armies made it more necessary to provide for their own Defence. Therefore *Hirelgas* the Nephew of *Bedver*, being extreamly enraged at his Death, calls up to him three hundred Men, and

and like a wild Boar amongst a Pack of Dogs broke through the Enemies Ranks with his Horse, making towards the Place where he had seen the Standard of the King of the *Medes*; little regarding what might befall him, so he could but revenge the Loss of his Uncle. At length he reached the Place, killed the King, brought off his Body to his Companions, and laid it by that of his Uncle, where he mangled it in the same Manner. Then calling with a loud Voice to his Countrymen, he animated their Troops, and vehemently pressed them to exert themselves to the utmost, now when their Spirits were raised, and the Enemy disheartened; and especially as they had the Advantage of them in being placed in better Order, and so might the more grievously infect them. Encouraged with this Exhortation they began a general Assault upon the Enemy, which was attended with a terrible Slaughter on both Sides. For on the Part of the *Romans*, beside innumerable others, fell *Alifantinam* King of *Spain*, *Micipsa* of *Babylon*, as also *Quintus Milvius*, and *Marius Lepidus* Senators. On the Part of the *Britains*, *Holain* King of the *Ruteni*, *Leodegarius* of *Bolonia*, and three Consuls of *Britain*, *Cursalem* of *Kaicester*, *Galluc* of *Salisbury*, and *Urbgenius* of *Badon*. So that the Troops they commanded being extreamly weakned, retreated, till they came to the Army of the

*Armorican Britains* commanded by *Hoel* and *Walgan*. But these being inflamed at the Retreat of their Friends, encouraged them to stand their Ground, and caused them now with the Help of their own Forces to put their Pursuers to Flight. While they continued this Pursuit, they beat down and killed several of them, and gave them no Respite, till they came to the very Generals Troop; who seeing the Distress of his Companions hastened to their Assistance.

---

## C H A P. X.

*Hoel and Walgan signalize their Valour in the Fight.*

**A**N D now in this latter Encounter the *Britains* are worsted, by the Loss of *Kimarcos* Consul of *Trigeria*, and two thousand with him; beside three famous Noblemen, *Richomarcus*, *Bloccovius*, and *Jagrovius* of *Bodloan*, who had they but enjoyed the Dignity of Princes, succeeding Ages would not have failed to celebrate their Valour. For during this Assault which they made in Conjunction with *Hoel* and *Walgan*, there was not an Enemy within their Reach that could escape the Fury of their Sword or Lance. But upon their falling in among *Lucius's* Party,

Party, they were surrounded by them, and suffered the same Fate with the Consul and the other Men. The Loss of these Men made those brave and matchless Hero's, *Hoel* and *Walgan*, much more eager to infect the Generals Ranks, and to try on all Sides where to make the greatest Impression. But *Walgan*, whose Valour was never to be soiled, endeavoured to gain Access to *Lucius* himself, that he might encounter him, and with this View beat down and killed all that stood in his Way. And *Hoel*, not inferiour to him, did no less Service in another Part, by spiring up his Men, and giving and receiving Blows among the Enemy with the same undaunted Courage. It was hard to determin, whether of them was the stoutest Soldier.

---

### C H A P. XI.

*Lucius Tiberius being killed, the Britains obtain the Victory.*

**B**UT *Walgan* by forcing his Way thro' the Enemies Troops, as we said before, found at last (what he had wished for) Access to the General, and immediately encountred him. *Lucius* being then in the Flower of his Youth, and a Person of  
great

great Courage and Vigour, desired nothing more than to engage with such a one as might put his Strength to its full Trial. Putting himself therefore into a Posture of Defence, he received *Walgan* with Joy, and was not a little proud to try his Courage with one of whom he had heard very great Things. The Duel continued between them a long Time, with great Force of Blows, and no less Dexterity in warding them off, each being resolved upon the others Destruction. During this sharp Conflict between them, the *Romans* on a sudden recovering their Courage, made an Assault upon the *Armoricans*, and having relieved their General, repulsed *Hoel* and *Walgan*, with their Troops, till they found themselves unawares met by *Arthur* and the Forces under him. For he upon hearing of the Slaughter that was a little before made of his Men, had speedily advanced with his Legion, and drawing out his *Caliburn*, spoke to them with a loud Voice after this Manner. "What are you doing Soldiers? Will you suffer these effeminate Wretches to escape? Let not one of them get off alive. Remember the Force of your Arms, that have reduced thirty Kingdoms under my Subjection. Remember your Ancestors, whom the *Romans*, when at the Height of their Power, made tributary. Remember your Liberties, which these pitiful Fellows, that

“ that are much your Inferiors, attempt  
“ to deprive you of. Let none of them  
“ escape alive. What are you doing?”  
With these Expostulations, he rushed in  
upon the Enemy, made terrible Havock  
among them, and not a Man he met but at  
one Blow he either laid him or his Horse  
dead upon the Ground. They therefore in  
Astonishment fled him, as a Flock of Sheep  
do a fierce Lion, whom raging Hunger pro-  
vokes to devour whatever happens to come  
near him. Their Arms were no manner of  
Protection to them against the Force with  
which this most valiant Prince wielded his  
*Caliburn*. Two Kings, *Sertorius* of *Libya*,  
and *Polytetes* of *Bithynia*, unfortunately felt  
its Fury, and had their Heads cut off by it.  
The *Britains*, when they saw their King per-  
forming such Wonders, take Courage again.  
With one Consent they assault the *Romans*,  
keep close together in their Ranks, and  
while they infest the Foot in one Part, en-  
deavour to beat down and pierce through  
the Horse in another. Notwithstanding  
the *Romans* make a brave Defence, and at  
the Instigation of *Lucius* labour to repay  
back their Slaughter upon the *Britains*.  
Such was the Eagerness and Force that was  
now shewn on both Sides, as if it was just  
the Beginning of the Battle. *Arthur* conti-  
nued to do great Execution with his own  
Hand, and encouraged the *Britains* to main-  
tain

tain the Fight ; as *Lucius Tiberius* did the *Romans*, and made them perform many memorable Exploits. He himself in the mean Time was very active in going from Place to Place, and suffered none to escape with Life, that happened to come within the Reach of his Sword or Lance. The Slaughter that was now made on both Sides was very dreadful, and the Turns of Fortune various, sometimes the *Britains* prevailing, sometimes the *Romans*. At last while this sharp Dispute yet continued, *Morvid* Consul of *Glocester* with his Legion, which as we said before was placed between the Hills, came up with speed upon the Rear of the Enemy, and to their great Surprize assaulted, broke through, and dispersed them with a great Slaughter. This last and decisive Blow proved Fatal to many thousands of *Romans*, and even to the General *Lucius* himself, who was killed among the Crowds with a Lance by an unknown Hand. But the *Britains* by long maintaining the Fight, with very great Difficulty gained the Victory.



## C H A P. XII.

*One Part of the Romans fly ; and  
the other of their own Accord  
surrender themselves for Slaves.*

**T**HE Romans being now therefore dispersed, betake themselves through Fear, some to the By-Ways and Woods, some to the Cities and Towns, and all other Places where they could be most safe ; but were either killed or taken and plunder'd by the Britains pursuing : So that a great Part of them voluntarily and shamefully held forth their Hands, to receive their Conquerers Chains, in order to prolong for a while a wretched Life. In all which the Justice of Divine Providence was very visible ; considering how unjustly the Ancestors of the Britains were formerly harassed and inested by those of the Romans ; and that these stood only in Defence of that Liberty, which the others would have deprived them of ; and refused the Tribute, which the others had no Right to demand.



## C H A P. XIII.

*The Bodies of the Slain are decently  
buried, each in their respective  
Countries.*

**A**RTHUR, after he had compleated his Victory, gives Orders for separating the Bodies of his Nobility from those of the Enemy, and preparing a pompous Funeral for them; and that when ready they should be carried to the Abbies of their respective Countries, there to be honourably buried. But *Bedver* the Butler was with great Lamentation of the *Neustrians* carried to his own City *Bajoca*, which *Bedver* the First, his Great Grandfather, had built. There he was with great Solemnity laid close by the Wall, in a Burying-Place in the South Part of the City. But *Cheudo* was carried grievously wounded to *Camus*, a Town which himself built, where in a short Time he died of his Wounds, and was buried, as became a Duke of *Andegavia*, in a Convent of Hermits, which was in a Wood not far from the Town. Also *Holdin* Duke of *Rutteni*, was carried to *Flanders*, and buried in his own City *Terivana*. The other Consuls and Noblemen were conveyed to the neighbouring Abbies, according to *Arthurs* Orders.

ders. Out of his great Clemency also he ordered the Country People to take Care of the Burial of the Enemy, and to carry the Body of *Lucius* to the Senate, and tell them, That was the only Tribute *Britain* ought to pay them. After this he staid in those Parts till the next Winter was over, and employed his Time in reducing the Cities of the *Allobroges*. But at the Beginning of the Summer following, as he was upon his March towards *Rome*, and beginning to pass the *Alps*, he had News brought him that his Nephew *Modred*, to whose Care he had entrusted *Britain*, had by tyrannical and treasonable Practices set the Crown upon his own Head; and that Queen *Guanhumara*, in Violation of her first Marriage, was wickedly married to him.



THE



T H E  
**British History.**

The Eleventh Book.

C H A P. I.

*Modred makes a great Slaughter of  
Arthurs Men, but is notwithstanding  
beaten, and flies to Winchester.*



**O**F the Matter now to be treated of, most Noble Consul, *Jeffrey of Monmouth* shall be silent; but will, though in a mean Stile, yet briefly relate what he found in the *British* Book above-mentioned, and heard from that most learned Historian *Walter Archdeacon of Oxford*, concerning the Wars which this renowned King upon his Return  
to

to *Britain* after this Victory, waged with his Nephew. As soon therefore as the Report of this flagrant Wickedness reached him, he immediately desisted from his Enterprize against *Leo King* of the *Romans*; and having sent away *Hoel* Duke of the *Armoricans* with the Army of *Gaul*, to restore Peace in those Parts, returned back with speed to *Britain*, attended only with the Kings of the Islands, and their Armies. But the wicked Traitor *Modred* had sent *Cheldric* the *Saxon* Leader into *Germany*, there to raise all the Forces he could find, and return with all speed: And in Consideration of this Service, had promised him all that Part of the Island, which reaches from *Humber* to *Scotland*, and whatever *Hengist* and *Horsus* had possessed of *Kent* in the Time of *Vortegirn*. So that he in Obedience to his Commands, had arrived with eight hundred Ships fraught with Pagan Soldiers, and had entred into Covenant to obey the Traitor as his Sovereign; who had also drawn to his Assistance the *Scots*, *Picts*, *Irish*, and all others whom he knew to be Enemies to his Uncle. His whole Army, taking Pagans and *Christians* together, amounted to eighty thousand Men; with the Help of whom he met *Arthur* just upon his landing at the Port of *Rutupi*, and joining Battle with him made a very great Slaughter of his Men. For the same Day fell *Augustel*  
Z King

King of *Albania*, and *Walgan* the Kings Nephew, with innumerable others. *Augustus* was succeeded in his Kingdom by *Eventus* his Brother *Urians* Son, who afterwards performed many famous Exploits in those Wars. After they had at last with much Difficulty got ashore, they repaid back the Slaughter, and put *Modred* and his Army to Flight. For by a long Practice of War, they had learned an excellent Way of ordering their Forces; which was so, that while their Foot were employ'd either in an Assault or upon the Defensive, the Horse would come in upon a full speed obliquely, break through the Enemies Ranks, and so force them to fly. Notwithstanding this perjur'd Usurper got his Forces together again, and the Night following entred *Winchester*. As soon as Queen *Guanhumara* heard this, she immediately despairing of Success, fled from *York* to the City of *Legions*, where she resolved to lead a chaste Life among the Nuns in the Church of *Julius* the Martyr, and enter herself one of their Order.



## C H A P. II.

*Modred after being twice besieged and routed is killed. Arthur being wounded gives up the Kingdom to Constantine.*

**B**UT *Arthur*, whose Anger was now much more inflamed, upon the Loss of so many hundreds of his Fellow Soldiers, after he had buried his Slain, went on the third Day to the City, and there besieged the Traitor ; who notwithstanding was unwilling to desist from his Enterprize, but used all Methods to encourage his Adherents, and marching out with his Troops prepared to fight his Unkle. In the Battle that followed hereupon, great Numbers lost their Lives on both Sides ; but at last his suffered most, so that he was forced to quit the Field shamefully. From hence he made a precipitate Flight, and without taking any Care for the Burial of his Slain, marched in haste towards *Cornwal*. *Arthur* being inwardly grieved that he should so often escape, forthwith pursued him into that Country as far as the River *Cambula*, where the other was expecting his Coming. And *Modred*, as he was the boldest of Men, and always the quickest at making an Attack, so he now

immediately placed his Troops in Order, resolving either to conquer or die, rather than continue his Flight any longer. He had yet remaining with him sixty thousand Men, out of whom he composed three Bodies, which contained each of them six thousand six hundred and sixty six Men : But all the rest he joined in one Body ; and having assigned to each of the other Parties their Leaders, he took the Command of this upon himself. After he had made this Disposition of his Forces, he endeavoured to animate them, and promised them the Estates of their Enemies if they came off with Victory. *Arthur* on the other Side also marshalled his Army, which he divided into nine square Companies, with a right and left Wing ; and having appointed each of them their Commanders, exhorted them to make a total Rout of those Robbers and perjured Villains, who being brought over into the Island from foreign Countries at the Instance of the Arch-traitor, were attempting to rob them of all their Honours. He likewise told them that such a mixt Army composed of barbarous People of so many different Countries, and who were all raw Soldiers and unexperienced in War, would never be able to stand against such brave veteran Troops as they were, provided they did their Duty. After this Encouragement given by each General to his Fellow Soldiers, the  
Battle

Battle on a sudden begins with great Fury; wherein it would be as well grievous as tedious to relate the Slaughter, the cruel Havock, and the excess of Rage that was to be seen on both Sides. In this manner they spent a good part of the Day, till *Arthur* at last made a Push with his Company, consisting of six thousand six hundred and sixty six Men, against that in which he knew *Modred* was, and opening a Way with their Swords, pierced quite through it, and made a most grievous Slaughter. For in this Assault fell the wicked Traitor himself, and many thousands with him. But notwithstanding the Loss of him, the rest did not fly, but running together from all Parts of the Field, maintained their Ground with an undaunted Courage. The Fight now grew more furious than ever, and proved almost fatal to all the Commanders and their Forces. For on *Modreds* Side fell *Cheldric*, *Elafius*, *Egbrict*, and *Bunignus*, Saxons: *Gillapatric*, *Gillamor*, *Gissafel*, and *Gillarius*, Irish: Also the Scots and Picts, with almost all their Leaders: On *Arthurs* Side, *Olbrict* King of Norway, *Aschillius* King of Dacia, *Cador* *Limenic* *Cassibellaun*, with many thousands of others, as well Britains as Foreigners, that he had brought with him. And even the renowned King *Arthur* himself was also mortally wounded; who being carried thence to the Isle of *Avallon* to be cured of

his Wounds, gave up the Crown of *Britain* to his Kinsman *Constantine*, the Son of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal*, in the five hundred and forty second Year of our Lords Incarnation.

### C H A P. III.

*Constantine meets with Disturbances from the Saxons and Modreds Sons.*

UPON *Constantines* advancement to the Throne, the *Saxons* with the two Sons of *Modred* made Infurrection against him, though without Success; for after many Battles fought they fled, one to *London*, the other to *Winchester*, and possessed themselves of those Places. Then died *Sr. Daniel* the most devout Prelate of the Church of *Bangor*, and *Theon* Bishop of *Glocester* was elected Archbishop of *London*. At the same Time also died *David* the most pious Archbishop of *Legions*, at the City of *Menevia* in his own Abbey; which he loved above all the other Monasteries of his Diocess, because *St. Patrick*, who had prophetically foretold his Birth, was the Founder of it. For during his Residence there among his Friars, he was taken with a sudden Illness of which he died, and at the Command of *Malgo* King

King of the *Venedotians* was buried in that Church. He was succeeded in the Metropolitan See by *Kinocus* Bishop of the Church of *Lampatern*, who was thereby promoted to a higher Dignity.

## C H A P. IV.

*Constantine after having murdered the Sons of Modred, is himself killed by Conan.*

**B**UT *Constantine* pursued the Saxons, and reduced them under his Yoke. He also took the two Sons of *Modred*, and one of them, who had fled for Sanctuary to the Church of St. *Amphibalus* in *Winchester*, he murdered before the Altar. The other had hid himself in a Convent of Friars at *London*, but at last was found out by him before the Altar, and there put to a cruel Death. Three Years after this he himself, by the Vengeance of God pursuing him, was killed by *Conan*, and buried close by *Uther Pendragon* within the Structure of Stones, which was set up with wonderful Art not far from *Salisbury*, and called in the *English* Tongue *Stanheng*.

## C H A P. V.

*Aurelius Conan reigns after Constantine.*

AFTER him succeeded *Aurelius Conan*, a Youth of wonderful Valour, and his Nephew; who as he had gained the Monarchy of the whole Island, so he would have been worthy the Crown of it, had he not delighted in civil War. His Uncle, who ought to have reigned after *Constantine*, he raised Disturbances against, and cast into Prison; and then killing his two Sons obtained the Kingdom, but died in the second Year of his Reign.

## C H A P. VI.

*Wortiporius being declared King conquers the Saxons.*

AFTER *Conan* succeeded *Wortiporius*, against whom the *Saxons* made Insurrection, and brought over their Countrymen from *Germany* in a very great Fleet. But he gave them Battle, and came off with Victory; so that he obtained the Monarchy of  
of

of the whole Kingdom, and governed the People carefully and peaceably four Years.

C H A P. VII.

*Malgo King of Britain, and a most graceful Person, addicts himself to Sodomy.*

**H** I M succeeded *Malgo* one of the handsomest Men in *Britain*, a great Scourge of Tyrants, a Man of great Strength, extraordinary Munificence, and matchless Valour, but addicted very much to the detestable Vice of Sodomy, by which he made himself abominable to God. He also possessed the whole Island, to which, after a cruel War, he added the six provincial Islands, *viz. Ireland, Iseland, Godland, the Orkneys, Norway and Dacia.*



C H A P.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Britain, in the Flame of a Civil War under King Careticus, is miserably wasted by the Saxons and Africans.*

AFTER Malgo succeeded Careticus, a Lover of Civil Wars, and hateful to God and to the Britains. The Saxons discovering his fickle Disposition, went to Ireland for Gormund King of the Africans, who had arrived there with a very great Fleet, and had subdued that Country. From thence, at their traiterous Instigation, he sailed over into Britain, which the perfidious Saxons in one Part, in another the Britains by their continual Wars among themselves, were wholly laying waste. Entering therefore into Alliance with the Saxons, he made War upon King Careticus, and after several Battles fought drove him from City to City, till at length he forced him to Cirecester and there besieged him. Here Isembard the Nephew of Lewis King of the Franks came to him, made a League of Amity with him, and out of Respect to him renounced the Christian Faith, on Condition he would assist him to gain the Kingdom of Gaul from his Unkle; by whom he said  
he

he was forcibly and unjustly expelled out of it. At last after the taking and burning of the City, he had another Fight with *Careticus*, and made him fly beyond the *Severn* into *Wales*. This done he made an utter Desolation in the Countries, set Fire to the adjacent Cities, and continued these Outrages, till he had almost burnt the whole Surface of the Island from the one Sea to the other; so that the Tillage was every where destroyed, and both with Fire and Sword a general Destruction made of the Husbandmen and Clergy. This terrible Calamity made the rest to fly whithersoever they had any Hopes of Safety.

---

## C H A P. IX.

*The Author upbraids the Britains.*

“ **W** H Y foolish Nation, oppressed  
 “ with the Weight of thy abominable Wickedness, why didst thou in  
 “ thy insatiable Thirst after civil Wars, so  
 “ much weaken thy self by domestick Confusions, that whereas formerly thou  
 “ broughtest distant Kingdoms under thy  
 “ Yoke, now like a good Vineyard degenerated and turned to Bitterness, thou  
 “ canst not defend thy Country, nor Wives,  
 “ nor

“ nor Children, against thy Enemies? Go  
“ on, go on in thy civil Dissensions, little  
“ understanding the Saying in the Gospel,  
“ *Every Kingdom divided against itself shall*  
“ *be brought to Desolation, and a House divid-*  
“ *ed against itself shall fall.* Since then thy  
“ Kingdom was divided against itself; since  
“ the Rage of civil Discord, and the Fumes  
“ of Envy, have darkened thy Mind; since  
“ thy Pride would not suffer thee to pay  
“ Obedience to one King; thou seest there-  
“ fore thy Country made desolate by most  
“ impious Pagans, and thy Houses falling  
“ one upon another; which shall be the  
“ Cause of lasting Sorrow to thy Posterity.  
“ For the barbarous Lionesses shall see their  
“ Whelps enjoying the Towns, Cities and  
“ other Possessions of thy Children; from  
“ which they shall be miserably expelled,  
“ and hardly if ever recover their former  
“ flourishing State.



C H A P.

## C H A P. X.

*Loegria is again inhabited by the Saxons. The Britains with their Bishops retire into Cornwall and Wales.*

**B**UT to return to the History ; after the inhuman Tyrant with many Thousands of his *Africans* had made a Devastation almost over the whole Island, the greater Part of it called *Loegria*, he yielded up to the *Saxons*, whose Villany had been the Occasion of his Arrival. Therefore the Remainder of the *Britains* retired into the Western Parts of the Kingdom, that is, *Cornwal*, and *Wales* ; from whence they continually made frequent and fierce Irruptions upon the Enemy. The three Archbishops, *viz.* He of *Legions*, *Theon* of *London*, and *Thadioceus* of *Tork*, when they had beheld all the Churches subject to their Jurisdiction, lying level with the Ground, fly with all the Clergy that remained after so great a Destruction, to the Coverts of the Woods in *Wales*, carrying with them the Reliques of the Saints, for Fear the sacred Bones of so many holy Men of old might be destroyed by the Barbarians, if they should leave them in that imminent Danger, and themselves instantly suffer Martyrdom.

tyrdom. Many more went over in a very great Fleet into *Armorican Britain*; so that the whole Church of the two Provinces, *Loegria* and *Northumberland*, had its Convents destroyed. But these Things I shall relate elsewhere, when I translate the Book concerning their Banishment.

---

## CHAP. XI.

### *The Britains lose their Kingdom.*

FOR a long Time after this the *Britains* lost the Crown of the Kingdom, and the Monarchy of the Island, and made no Endeavours to recover their ancient Dignity: But even that Part of the Country which yet remained to them, being subject not to one King, but three Tyrants, they often wasted by civil Wars. But neither did the *Saxons* as yet obtain the Crown, but were also subject to three Kings, and infested sometimes one another, sometimes the *Britains*.



CHAP.

C H A P. XII.

*Augustin being sent by Pope Gregory into Britain, preaches the Gospel to the Angles.*

**I**N the mean Time *Augustin* was sent by Pope St. *Gregory* into *Britain*, to preach the Word of God to the *Angles*, who being blinded with Pagan Superstition, had entirely extinguished *Christianity* in that Part of the Island which they possessed. But among the *Britains*, the *Christian Faith* yet flourished, and never failed among them from the Time of Pope *Eleutherius*, when it was first planted here. But after *Augustin* came, he found in their Province seven Bishopricks and an Archbishoprick, all filled with most devout Prelates, and a great Number of Abbies; by which the Flock of *Christ* was still kept in good Order. Among the rest there was in the City of *Bangor* a most noble Church, in which it is reported there was so great a Number of Monks, that when the Monastery was divided into seven Parts, each having their Priors over them, not one of them had less than three hundred Monks, who all lived by the Labour of their own Hands. The Name of their Abbot was *Dinoot*, a Man admirably

admirably skilled in the liberal Arts ; who, when *Augustin* required the Subjection of the *British* Bishops, and would have persuaded them to undertake the Work of the Gospel with him among the *Angles*, answered him with several Arguments, that they owed no Subjection to him, neither would they preach to their Enemies ; since they had their own Archbishop, and because the *Saxon* Nation persisted in depriving them of their Country. For this Reason they esteemed them their mortal Enemies, reckoned their Faith and Religion as nothing, and would no more communicate with the *Angles* than with Dogs.

---

C H A P. XIII.

*Edelfrid kills a great Number of the British Monks, but is at last routed by the Britains.*

THEREFORE *Hedelbert* King of *Kent*, when he saw the *Britains* disdaining Subjection to *Augustin*, and that they despised his Preaching, was highly provoked, and stirred up *Edelfrid* King of the *Northumbrians*, and the other petty Kings of the *Saxons*, to raise a great Army, and march to the City of *Bangor*, to de-  
stroy

stroy the Abbot *Dinoot*, and the rest of the Clergy who held them in Contempt. At his Instigation therefore they Assembled a prodigious Army, and in their March to the Province of the *Britains*, came to *Legecester*, where *Brocinail* Consul of the City was expecting their Coming. To the same City were come innumerable Monks and Hermits from several Provinces of the *Britains*, but especially from the City of *Bangor*, to pray for the Safety of their People. Whereupon *Edelfrid* King of the *Northumbrians*, collecting all his Forces joined Battle with *Brocinail*, who having a less Army to withstand him, at last quitted the City and fled, though not without having made a very great Slaughter of the Enemy. But *Edelfrid*, when he had taken the City, and understood upon what Occasion the Monks were come thither, commanded his Men to turn their Arms first against them; and so two hundred of them were honoured with the Crown of Martyrdom, and admitted into the Kingdom of Heaven that very Day. From thence this *Saxon* Tyrant proceeded on his March to *Bangor*; but upon the News of his outrageous Madness, the Leaders of the *Britains*, viz. *Blederic* Duke of *Cornwal*, *Margadud* King of the *Demetians*, and *Caduan* of the *Venedotians*, came from all Parts to meet him, and joining Battle with him, wounded him, and forced

A a

him

him to fly ; and besides killed of his Army to the Number of ten thousand and sixty six Men. On the *Britains* Side fell *Blederic* Duke of *Cornwal*, who was their Commander in those Wars.



THE



T H E

# British History.

---

The Twelfth Book.

---

C H A P. I.

*Caduan by a Treaty possesses all  
Britain on this Side the Humber,  
and Edelfrid the rest.*



**A**FTER this all the Princes of the *Britains* met together at the City of *Legecester*, and consented to make *Caduan* their King, that under his Command they might pursue *Edelfrid* beyond the *Humber*. Accordingly as soon as he was crowned, they flocked together from all Parts and passed the *Humber*: Of which when *Edelfrid* had Intelligence

A a 2

gence

gence, he entred into a Confederacy with all the *Saxon* Kings, and went to meet *Caduan*. At last as they were forming their Troops for a Battle, their Friends came, and made Peace between them on these Terms; That *Caduan* should enjoy that Part of *Britain* which lies on this Side the *Humber*, and *Edelfrid* that which is beyond it. As soon as they had confirmed this Agreement with an Oath made to their Hostages, there commenced such a Friendship between them, that they had all Things common. In the mean Time it happened, that *Edelfrid* banished his own Wife and married another, and bore so great a Hatred to her that was banished, that he would not suffer her to live in the Kingdom of *Northumberland*. Whereupon she being with Child went to King *Caduan*, to desire that by his Mediation she might be restored to her Husband. But when *Edelfrid* could by no Means be brought to consent to it, she continued to live with *Caduan*, till she was delivered of the Son which she had conceived. A little Time after her Delivery, *Cadnan* also had a Son born to him by the Queen his Wife, she having been big at the same Time. Then were the two Boys brought up together in a Manner suitable to their royal Birth, one of which was called *Cadwallo*, the other *Edwin*. When they were come up near to Mens Estate, their Parents  
sent

sent them to *Salomon* King of the *Armorican Britains*, that in his Court they might learn the Discipline of War, and other Princely Qualifications. This Prince therefore received them graciously, and admitted them to an Intimacy with him; so that there was none of their Age in the whole Court, that had a freer Access to, or could more familiarly discourse with the King than they. At last he himself was an Eye-witness of their Exploits against the Enemy, in which they very much signalized their Valour.

---

## C H A P. II.

*Cadwallo breaks the Covenant he  
had made with Edwin.*

**I**N Proceſs of Time when their Parents were dead, they returned to *Britain*, where they took upon them the Government of the Kingdom, and began to Practice the ſame Friendſhip their Fathers had done. Two Years after this, *Edwin* asked Leave of *Cadwallo* to wear a Crown; and to celebrate the ſame Solemnities, as had been uſed of old in the Parts of *Northumberland*. And when they had begun a Treaty upon this Subject by the River *Duglas*, that the

Matter might be adjusted according to the Advice of their wise Counsellors ; it happened that *Cadwallo* was laying on the other Side of the River in the Lap of a certain Nephew of his, whose Name was *Brian*. While Ambassadors were negotiating between them, *Brian* wept, and shed Tears so plentifully, that the Kings Face and Beard was wet with them. The King imagining that it rained, lifted up his Face, and seeing the young Man overflowing with Tears, asked him the Occasion of so sudden Grief. “ Good Reason, said he, have I and “ the whole *British* Nation to weep continually, which has groaned under the Oppression of Barbarians ever since the Time “ of *Malgo*, and has not yet got a Prince, “ to restore it to its ancient flourishing State. “ And even the little Honour that it had “ left, is lessened by your Indulgence ; since “ the *Saxons*, who are only Strangers, and “ always Traitors to our Country, must “ now be permitted to wear the same Crown “ as you do. For when once they shall attain to regal Dignity, it will be a great “ Addition to their Glory in the Country “ from whence they came ; and they may “ sooner invite over their Countrymen, for “ the utter Extirpation of our Race. For “ they have been always accustomed to “ Treachery, and never to keep Faith with “ any ; Which I think should be a Reason “ for

“ for our keeping them under, and not for  
“ exalting them. When King *Vortegirn*  
“ first retained them in his Service, they  
“ made a shew of living peaceably, and  
“ fighting for our Country, till they had  
“ an Opportunity of practising their Wick-  
“ edness; and then they returned Evil for  
“ Good, betray’d him, and made a cruel  
“ Massacre of the People of the Kingdom.  
“ Afterwards they betray’d *Aurelius Ambro-*  
“ *sius*, to whom, even after the most tre-  
“ mendous Oaths of Fidelity, at a Banquet  
“ with him they gave a Draught of Poison.  
“ They also betray’d *Arthur*, when setting  
“ aside the Covenant by which they were  
“ bound, they joined with his Nephew  
“ *Modred*, and fought against him. Lastly  
“ they broke Faith with King *Careticus*,  
“ and brought in upon him *Gormund* King  
“ of the *Africans*, by whose Disturbances  
“ our People were robbed of their Coun-  
“ try, and the King scandalously driven  
“ out.



## C H A P. III.

*A Quarrel between Cadwallo and Edwin.*

**A**T the mentioning of these Things by him, *Cadwallo* repented of his entring upon this Treaty, and sent Word to *Edwin*, that he could by no Means induce his Counsellors to consent to his Petition. For they alledge, that It is contrary to Law and the ancient Establishment, that an Island, which has always had no more than one Crown, should be now under Subjection to two Crowned Heads. This Message incensed *Edwin*, and made him break off the Conference, and retire into *Northumberland*, saying, he would be crowned without *Cadwallo's* Leave. When *Cadwallo* was told this, he declared to him by his Ambassadors, that he would cut off his crowned Head, if he presumed to wear a Crown within the Kingdom of *Britain*.



C H A P.

## C H A P. IV.

*Cadwallo being vanquished by Edwin is driven out of the Kingdom.*

**T**HIS proved the Occasion of a War between them, in which after several Engagements between their Men, they at last met together themselves beyond the *Humber*, and had a Battle, wherein *Cadwallo* lost many thousand of his Followers, and was put to Flight. From hence he marched with Precipitation through *Albania*, and went over to *Ireland*. But *Edwin* after this Victory, led his Army through the Provinces of the *Britains*, and burning the Cities before him, grievously tortured the Citizens and Country People. During this Exercise of his Cruelty, *Cadwallo* never ceased endeavouring to return back to his Country in a Fleet, but without Success; because to whatever Port he steered, *Edwin* met him with his Forces, and hindered his landing. For there was come to him from *Spain* a very skilful Southsayer named *Pollitus*, who by the Flight of Birds, and the Courses of the Stars, foretold him all the Disasters that would happen. By this means *Edwin* getting Knowledge of *Cadwallo's* Return, prepared to meet him, and shattered his Ships so that he

he drowned his Men and beat him off from all his Ports. *Cadwallo* not knowing what Course to take, was almost in Despair of ever returning. At last it came into his Head, to go to *Salomon* King of the *Armorican Britains*, that he might desire his Assistance and Advice, to enable him to return to his Kingdom. And so as he was steering his Course towards *Armorica*, a very strong Tempest rose on a sudden, which dispersed the Ships of his Companions, and in a short Time left no two of them together. The Pilot of the Kings Ship was seized immediately with so great a Fear, that quitting the Stern, he left the Vessel to the Disposal of Fortune; so that all that Night it was tossed up and down in great Danger by the raging Waves. The next Morning they arrived at a certain Island called *Garnareia*, where with very great Difficulty they got ashore. *Cadwallo* was forthwith seized with such Grief for the Loss of his Companions, that for three Days and Nights together he refused to eat, but lay Sick upon his Bed. The fourth Day he was taken with a very great longing for some Venison, and causing *Brian* to be called, made him acquainted with it. Whereupon *Brian* took his Bow and Quiver, and went through the Island, that if he could light on any wild Beast, he might get a Repast of it. And when he had walked over the whole Island,

Island, without finding what he was in Quest of, he was extremely concerned that he could not gratify his Masters Desire; and was afraid his Sickneſs would prove Mortal, if his Longing were not ſatiſhed. He therefore fell upon a new Device, and cut a piece of Fleſh out of his own Thigh, which he roasted upon a Spit, and carried to the King for Veniſon. The King thinking it to be real Veniſon, began to eat of it to his great Refreshment, admiring the Sweetneſs of it, which he fancied exceeded any Fleſh he ever had taſted before. At laſt when he had fully ſatiſhed his Appetite, he became chearfuller and brisker, and in three Days Time was perfectly well again. Then the Wind ſtanding fair, he gets ready his Ship; and hoizing Sails they purſue their Voyage, and arrive at the City *Kjdaleta*. From thence they go to King *Salomon*, by whom they are received kindly and with all ſuitable Reſpect: And as ſoon as he had learned the Occaſion of their Coming, he made them a Promise of Aſſiſtance, and ſpoke to them as follows.



## C H A P. V.

*The Speech of Salomon King of  
Armorica to Cadwallo.*

“ I T is a Grief to Us, Noble Youths,  
“ that the Country of your An-  
“ cestors is oppressed by a barbarous Nati-  
“ on, and that you are ignominiously dri-  
“ ven out of it. But since other Men are  
“ able to defend their Kingdoms, it is a  
“ Wonder your People should lose so fruit-  
“ ful an Island, and not be able to withstand  
“ the Nation of the *Angles*, whom our  
“ Countrymen have in Contempt. While  
“ the People of this Country lived together  
“ with yours in your *Britain*, they bore  
“ sway over all the provincial Kingdoms,  
“ and never could be subdued by any Nati-  
“ on but the *Romans*. Neither did the *Ro-*  
“ *mans* do this by their own Power, as I  
“ have been lately informed, but by a Dif-  
“ fension among the Nobility of the Island.  
“ And even the *Romans*, though they held it  
“ under their subjection for a Time, yet  
“ upon the Loss and Slaughter of their Ru-  
“ lers, were driven out with Disgrace. But  
“ after the *Britains* came into this Province  
“ under the Conduct of *Maximian* and  
“ *Conan*, those that remained never had the  
“ Happiness afterwards of holding an unin-  
“ terrupted Possession of the Crown. For  
“ though

“ though many of their Princes maintained  
 “ the ancient Dignity of their Ancestors;  
 “ yet their weak Heirs that succeeded, and  
 “ which were more in Number, entirely  
 “ lost it, upon the Invasion of their Ene-  
 “ mies. Therefore I am grieved for the  
 “ Weakness of your People, since we are  
 “ of the same Race with you, and the Name  
 “ *Britains* is common to you, and to the  
 “ Nation that bravely defends their Coun-  
 “ try, which you see at War with all its  
 “ Neighbours.

C H A P. VI.

*Cadwallo's Answer to Salomon.*

**W**HEN he had concluded his Speech,  
*Cadwallo*, who was a little put to the  
 Blush, answered him after this Manner:  
 “ Royal Sir, whose Descent is from a Race of  
 “ Kings; I give you many Thanks for your  
 “ Promise of assisting me to recover my  
 “ Kingdom. But what you say is a Won-  
 “ der, that my People have not maintained  
 “ the Dignity of their Ancestors, since the  
 “ Time that the *Britains* came to these Pro-  
 “ vinces, I am far from thinking to be such.  
 “ For the noblest Men of the whole King-  
 “ dom followed those Leaders, and there  
 “ remained only the baser Sort to enjoy their  
 “ Honours; who being raised to a high  
 Quality,

“ Quality, on a sudden were puffed up above  
“ what their Station required ; and grown  
“ wanton with Affluence of Riches, gave  
“ themselves up to commit *such Fornication,*  
“ *as is not so much as named among the Gen-*  
“ *tiles ;* and (as *Gildas* the Historian testi-  
“ fies,) were not only guilty of this Vice,  
“ but of all the Enormities that are incident  
“ to humane Nature. And that which  
“ chiefly prevailed, to the entire Overthrow  
“ of all Goodness, was the Hatred of  
“ Truth with its Assertors, the Love of a  
“ Lye with the Inventors of it, the embrac-  
“ ing of Evil for Good, the Veneration of  
“ Wickedness for Grace, the receiving of  
“ *Satan* for an Angel of Light. Kings were  
“ anointed, not for the sake of God, but  
“ such as were more cruel than the rest ;  
“ and were soon after Murdered by their  
“ Anointers, without Examination, having  
“ chosen others yet more cruel in their  
“ Room. But if any of them shew’d any  
“ Mildness, or seemed a Favourer of Truth,  
“ against him, as the Subverter of *Britain*,  
“ was all their Malice and their Weapons  
“ bent. In short, Things pleasing to God  
“ or displeasing, with them had the same  
“ Weight, if the worse were not the weigh-  
“ tier. Therefore were all Affairs manag-  
“ ed contrary to publick Safety, as if the  
“ true Physician of all had left them desti-  
“ tute of Cure. And thus was every Thing  
“ done

“ done without Discretion, and that not  
“ only by Secular Men, but by the Lords  
“ Flock, and its Pastors. Therefore it is not  
“ to be wondred, that such a degenerate  
“ Race, so odious to God for their Vices,  
“ lost a Country which they had so heinous-  
“ ly corrupted. For God was willing to  
“ execute his Vengeance upon them, by suffer-  
“ ing a Foreign People to come upon them,  
“ who were to drive us out of our Possessions.  
“ Notwithstanding it would be a worthy  
“ Act, if God would permit it, to restore  
“ our Subjects to their ancient Dignity, to  
“ prevent the Reproach that may be thrown  
“ upon our Race, that we were weak Ru-  
“ lers, who did not exert ourselves in our  
“ own Defence. And I do the more freely  
“ ask your Assistance, as you are of the  
“ same Blood with us. For the great *Mal-*  
“ *go*, who was the fourth King of *Britain*  
“ after *Arthur*, had two Sons, named *En-*  
“ *nianus* and *Runo*. *Ennianus* begot *Belin*,  
“ *Belin* *Jago*, *Jago* *Caduan* who was my  
“ Father. *Runo*, who after his Brothers  
“ Death was driven out by the *Saxons*,  
“ came to this Province and bestow'd his  
“ Daughter on Duke *Hoel*, the Son of that  
“ great *Hoel* who shared with *Arthur* in his  
“ Conquests. Of her was born *Alan*, of  
“ *Alan Hoel* your Father, who while he  
“ lived was a Terrour to all *Gaul*.

## C H A P. VII.

## Brian kills Edwins Magician.

**I**N the mean Time while he was spending the Winter with *Salomon*, they entred upon a Resolution, that *Brian* should pass over into *Britain*, and take some Method to kill *Edwins* Magician, lest he might by his usual Art inform him of *Cadwallo's* coming. And when with this Design he had arrived at *Hamo's* Port, he took upon himself the Habit of a poor Man, and made himself a staff of Iron sharp at the End, with which he might kill the Magician, if he should happen to meet with him. From thence he went to *Tork*, where *Edwin* then resided; and when entred that City joined himself to the poor People, that waited for Alms before the Kings Gate. But as he was going to and fro, it happened that his Silter came out of the Hall, with a Bason in her Hand, to fetch Water for the Queen. She had been taken by *Edwin* at the City of *Worcester*, when after *Cadwallo's* Flight he was acting his Hostilities upon the Provinces of the *Britains*. As she was therefore passing by *Brian*, he immediately knew her, and breaking forth into Tears, called to her with a low Voice; at which  
the

the Damsel turning her Face, was in Doubt at first who it should be, but upon a nearer Approach discovered it to be her Brother, and was near falling into a Swoon, for Fear he might by some unlucky Accident be known and taken by the Enemy. She therefore forbore Saluting him; or entering into familiar Discourse with him, but told him in short, as if she was talking upon some other Subject, the State of the Court, and shew'd him the Magician he was enquiring for, who as it happened was at that very Time walking among the poor People, while the Alms was a Distributing among them. *Brian*, as soon as he had taken Knowledge of the Man, ordered his Sister to Steal out privately from her Apartment the Night following, and come to him hard by an old Church without the City, where he would conceal himself in Expectation of her. Then dismissing her, he thrust himself in among the Crowd of poor People, in that Part where *Pellitus* was placing them. And the same Moment he got Access to him, he lifted up his Staff, and at once gave him such a Stab under the Breast as killed him. This done, he threw away his Staff, and passed undistinguished among the rest, and unsuspected by any of the Bystanders, and by good Providence got to the Place of Concealment which he had appointed. His Sister, when Night came on, endeavoured

B b

what

what she could to get out, but was not able; because *Edwin*, being terrified at the Killing of *Pellitus*, had set a strict Watch about the Court, who making a narrow Search refused to let her go out. When *Brian* found this, he retired from that Place and went to *Exeter*, where he called together the *Britains*, and told them what he had done. Afterwards having dispatched away Messengers to *Cadwallo*, he fortified that City, and sent Word to all the *British* Nobility, that they should bravely defend their Cities and Towns, and joyfully expect *Cadwallo's* coming to their Relief in a short Time, with auxiliary Forces from *Salomon*. Upon the spreading of this News over the whole Island, *Peanda* King of the *Mercians* with a very great Army of *Saxons* came to *Exeter*, and besieged *Brian*.

---

C H A P. VIII.

*Cadwallo takes Peanda, and routs his Army.*

**I**N the mean Time arrived *Cadwallo* with ten thousand Men, whom King *Salomon* had delivered to him; and with them marched straight to the Siege against King *Peanda*. But as he was going, he divided his

his Forces into four Parts, and then made no Delay to advance and join Battel with the Enemy, wherein *Peanda* was forthwith taken, and his Army routed. For finding no other Way for his own Safety, he surrendered himself to *Cadwallo*, and gave Hostages, with a Promise that he would assist him against the *Saxons*. *Cadwallo* after this Success against him, summoned together his Nobility that had been a long Time in a decaying State, and marched to *Northumberland* against *Edwin*, and made continual Devastations in that Country. When *Edwin* was informed of it, he assembled all the petty Kings of the *Angles*, and meeting the *Britains* in a Field called *Hevesfeld*, presently gave them Battle, but was killed, and almost all the People with him, together with *Offrid* his Son, and *Godbold* King of the *Orkneys*, who had come to their Assistance.

---

## C H A P. IX.

*Cadwallo kills Osric and Adan in Fight.*

**H**AVING thus obtained the Victory, *Cadwallo* marched through the Provinces of the *Angles*, and committed such Outrages upon the *Saxons*, that he neither spared Age

nor Sex : For his Resolution being to extirpate the whole Race out of *Britain*, all that ever he found he put to extreme Tortures. After this he had a Battel with *Osric Edwins* Successor, and killed him together with his two Nephews, who ought to have reigned after him. He also killed *Adan* King of the *Scots*, who came to their Assistance.

## C H A P. X.

*Oswald Routs Peanda in Fight, but is killed by Cadwallo coming in upon him.*

**T**HEIR Deaths made Room for *Oswald* to succeed to the Kingdom of *Northumberland*; but *Cadwallo* drove him with the rest that had given him Disturbance, to the very Wall, which the Emperor *Severus* had built of old between *Britain* and *Scotland*. Afterwards he sent *Peanda* King of the *Mercians*, and the greatest Part of his Army to the same Place, to give him Battel. But *Oswald*, as he was Besieged one Night by *Peanda* in the Place called *Hevesfeld*, that is, the heavenly Field, set up there our Lords Cross, and commanded his Men to speak with a very loud Voice these Words; “ Let us all kneel down, and pray  
“ the

“ the Almighty, living and true God, to  
 “ defend us from the proud Army of the  
 “ King of *Britain*, and his wicked Leader  
 “ *Peanda*. For he knows how justly we wage  
 “ this War for the Safety of our People.”  
 They all therefore did as he commanded  
 them, and advanced at Break of Day against  
 the Enemy, and by the Merit of their Faith  
 gained the Victory. *Cadwallo* upon hear-  
 ing this News, being inflamed with Rage,  
 assembled his Army, and went in pursuit of  
 the holy King *Oswald*; and in a Battel he had  
 with him at a Place called *Burne*, *Peanda*  
 broke in upon him and Killed him.

C H A P. XI.

*Oswin submits to Cadwallo. Pe-  
 anda desires leave of Cadwallo  
 to make War against him.*

**O**SWALD with many thousands of his  
 Men being killed, his Brother *Oswin*  
 succeeded him in the Kingdom of *Northum-  
 berland*, and by making large Presents of  
 Gold and Silver to *Cadwallo*, who was now  
 possessed of the Government of all *Britain*,  
 made his Peace and Submission to him.  
 Upon this *Alfrid* his Brother and *Oidwald*  
 his Brothers Son began an Insurrection; but

being not able to hold out against him, they fled to *Peanda* King of the *Mercians*, desiring him to assemble his Army and pass the *Humber* with them, that he might deprive *Oswin* of his Kingdom. But *Peanda* fearing to break the Peace, which *Cadwallo* had settled through the Kingdom of *Britain*, deferred beginning any Disturbance without his Leave, till he could some Way work him up, either to make War himself upon *Oswin*, or allow him the Liberty of doing it. At a certain Pentecost therefore, when *Cadwallo* was celebrating that Festival at *London*, and for the greater Solemnity wore the Crown of *Britain*, all the Kings of the *Angles*, excepting only *Oswin*, being present, as also all the Dukes of the *Britains*; *Peanda* went to the King, and enquired of him the Reason, why *Oswin* alone was wanting, when all the Princes of the *Saxons* were present. *Cadwallo* answered, That his Sickness was the Cause of it; to which the other reply'd, That he had sent over to *Germany* for more *Saxons*, to revenge the Death of his Brother *Oswald* upon them both. He told him further, that he had broke the Peace of the Kingdom, as being the sole Author of the War and Disension among them; since *Edelfrid* King of *Northumberland* and *Oidwald* his Brothers Son, had been by him harassed with a War, and driven out of their own Country. He also

also desired Leave, either to kill him, or banish him the Kingdom.

C H A P. XII.

*Cadwallo is advised to suffer Peanda to make an Insurrection against Ofwin.*

THIS Matter made the King enter upon various Thoughts, and hold a private Consultation with his intimate Friends, what Course to take. Among the rest that offered their Proposals, *Margadud* King of the *Demetians*, spoke as follows; “ Royal Sir, since you have proposed “ to expel the Race of the *Angles* from the “ Coasts of *Britain*, why do you alter your “ Resolution, and suffer them to continue “ in Peace among us? At least you may “ permit them to fall out among themselves, “ and let our Country owe its Deliverance “ to their own civil Broils. No Faith is to “ be kept with one that knows nothing but “ Treachery, and is continually laying “ Snares for him to whom he owes Fidelity. Such have the *Saxons* always been “ to our Nation, from the very first Time “ of their coming among us. What Faith “ ought we to keep with them? Let *Peand-*

“ *da* immediately have Leave to go against  
“ *Oswin*, that by this civil Dissension and  
“ Destruction of one another, our Island  
“ may get rid of them.

---

C H A P. XIII.

*Peanda is killed by Oswin : Cadwallo dies.*

**B**Y these and other Words to the same Effect, *Cadwallo* was prevailed upon to grant *Peanda* the Leave he desired : Who thereupon assembling together a vast Army went to the *Humber*, and by laying waste that Country, began a fierce War upon the King. *Oswin* was at last reduced to such Extremity, that he was forced to promise him innumerable Royal Ornaments, and other Presents more than one would believe, to make him desist from ruining his Country, and return home without committing any more Hostilities. But when the other could by no Entreaties be prevailed upon to do it, the King in Hopes of Divine Assistance, though he had a less Army, however gave him Battle near the River *Winned*, and having killed *Peanda* and thirty other Commanders, gained the Victory. *Peanda* being killed, *Wulfred* his Son, by a Grant from *Cadwallo*,

*wallo*, succeeded to the Kingdom, and joining with *Eba* and *Edbert* two Leaders of the *Mercians*, rebelled against *Oswin*; but at last by *Cadwallo's* Command made Peace with him. At length after forty eight Years were expired, that most noble and potent King of the *Britains* *Cadwallo*, being grown infirm with Age and Sickness, departed this Life upon the fifteenth of the Calends of *December*. The *Britains* embalmed his Body, and placed it with wonderful Art in a brazen Statue, which was cast according to the Measure of his Stature. This Statue they set up with complete Armour, upon an admirable beautiful brazen Horse, over the Western Gate of *London*, for a Monument of the abovementioned Victory, and for a Terrour to the *Saxons*. They also built under it a Church in Honour of *St. Martin*, in which Divine Obsequies are celebrated for him and the faithful deceased.

---

C H A P. XIV.

*Cadwallader succeeds Cadwallo.*

**H**E was succeeded in the Kingdom by *Cadwallader* his Son, whom *Bede* calls the Youth *Elidualda*. At first he maintained

ned the Government with Peace and Honour, but after twelve Years Enjoyment of the Crown, he fell into a Fit of Sickneſs, and a Civil War broke out among the *Britains*. His Mother was *Peanda's* Siſter, by the ſame Father but a different Mother, deſcended from the noble Race of the *Geniſſeans*. For *Cadwallo*, after his Reconciliation with her Brother, made her the Partner of his Bed, and had *Cadwallader* by her.

---

## C H A P. XV.

*The Britains are compelled by Peſtilence and Famine to leave Britain.  
Cadwalladers Lamentation.*

**D**URING his Sickneſs, the *Britains* (as we ſaid before) quarrelling among themſelves, make a wicked Deſtruction of a rich Country; and this again was attended with another Miſfortune. For this beſotted People was puniſhed with a grievous and memorable Famine; ſo that every Province was deſtitute of all manner of Suſtenance, but what could be taken in Hunting. After the Famine followed a terrible Peſtilence, which in a ſhort Time deſtroyed

destroyed such Multitudes of People, that the Living were not sufficient to bury the Dead. Those of them that remained, flying their Country in whole Troops together, went to the Countries beyond Sea, and while they were under Sail they with a mournful howling Voice Sung; *Thou hast given us, O God, like Sheep appointed for Meat, and hast scattered us among the Heathen.* Also Cadwallader himself, in his Voyage with his miserable Fleet to *Armorica*, made this Addition to the Lamentation. " Wo to  
" us Sinners, for our grievous Impieties,  
" wherewith we have not ceased to pro-  
" voke God, while we had space for Re-  
" pentance. Therefore does the Revenge  
" of his Power lye heavy upon us, and  
" extirpate us out of our native Soil; which  
" neither the *Romans* of Old, nor the  
" *Scots* or *Picts* afterwards, nor yet the  
" Treacherous *Saxons* with all their Craft  
" were able to do. But in vain have we re-  
" covered our Country so often from them;  
" since it was not the Will of God, that we  
" should perpetually hold the Government  
" of it. He who is the true Judge, when  
" he saw we were by no means to be re-  
" claimed from our Wickedness, and that  
" no humane Power could expel our Race,  
" was willing to chastise our Folly himself;  
" and has turned his Anger against us, by  
" which we are driven out in Crowds from  
" our

“ our native Country. Return therefore  
 “ ye *Romans* ; return *Scots* and *Picts* ; re-  
 “ turn *Ambrons* and *Saxons* : Behold, *Bri-*  
 “ *tain* lays open to you being now by the  
 “ Wrath of God made desolate, which you  
 “ were never able to do. It is not your  
 “ Valour that expells us ; but the Power  
 “ of the supreme King, whom we never  
 “ ceased to provoke.

## C H A P. XVI.

*Cadwallader with his People goes  
 to Alan : The Saxons seize all  
 Britain.*

**W** I T H these dolorous Complaints he  
 arrived at the *Armorican* Coast, and  
 went with his whole Company to King *Alan*  
 the Nephew of *Salomon*, by whom he was  
 honourably received. So that *Britain* being  
 now destitute of its ancient Inhabitants, ex-  
 cepting a few in *Wales* that escaped the  
 general Mortality, became a frightful Place  
 even to the *Britains* themselves for eleven  
 Years after. Neither was it at the same  
 Time any kinder to the *Saxons*, who died  
 in it without Intermission. Notwithstan-  
 ding the Remainder of them, after this  
 raging Plague was ceased, according to their  
 old

old Custom sent Word over to their Countrymen, that the Island of *Britain* was now free'd of its native Inhabitants, and lay open to them, if they would come over to inhabit it. As soon as they had received this Information, that odious People, gathering together an innumerable Multitude of Men and Women, arrived in the Parts of *Northumberland*, and inhabited the Provinces that lay desolate from *Albania* to *Cornwal*. For there was now no Body to hinder them, excepting the wretchedly poor Remains of the *Britains*, who continued together in the Thickets of the Woods in *Wales*. From that Time the Power of the *Britains* ceased in the Island, and the *Angles* began their Reign.

---

C H A P. XVII.

*Cadwallader is by the Voice of an Angel deterred from returning to Britain.*

AFTER some space of Time, when the People had recovered Strength, *Cadwallader* being mindful of his Kingdom, which was now free from the Contagion of the Pestilence, desired Assistance of *Alan* towards the recovering of his Dominions.

ons. The King granted his Request; but as he was getting ready a Fleet, he was commanded by the loud Voice of an Angel to desist from his Enterprize. For God was not willing the *Britains* should Reign any longer in the Island, before the Time came which *Merlin* prophetically foretold *Arthur* of. It also commanded him to go to *Rome* to Pope *Sergius*, where after doing Penance he should be inrolled among the Saints. It told him withal, that the *Britains* by the Merit of their Faith should again recover the Island, when the Time decreed for it was come. But this would not be accomplished, before they should be possessed of his Reliques, and transport them from *Rome* into *Britain*. At the same Time also should the Reliques of the other Saints be found, which had been hid on Account of the Invasion of Pagans; and then at last would they recover their lost Kingdom. When the holy Prince had received the heavenly Message, he went straight to King *Alan*, and gave him an Account of what had been told him.



C H A P.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*Cadwallader goes to Rome and dies.*

**T**HEN *Alan* had Recourse to several Books, as the Prophecies of the Eagle that prophesied at *Shaftsbury*, and the Veries of *Sibyl* and *Merlin*; and made diligent search in them, to see whether the Revelation made to *Cadwallader* agreed with those written Oracles. And when he could find nothing contradictory to it, he admonished *Cadwallader* to submit to the Divine Dispensation, and laying aside the Thoughts of *Britain*, perform what the Angelical Voice had commanded him. But moved him withal, to send his Son *Ivor* and his Nephew *Ini* over into the Island, to govern the Remainder of the *Britains*; for Fear a Nation, that was descended of so ancient a Race, might lose their Liberty by the Incursions of Barbarians. Then *Cadwallader* renouncing worldly Cares for the sake of God and his everlasting Kingdom, went to *Rome*, and was confirmed by Pope *Sergius*: And being seized with a sudden Illness was upon the twelfth of the Calends of *May*, in the six hundred and eighty ninth Year of our Lords Incarnation, free'd from the Corruption of the Flesh, and admitted into the Glories of the heavenly Kingdom.

C H A P.

## C H A P. XIX.

*The two Britains Ivor and Ini in vain infest the Nation of the Angles. Adelstan the first King of the Angles.*

AS soon as *Ivor* and *Ini* had got together their Ships, they with all the Forces they could raise arrived in the Island, and for forty nine Years together cruelly infested the Nation of the *Angles*, but to little Purpose. For the abovementioned Mortality and Famine, together with the inveterate Spirit of Faction that was among them, had made this proud People so much degenerate, that they were not able to gain any Advantage of the Enemy. And being now also overrun with Barbarity, they were no longer called *Britains*, but *Gualenses*, *Welshmen*; a Word derived either from *Gualo* their Leader, or *Guales* their Queen, or from their Barbarity. But the *Saxons* managed Affairs with more Prudence, maintained Peace and Concord among themselves, tilled their Grounds, rebuilt their Cities and Towns, and so throwing off the Dominion of the *Britains*, bore sway over all *Loegria*, under their Leader *Adelstan*, who first wore a Crown  
amongst

amongst them. But the *Welshmen*, being very much degenerated from the Nobility of the *Britains*, never after recovered the Monarchy of the Island; on the contrary, what by Quarrels among themselves, what by Wars with the *Saxons*, their Country was a perpetual Scene of Misery and Slaughter.

C H A P. XX.

*Jeffrey of Monmouth's Conclusion.*

**B**UT as for the Kings that have succeeded among them in *Wales*, since that Time, I leave the History of them to *Karadoc of Lancarvan* my Contemporary; as I do also the Kings of the *Saxons* to *William of Malmesbury*, and *Henry of Huntington*. But I advise them to be silent concerning the Kings of the *Britains*, since they have not that Book writ in the *British* Tongue, which *Walter Archdeacon of Oxford* brought out of *Britain*, and which being a true History published in Honour of those Princes. I have thus taken Care to Translate.

F I N I S.

BOOKS FOR SALE

ALPHABETICALLY LISTED  
AND THE PRICES  
OF THE BOOKS

AND APPLICATION

TO THE STUDENT

OF THE UNIVERSITY

OF CALIFORNIA

AND THE

LIBRARY

OF THE UNIVERSITY

OF CALIFORNIA

AND THE

LIBRARY

OF THE UNIVERSITY

OF CALIFORNIA

AND THE

LIBRARY



An EXPLICATION of  
the ancient Names of Countries,  
Cities, Rivers, Mountains, &c.  
mentioned in this History.

N. B. *Those Names are here omitted, which the History itself explains wherever it mentions them: As also those, concerning which we have now no certain Knowledge, or probable Conjecture.*

A.

**M**OUNT *Agnes* or *Maidens Castle*, now  
**Edinburgh Castle.**

*Akalon.* *Milton* conjectures the Author means the **Achelous**, or the **Acheron**, both Rivers in *Greece*.

*Alba*, in Book I. Chap. 3. it means the City of **Albano** in *Italy*, but elsewhere the River **Aube** in *France*.

*Albania*, **Scotland.**

*Alclud*, **Dunbritton** in *Scotland*.

C c 2

*Allobroges,*

---

*The Explication of*

---

*Allobroges*, the ancient Inhabitants of a Part of Savoy and Switzerland.

Mountain of *Ambrius*, *Ambresbury* in Wiltshire.

*Andegavia*, the Dutchy of *Anjou* in France.

*Aquitain*, the Province of *Guienne* in France.

*Armorica*, *Britain* in France.

Isle of *Avallon*, *Glassebury* in Somersetshire.

*Augustodunum*, *Autun* in France.

B.

**BADON**, Bath in Somersetshire.

*Bajoca*, *Bayeux* in France.

*Bangor*, *Banchor* or *Bonium* in Flintshire, and not the City of this Name in Caernarvonshire.

*Bolonia*, *Bologn* in France.

C.

**CALATERIUM**, the Forest of *Galtres* in the North-Riding of Yorkshire.

Wood of *Caledon*, according to *Higdens Polychronicon*, means in B. IX. Ch. 3. *Celtdon* Wood near *Lincoln*; though perhaps in some other Places of this Book, particularly in *Merlin's Prophecy*, it may mean the *Caledonian* Wood in Scotland.

*Cambula*, the River *Camel* or *Alan* in Cornwall.

*Camus*,

---

*Names of Places.*

---

*Camus*, no doubt the Author intends by it

*Cadmus*, now **Caen** in *Normandy*.

*Carguit* or *Warguit*, probably **Warwick**.

*Cenomania*, the Country of **Maine** in *France*.

*Cirecestre*, **Cirencester** in *Gloucestershire*.

City of *Claudius*, **Gloucester**.

*Cloarius*, a Hill upon the Banks of the River

*Wye* in *Herefordshire*: Its modern Name

I do not find. See *Genoreu*.

D.

**DACIA**, our ancient *English* Historians commonly mean by it **Denmark**.

*Daneian* Wood, **Dean Forest** in *Gloucestershire*.

*Deira*, a Province of the *Saxons* containing *Torkshire*, *Durham*, *Lancashire*, *Westmoreland* and *Cumberland*.

*Demetia*, **South Wales**.

*Dorobellum*, probably **Deal** in *Kent*.

*Dorobernia*, **Canterbury**.

*Duglas*, the River **Dugles** in *Lancashire*.

E.

**EPIFFEROD**, by *Nennius* and other Historians called *Epifford*, thought by *Camden* to be **Aylesford** in *Kent*.

*Erir*, **Snowdon Hill** in *Wales*.

---

*The Explication of*

---

G.

**G**ANIA, the River ~~Wye~~ in *Herefordshire*.  
*Garnareia*, the Name is unknown, tho'  
the Author probably means the Isle of  
**Guernsey**.

*Genoreu*, according to Archbishop *Usher*, is  
a Village upon the *Wye* in *Herefordshire*,  
that still retains the same Name.

*Godland*, the Isle of **Gotthland** in the *Baltick*  
*Sea*.

H.

**H**AMO's Port, *Southampton*.  
*Hergin*, *Herefordshire*.

*Hevesfeld*, supposed to be **Haledon** in *Nor-*  
*thumberland*.

K.

**K**AERCONAN, *Connisborough* in  
the *West-Riding of Yorkshire*.

*Kaerliudcoit*, *Lincoln*.

*Kaermerdin*, *Caermarthen*.

*Kaicester*, probably **Chichester**.

*Kambria*, *Wales*.

*Karitia*, a Name wholly unknown, though  
perhaps the Author intends by it **Calais**  
in *France*.

*Killaraus*, **Kildare** in *Ireland*.

L A M.

---

*Names of Places.*

---

L.

**L**AMGOEMAGOT, the **Haw** near Plymouth.

Lampatern, Lhan-Badarn-Haw in Cardiganshire, anciently an Episcopal See.

Legecester, Chester.

Lengria, Langres in France.

Lindesia, Lincolnshire.

Loegria, England.

Londonesia, it means no doubt Lodonesia, now

Lothian in Scotland.

Lake Lumond, Lough-Lomond in Scotland.

M.

**M**ALVA, a River in Africa, called by our modern Geographers Malbia, rising in Mount Atlas, and running through the Kingdom of Argiers into the Mediterranean Sea.

Malvernia, Malvern in Worcestershire.

Mauritania, Barbary in Africa.

Menevia, St. Davids in Pembrokeeshire.

Mercia, one of the Kingdoms of the Saxon Heptarchy.

Mount of Michael, still called Mount St.

Michael, on the Coast of Normandy.

Morines, the ancient Inhabitants of the Boulinois in France.

Mureif, probably Murray in Scotland.

---

*The Explication of*

---

N.

**NAUTGALLIM** or *Gallemborne*, *Walbrook* in *London*.  
*Neustria*, *Normandy* in *France*.

P.

**MOUNT** *Paladur*, *Shaftsbury* in *Dorsetshire*.  
*Philenian* Altars, two Altars erected between *Carthage* and *Cyrenaica* or *Barca*.  
*V. Sallust. de Bello Jugurthino*.  
*Pictavia*, *Poictou*, a Part of the Province of *Orleans* in *France*.  
*Portcestre*, formerly a famous Haven near *Portsmouth*.

R.

**REDONUM**  *Rennes* in *France*.  
*Ruscicada*, some Geographers call it now *Stora* or *Estora*, in the Kingdom of *Tunis* in *Africa*.  
*Ruteni*, the ancient Inhabitants of *Ro-bergue*, a Part of the Province of *Guienne* in *France*; also the City of *Rhodes* in *France*.  
*Rutupi*, by some supposed to be *Richborough* in *Kent*.

*SALINÆ,*

---

*Names of Places.*

---

S.

**SALINÆ**, probably **Salines** in the Kingdom of *Tripoli* in *Africa*.

**Senones**, the ancient Inhabitants of the **Senonnois**, a Part of the Province of *Champagne* in *France*.

**Stanheng**, **Stonehenge** in *Wiltshire*.

T.

**TERIVANA**, **Terouanne** formerly a great City, now a small Village in the *Netherlands*.

**Tintagol**, **Tindagel** in *Cornwal*.

**Trigeria**, it is uncertain whether the Author means **Treguier** in the Province of *Brittain* in *France*.

**Trinovantum**, **London**.

**Tyrrhenian Sea**, the Author can hardly be supposed to mean by it the Sea now so called upon the Coast of *Italy*. Some conjecture it ought to be read the *Pyrenean Sea*; at least it ought to be some Part of the Sea that lies between the Straits of *Gibraltar* and the Mouth of the *Loire* in *France*.

V.

**VENEDOTIA**, **North-Wales**.

**Verolam**, an ancient Town now in Ruins near **St. Albans** in *Hertfordshire*.

**WINNED**,

W.

**W**INNED, supposed to be the River  
Are in *Torkshire*.

*Wisseans*, the same I conjecture as the Au-  
thor in some Places calls *Gewissens*; and  
these were perhaps the *Wiccij*, who in-  
habited *Worcestershire*, and some adjoining  
Counties.



THE



# THE INDEX.

## A.

*AARON* a British Martyr in Dioclesians Persecution. Book V. Chap. 5.

*Adan* King of the Scots in assisting the Saxons is killed by *Cadwallo*. XII. 9.

*Adelstan* the first King of the Angles that wore a Crown. XII. 19.

*Aeneas* the Trojan, gains the Kingdom of Italy and marries *Lavinia*. I. 3.

*Aganippus* King of the Franks marries *Cordeilla* Daughter of King *Leir*. II. 11.

*Agned M.* by whom built. II. 7.

*Alan* King of *Armorica* consults old Prophecies about *Cadwalladers* Revelation. XII. 18.

*Alban*, his Charity to his Confessor *Amphibalus*, and Martyrdom. V. 5.

*Albanaet*

---

The INDEX.

---

- Albanact* a Son of *Brutus*, killed by *Humber*. II. 1.  
*Albania* called so from him. II. 1.  
*Albion* the ancient Name of *Britain*. I. 16.  
*Alclud* by whom built. II. 7.  
*Aldroen* King of *Armorica*, his Answer to  
Archbishop *Guethelins* Petition. VI. 4.  
he sends succours to the *Britains*. *Ibid.*  
*Alfrid* and *Oidwald* begin an Insurrection  
against *Oswin*. XII. 11.  
*Alifantinam* King of *Spain*, is slain in a Bat-  
tle with *Arthur*. X. 9.  
*Allectus* having killed *Carausius*, tyrannizes  
over the *Britains*. V. 4. is routed in Bat-  
tle and killed by *Asclepiodotus*. *Ibid.*  
*Ambrius* Founder of a famous Monastery  
near *Salisbury*. VI. 15.  
*Anacletus* is taken Prisoner by *Brutus*. I. 5.  
is compelled by him to betray the *Greci-*  
*an Camp*. I. 8.  
*Andragius* one of the ancient Kings of *Bri-*  
*tain*. III. 19.  
*Androgeus* is made Duke of *Trinovantum* by  
*Cassibellaun*. III. 20. his Quarrel with  
*Cassibellaun*. IV. 8. his Letter to *Julius*  
*Cesar*. *Ibid.* lies in Ambush for *Cassibellaun*,  
IV. 9. his Answer to *Cassibellauns* Messen-  
gers. *Ibid.* obliges *Cesar* to a Reconcilia-  
tion with *Cassibellaun*. IV. 10. goes to  
Rome with *Cesar*. IV. 11.  
*Antigonus* Brother of *Pandrasus* is taken Pri-  
soner by *Brutus*. I. 5.  
*Archflamens* in *Britain* made Archbishops.  
IV. 19. *Arthgallo*

---

The I N D E X.

---

*Arthgallo* is deposed by the *Britains*. III.

17. his good Government after his Restoration. *Ibid.*

*Arthmail* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

*Arthur* is conceived in Adultery by his Mother *Igern*a being imposed upon. VIII.

19. succeeds *Uther Pendragon* in the Kingdom and is Crowned by *Dubricius*.

IX. 1. his Munificence and other great Qualities. *Ibid.* defeats *Colgrin* and be-

sieges him in *Tork*. *Ibid.* is advised by his Council to raise the Siege. *Ibid.* sends for

Affistance to *Hoel* King of *Armorica*. IX.

2. forces the *Saxons* to raise the Siege of *Lincoln*. IX. 3. besieges them in the

Wood of *Caledon*, and makes them Tri-

butaries. *Ibid.* executes their Hostages for Breach of Treaty, and marches to *Badon*

against them. *Ibid.* his Speech to his Sol-

diers before the Battle of *Badon*. *Ibid.*

A Description of his Armour. IX. 4. kills

with his own Hand 470 Men, and over-

throws the *Saxons*. *Ibid.* marches into

*Albania* to relieve *Hoel*. IX. 5. after

thrice defeating the *Scots* and *Picts*, be-

sieges them in the Lake *Lumond*. IX. 6.

repulses *Guillamurius* King of Ireland.

*Ibid.* pardons the *Scots* and *Picts* at the

Request of their Clergy. *Ibid.* relates the

wonderful Nature of some Ponds. IX. 7.

restores *Tork* to its ancient Beauty. IX. 8.

disposes

---

The INDEX.

---

disposes of several great Preferments. IX. 9. marries *Guanhumara* a Lady of a Roman Family. *Ibid.* reduces *Ireland* and the Provincial Islands. IX. 10. invites to his Court all Persons famed for *Chivalry*. IX. 11. subdues *Norway* and *Dacia*. *Ibid.* his Expedition into *Gaul* and great Success there. *Ibid.* besieges *Floлло* in *Paris* and kills him in a single Combat. *Ibid.* reduces all *Gaul*, and divides it among his Princes. *Ibid.* summons his great Men from all Countries to a solemn Assembly at *Legions*. IX. 12. his Coronation and pompous Solemnity there described. IX. 13, 14. his Speech to his Princes upon the *Romans* demanding Tribute. IX. 16. his Answer to the *Roman* Ambassadors. IX. 20. commits to *Modred* and Queen *Guanhumara* the Government of *Britain*. X. 2. his Dream at *Hamo's Port*. *Ibid.* kills a *Spanish* Giant on *M. Michael*. X. 3. his Message to *L. Tiberius*. X. 4. marshals his Army for a general Battle with the *Romans*. X. 6. his Speech to his Soldiers before the Battle. X. 7. his great Exploits in this Battle and total Overthrow of the *Romans*. X. 11. gives Orders concerning the Burial of the Slain. X. 13. upon the News of *Modred's* Practices against him returns to *Britain*. XI. 1. his first Victory over *Modred*. *Ibid.* his second Victory and Pursuit of him to *Cornwal*.

---

The INDEX.

---

*Cornwal.* XI. 2. his third Victory. *Ibid.* he is mortally wounded and retires to the Isle of *Avallon.* *Ibid.* gives up the Crown to *Constantine.* *Ibid.*

*Ascanius* Son of *Aeneas* builds *Alba* upon the *Tyber.* I. 3.

*Aschillius* K. of *Dacia* slain in Battle XI. 2.

*Asclepiodotus* frees the *Britains* from the Roman Yoke. V. 4. is made K. of *Britain.* V. 5. is killed in Battle by *Coel.* V. 6.

*Assaracus* joins with *Brutus* against the *Grecians.* I. 3.

*Assaracus* Son of *Ebraucus* obtains the Kingdom of *Germany.* II. 8.

*Arviragus* by Policy gains a Victory of *Claudius Caesar.* IV. 13. kills *L. Hamo.* *Ibid.* by Advice of his Council makes his Submission to *Claudius.* IV. 14. his Fondness for his Wife *Genuiffa* Daughter of *Claudius.* IV. 15. revolts from the *Romans.* IV. 16. his Battle with *Vespasian,* and Reconciliation with him. *Ibid.* his Character and Death. *Ibid.*

*Augusel* is made by *Arthur* K. of *Albania.* IX. 9. his Speech to *Arthur.* IX. 18. is killed in Battle with *Modred.* XI. 1.

*Augustin* is sent to preach the Gospel to the *Angles.* XI. 12.

*Aurelius Ambrosius* and *Uther Pendragon* fearing the Cruelty of *Vortegirn* fly into *Armorica.* VI. 8. *Aurelius* returns to *Britain* and is made King. VIII. 2. goes against *Vortegirn.*

---

The INDEX.

---

*Vortegirn. Ibid.* his Resentment to *Eldol* of *Vortegirn's* wicked Practices *Ibid.* burns him shut up in a Tower. *Ibid.* his noble Character. VIII. 3. twice defeats *Hengist* and the *Saxons*. VIII. 5. pardons *Osta* and *Eosa* upon their surrendering themselves. VIII. 8. his Care in repairing the Ruins made in *Britain*, and in restoring Things to their ancient State. VIII. 9. consults with *Merlin* about erecting a Monument for the massacred *Britains*. VIII. 10, 11. with great Solemnity sets up the Stones of the Giants Dance for their Monument. VIII. 12. is poisoned by the Treachery of *Eopa* a *Saxon*. VIII. 14. is buried by the *British* Clergy within the Giants Dance. VIII. 16.

B.

**B**ALDULPH in his March to relieve *Colgrin* is routed by *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal*. IX. 1. by putting on a Disguise gets Access to *Colgrin* besieged in *York*. *Ibid.* is killed at the Battle of *Badon*. IX. 4.

*Bangor*, its famous Church and Monastery. XI. 12.

*Bassianus* having killed his Brother *Geta* succeeds in the Kingdom. V. 2. is slain in Battle by the Treachery of the *Picts*. V. 3. *Bedver* is by *Arthur* made Governor of *Neustria*. IX. 11. performs the Office of But-  
ler

---

The I N D E X.

---

ler at *Arthurs* Solemnity at *Legions*. IX. 13.  
is sent in Quest of a *Spanish* Giant. X. 3.  
is killed in the Battle by *Boccus* King of  
the *Medes*. X. 9.

*Belinus* gains the Crown by Right of Inhe-  
ritance. III. 1. seizes upon *Northumber-*  
*land*. III. 2. routs his Brother *Brennius*  
in Battle. III. 3. makes *Dacia* tributary to  
him. III. 4. confirms the *Molmutine*  
Laws. III. 5. makes several High-Ways.  
*Ibid.* his Reconciliation with *Brennius*.  
III. 7. assists *Brennius* in the Conquest of  
*Gaul*. III. 8. makes the *Romans* Tributaries.  
III. 9. surprizes the *Romans* in their  
March with a great Slaughter. *Ibid.*  
assists *Brennius* in the taking of *Rome*.  
*Ibid.* his Return to *Britain*. III. 10. his  
publick Buildings. *Ibid.* his Death and  
Burial. *Ibid.*

*Belinus* General of *Cassibellauns* Army. IV.  
3.

*Bladud* King of *Britain* builds *Kaerbadus*,  
and makes the Baths there. II. 10.  
being a famous Magician he attempts to  
fly, but falls down dead. *Ibid.*

*Blederic* Commander of the *Britains* killed  
in Battle by *Edelfrid*. XI. 13.

*Bleduno* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*.  
III. 19.

*Blegabred* King of *Britain* a famous Musici-  
an. III. 19.

---

The INDEX.

---

*Boccus* King of the *Medes* having slain *Bed-ver* is killed by *Hirelgas*. X. 9.

*Borellus* Consul of the *Cenomanni* killed by *Evander* King of *Syria*. X. 5.

*Boso's* Gallant Behaviour against the *Romans*. X. 4. takes *Petreius Cotta*, a Roman Commander, Prisoner. *Ibid.*

*Brennius* quarrels with his Brother *Belinus*. III. 1. marries the King of *Norway's* Daughter. *Ibid.* invades *Britain* III. 3. is defeated by *Belinus* and flies into *Gaul*. *Ibid.* is made King of the *Allobroges*. III. 6. his Return to *Britain* and Reconciliation with *Belinus*. III. 7. assists *Belinus* in the Conquest of *Gaul*. III. 8. and in the taking of *Rome*. III. 9. his Tyranny in *Italy*. III. 10.

*Brian's* Speech to *Cadwalllo* upon his Treaty with *Edwin*. XII. 2. his strange Entertainment of him in the Island of *Garnareia*. XII. 4. in a Disguise kills *Pellitus Edwin's* Southsayer. XII. 7.

*Britael* a King of *Demetia* and Attendant on *Cassibellaun*. IV. 3.

*Britain* described I. 2. its Inhabitants. *Ibid.* when divided under the Power of five Kings. II. 16. its Grandeur in *K. Arthurs* Time. IX. 13. during a Famine and Pestilence lays desolate for eleven Years. XII. 16.

*Britains* destroy the Giants that first Inhabited this Island. I. 16. their Valour praised by

---

The I N D E X.

---

- by *Lucan*. IV. 9. revolt from the *Romans* upon the Death of *Lucius*. V. 1. being distressed by the *Picts* are relieved by a *Roman* Legion. VI. 1. their Distress caused by the Folly of *Maximian*. VI. 2. they are most grievously infested by *Guanius* and *Melga*. VI. 3. their Letter to *Agitius* a *Roman* Consul *Ibid.* being relieved by *Constantine* they make him King. VI. 5. are betray'd by the *Saxons*, and great Numbers of them massacred. VI. 15. make *Aurelius Ambrosius* King. VIII. 2. keep up the Custom of *Troy* at their publick Entertainments. IX. 13. their gallant Behaviour against the *Romans*. X. 4, 5. are upbraided for their Degeneracy by the Historian. XI. 9. retire in great Distress into *Cornwal*, *Wales* and *Armorica*. XI. 10. they lose the Kingdom for a long Time. XI. 11. being punished with Famine and Pestilence they fly into *Armorica*. XII. 15. the End of their Government in the Island. XII. 16. the Time of their Restauration foretold by an Angel. XII. 17. the Reason of their Name being changed into that of *Welshmen*. XII. 19.
- Brocinail* Commander of the *Britains* routed by *Edelfrid*. XI. 13.
- Brutus* by his Birth causes his Mothers Death. I. 3. undesignedly kills his Father in hunting. *Ibid.* his Banishment into *Greece*,  
D d 2 and

---

The INDEX.

---

and Acquaintance with the banished  
*Trojans* there. *Ibid.* is made General of  
the *Trojans*. I. 4. his Letter to *Pandrusus*  
King of *Greece*. *Ibid.* defeats *Pandrusus*  
by surprize. I. 5. with Menaces obliges  
*Anacletus* to betray the *Grecian* Camp. I.  
7. surprizes the Camp, and takes *Pan-*  
*drusus* Prisoner. I. 9. marries *Ignoge*  
Daughter of *Pandrusus* and departs from  
*Greece*. I. 11. consults the Oracle of *Diana*  
in the Island *Leogecia*. *Ibid.* his Voyage at  
Sea, and Arrival at *Aquitain*. I. 12. de-  
feats *Goffarius Pictus* King of *Aquitain*. I.  
13. destroys that Country with Fire and  
Sword. I. 14. is worsted in a second En-  
gagement by *Goffarius*. I. 15. gains a  
Victory of the *Gauls*. *Ibid.* arrives in *Bri-*  
*taid*. *Ibid.* calls this Island after his Name  
*Britain*. I. 16. builds *Trinovantum*. I. 17.  
his Death. II. 1.

*Brutus* surnamed *Greenshield* succeeds *Ebrau-*  
*cus* in the Kingdom. II. 9.

*Budec* King of *Armorica* gives a princely  
Education to *Aurelius Ambrosius* and *Uther*  
*Pendragon*. VI. 8.

C.

**C**ADOR Duke of *Cornwal* by a sudden  
Assault defeats *Baldulf*. IX. 1. pursues  
the *Saxons* after the Battle of *Badon*, and  
forces them to surrender. IX. 5. his Speech  
to

---

The INDEX.

---

- to *Arthur* upon the *Romans* demanding Tribute. IX. 15.
- Caduan* being made King, by a Treaty with *Edelfrid* possesses all *Britain* on this Side the *Humber*. XII. 1.
- Cadwallader* after a peaceable Enjoyment of the Crown falls into a Fit of Sicknefs. XII. 14. his Lamentation in his Voyage to *Armorica*. XII. 15. is forbid by an Angel to return to *Britain*. XII. 17. goes to *Rome* to be confirmed, and there dies. XII. 18.
- Cadwallo* is educated by *Salomon K.* of *Armorica*. XII. 1. upon *Brians* Representation breaks off a Treaty with *Edwin*. XII. 3. being routed by *Edwin* he flies into *Ireland*. XII. 4. meets with a grievous Storm at Sea in his Voyage to *Armorica*. *Ibid.* his strange Repast in the Island of *Garnareia*. *Ibid.* his Speech to *Salomon*. XII. 6. returns with Forces from *Salomon* and defeats *Peanda*. XII. 8. his great Success against *Edwin* and other Kings of the *Angles*. XII. 8, 9. celebrates the Feast of Pentecost with great Pomp. XII. 11. his Death and Interment in a Brazen Statue. XII. 13.
- Julius Caesar's* Speech concerning the *Britains*. IV. 1. his first Invasion of *Britain* and Defeat by *Cassibellaun*. IV. 3. his Encounter with *Nennius*. *Ibid.* his abject Behaviour to the *Gauls*. IV. 5. the Distress  
of

---

The INDEX.

---

of his Fleet, and his second Defeat by *Cassibellaun*. IV. 7. his Advantage over *Cassibellaun* by the Conspiracy of *Androgeus*. IV. 9. is compelled by the Menaces of *Androgeus* to a Reconciliation with *Cassibellaun*. III. 10. his return to Rome. *Ibid*. *Caius* is by *Arthur* made Governour of *Andegavia*. IX. 11. performs the Office of Sewer at *Arthurs* Solemnity at *Legions*. IX. 13. is mortally wounded in Battle with the *Romans*. X. 9.

*Caliburn*, the Name of *Arthurs* Sword. IX. 4.

*Cap*, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

*Capoir*, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

*Caradoc* D. of *Cornwal*, his Advice to *Octavius* about a Successor to the Crown. V. 9. recommends *Maximian* to *Octavius*. V. 7.

*Carausius* by wicked Practices gains the Kingdom of *Britain*. V. 3. is killed by *Allectus*. V. 4.

*Careticus* K. of *Britain* is driven into *Wales* by *Gormund* K. of the *Africans*. XI. 8.

*Cassibellaun* made K. of *Britain* on Account of the Minority of his Nephews. III. 20. his Letter to *Julius Caesar*. IV. 2. gains a Victory of *Caesar*. IV. 3. by a Stratagem drowns *Caesar's* Ships. IV. 6. defeats and repulses *Caesar* a second Time. IV. 7. makes a great Sacrifice to his Gods for his Success. IV. 8. quarrels with *Androgeus*

---

The I N D E X.

---

- Androgeus* D. of *Trinovantum*. *Ibid.* is by Reason of the Revolt of *Androgeus* defeated by *Caesar*. IV. 9. his Message to *Androgeus* in his Distress. *Ibid.* his Reconciliation with *Caesar*. *Ibid.*
- Catellus*, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.
- Catigern* and *Horfus* in an Encounter kill each other. VI. 13.
- Cheldric* brings over a vast Fleet from *Germany*. IX. 1. is killed by *Cador*. D. of *Cornwal*. IX. 5.
- Cheldric* a *Saxon* Leader assists *Modred* against *Arthur*. XI. 1. is killed in Battle with him. XI. 2.
- Cherin* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.
- Cheulphus* General of the *Morines* repulsed by *Brennius*. III. 1.
- Claudius Caesar* invades *Britain*. IV. 12. is defeated by *Arviragus*. IV. 13. besieges *Winchester*. IV. 14. is reconciled to *Arviragus*. *Ibid.* conquers the *Orkney* and other Islands. *Ibid.* builds *Gloucester*. IV. 15. returns to *Rome*. *Ibid.*
- Cledaucus* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.
- Cletonus*, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.
- Cligueillus* K. of *Britain*, his good Character. III. 19.
- Cloten* K. of *Cornwal* Father of *Dunwallo Molmutius*. II. 17. Coel

---

The INDEX.

---

*Coel* makes Insurrection against *Asclepiodotus*. 5. 6. his Submission to *Constantius* and Death. *Ibid.*

*Coillus* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

*Coillus* K. of *Britain* his Amity with the *Romans*, and good Character. IV. 18.

*Colgrin* a *Saxon* Commander defeated by *Arthur* and besieged in *York*. IX. 1. killed at the Battle of *Badon*. IX. 4.

A Comet of wonderful Magnitude and Brightness appears at the Death of *Aurelius Ambrosius*. VIII. 14.

*Conan* kills *Constantine*, and succeeds to the Crown X. 5.

*Conan Meriadoc* being ready to fight *Maximian*, grants him Peace at the Instance of *Caradoc*. V. 10. his War with *Maximian*, and Reconciliation with him. V. 11. is made K. of *Armorica* by *Maximian*. V. 12. vanquishes the *Gauls* and *Aquitans*. V. 15.

*Constans* a Monk is by *Vortegirn* made K. of *Britain*. VI. 6. his Incapacity for Government makes him the Instrument of *Vortegirn's* Ambition. VI. 7. is by *Vortegirn's* Contrivance assassinated by some *Pictish* Soldiers. VI. 8.

*Constantine the Great*, K. of *Britain*, his noble Character. V. 6. is desired by the *Romans* to assist them against the Tyranny of *Maxentius*. V. 7. gains the *Roman* Empire. V. 8. sends *Trahern* to reduce *Britain*. *Ibid.*

*Constantine*

---

The INDEX.

---

*Constantine* the *Armorican* having routed the Enemies of the *Britains* is made King.

VI. 5. is assassinated by a *Pict*. *Ibid*.

*Constantine Arthurs* Successor is disturbed by *Modreds* Sons. XI. 3. he puts them to Death in their Sanctuaries. XI. 4. is killed by *Conan*. *Ibid*.

*Constantius* made King of *Britain* by the Marriage of *Helena*. V. 6.

*Convenna's* Speech to her Son *Brennius*. III. 7.

*Cordeilla* loses her Father *Leirs* Affection for her Sincerity. II. 11. is married to *Aganippus* K. of the *Franks*. *Ibid*. her great Kindness to her Father in his Distress. II. 12, 13. succeeds him in the Kingdom. II. 14. for Grief at the Loss of her Kingdom kills her self. II. 15.

*Corineus* his Character. I. 12. kills *Imbertus* the Ambassador of *Goffarius Pictus*. *Ibid*. his great Bravery against the *Aquitans*. *Ibid*. kills *Subardus* and many others. I. 13. his Stratagem against the *Gauls*. I. 15. chuses *Cornwal* for his Share of the Island. I. 16. his Encounter with *Goemagog* a monstrous Giant. *Ibid*. his Resentment against *Locrin* for Breach of Covenant. II. 3.

*Cornish* People so called from *Corineus* their Leader. I. 12.

*Cridious*, K. of *Albania* and Attendant on *Cassibellaun*. IV. 3.

---

The INDEX.

---

*Corcea mors*, the Name of *J. Cafars* Sword.

IV. 4.

*Cunedagius* kills his Brother *Margan*, and gains the Monarchy of the whole Island.

II. 15.

D.

**D**ABUTIUS reproaches *Merlin* with her Birth. VI. 17.

*Dacia* made Tributary to *Belinus*. III. 4.

*Danius* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*.

III. 14.

*David Arthurs* Unkle, made Archbishop of *Legions*. IX. 15. his Death. XI. 3.

*Diana's* Answer to *Brutus*. I. 11.

*Dianotus* K. of *Cornwal* sends *Ursula* and her Virgins for Wives to the *Armorican Britains*. V. 16.

*Dioclesian's* Persecution of the *Christians*. V. 5.

*Dinoot* Abbot of *Bangor*, his Answer to *Augustin* the Apostle of the *English*. XI. 12. occasions great Troubles to the *Britains* by it. XI. 13.

*Doldavius* K. of *Godland* makes his Submission to *Arthur*. IX. 9.

*Dubritius* is made Archibishop of *Legions*. VIII. 12. at the Instance of the *British* Nobility Crowns *Arthur*. IX. 1. his Speech to the *British* Army before the Battle of *Baden*. IX. 4. the Efficacy of his Prayers towards

---

The INDEX.

---

towards curing the Sick. IX. 12. has the Ordering of *Arthurs* Solemnity at *Legions*. IX. 13. resigns his Archbishoprick and turns Hermit. IX. 15.

*Dunwallo Molmutius* kills *Imner* K. of *Loegria*.

II. 17. by a Stratagem defeats the Kings of *Kambria* and *Albania*. *Ibid.* makes himself a Golden Crown, and reduces the Island again to a Monarchy. *Ibid.* institutes the famous *Molmutine* Laws. *Ibid.*

*Duvianus* sent with *Faganus* to preach the Christian Faith to the *Britains*. IV. 19.

E.

**A**N Eagle is said to have spoken at the Building of the Walls of *Shaftsbury*. II. 9.

*Ebraucus* K. of *Britain* his Conquests in *Gaul*.

II. 7. builds several Towns. *Ibid.* his twenty Sons and thirty Daughters. II. 8.

*Edelfrid* K. of *Northumberland* having routed the *Britains* kills two hundred Monks at *Legecester*. XI. 13. is in another Battle defeated and wounded by the *Britains*. *Ibid.* by a Treaty with *Caduan* possesses all *Britain* beyond the *Humber*. XII. 1. divorces his Wife and marries another. *Ibid.*

*Edwin* is educated by *Salomon* K. of *Armorica*. XII. 1. desires leave of *Cadwallo* to wear a Crown. XII. 1. upon his Refusal joins Battle with him and routs him.

---

The INDEX.

---

- XII. 4. is killed in the Battle of *Hevefeld*. XII. 8.
- Eldad* Bishop of *Gloucester* buries the *British* Nobility massacred by the *Saxons*. VI. 15. advises the *Britains* to kill *Hengist* when taken Prisoner. VIII. 7. and to shew Mercy to *Octa* upon his surrendring himself. VIII. 8.
- Eldadus* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.
- Eldol* D. of *Gloucester*, his noble Exploit against the *Saxons* upon their massacring the *Britains*. VI. 16. his Speech to *Aurelius Ambrosius* before the Battle with *Hengist*. VIII. 5. after a sharp Encounter with *Hengist* takes him Prisoner. VIII. 6. and after Consultation beheads him. VIII. 7.
- Eldol* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.
- Eleutherius* (Pope) at the Request of *Lucius*, sends *Faganus* and *Duvanus* into *Britain* to preach the *Christian* Faith. IV. 19.
- Elidure* surnamed the *Pious* resigns the Crown to his deposed Brother *Arthgallo*. III. 17. is a second Time made K. of *Britain*, and then Imprisoned by his Brothers. III. 18. his Advancement to the Throne the third Time. *Ibid*.
- Eliud* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.
- Elsingius* K. of *Norway*, his Daughter married to *Brennius*. III. 1. *Enniau* 245

---

The INDEX.

---

*Enniaunus* K. of *Britain* deposed for Tyranny. III. 19.

*Estrildis* Concubine of *Locrin*, her great Beauty. II. 2. is with her Daughter *Sabre* drowned in the *Severn* by *Guendolana's* Command. II. 5.

*Evander* K. of *Syria* is killed in Battle by the *Britains*. X. 5.

*Evelinus* Nephew of *Androgens* kills *Hirelglas*. IV. 8.

*Eventus* succeeds *Augusel* in the Kingdom of *Albania*. XI. 1.

F.

**FAGANUS** is sent with *Durvanus* to convert *Britain* to the *Christian* Faith. IV. 19.

*Ferrex* is killed by his Brother *Porrex*. II. 16.

*Flamens* in *Britain* made Bishops. IV. 19.

*Flello* a Roman Tribune besieged in *Paris* by *Arthur*. IX. 11. he challenges *Arthur* to a single Combat, and is killed by him.

*Ibid.*

*Friday* so called from the *Saxon* Goddess *Frea*. VI. 10.

*Fulgenius* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

*Fulgenius* carries on a War against *Severus*. V. 2. goes to *Scythia* to raise Forces. *Ibid.* is mortally wounded in a Battle with *Severus*. *Ibid.*

GABIUS

---

The INDEX

---

G.

**GABIUS** a Roman Consul taken Prisoner by *Belinus* and *Brennius*. III. 9.

*Livius Gallus* and the Romans besieged in London by the *Britains*, and killed without Quarter to any. V. 4.

*Genuiffa* Daughter of *Claudius* married to *Arviragus*. IV. 15. procures a Reconciliation between *Arviragus* and *Vespasian*. IV. 16.

*Gerion* the Augur that attended *Brutus*. I. 11.

*St. German* and *Lupus* restore the *Christian* Faith that had been corrupted in *Britain*. VI. 13.

*Geruntius* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

*Geta* Son of *Severus* killed by his Brother *Bassianus*. V. 2.

A Giant from *Spain* having stolen *Helena* is killed by *Arthur*. X. 3.

*Gillomanus* K. of *Ireland* is defeated by *Uther Pendragon*. VIII. 12. enters into Confederacy with *Pascentius* and invades *Britain*. VIII. 14. but is a Second Time defeated by *Uther Pendragon*. VIII. 16.

*Gloucester* by whom built and on what Occasion. IV. 15.

*Godbold* K. of the *Orkneys* killed at the Battle of *Hevefeld*. XII. 8.

Goemagot

---

The I N D E X.

---

*Goemagot* a monstrous Giant killed in an Encounter with *Corineus*. I. 16.

*Goffarius Pictus* K. of *Aquitain* makes War against the *Trojans*. I. 12. is routed by them. I. 13. his Second and third Battle with them. I. 15.

*Gombert* K. of *Norway*. V. 18.

*Gonorillas* flattering Answer to her Father *Leir*. II. 11. her barbarous Ingratitude to him. II. 12.

*Gorbogudo* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. II. 16.

*Gorrbonian* a very just King of *Britain*. III. 16.

*Gorlois* D. of *Cornwal* advises the *Britains* to fall upon the *Saxon* Camp by surprize. VIII. 18. upon *Uthers* falling in Love with his Wife retires from Court, and prepares for War. VIII. 19. is killed by *Uthers* Men at the Siege of *Dimiliac*. VIII. 20.

*Gormund* K. of the *Africans* drives *Careticus* into *Wales*, and grievously nests *Britain*. XI. 8. gives *Loegria* to the *Saxons*. XI. 10.

*Gratian Municeps* forces *Guanius* and *Melga* to fly over to *Ireland*. V. 16. seizes the Crown of *Britain*, and is for his Tyranny murdered by the common People. VI. 1.

*Guanhumara* the Wife of *Arthur*. IX. 9. has in Conjunction with *Modred* the Government of *Britain* in *Arthurs* Absence. XI.

---

The INDEX.

---

20. her wicked Marriage with *Modred*.  
X. 13. upon *Modreds* Defeat retires into  
a Monastery. XI. 1.
- Guanius* K. of the *Huns* and *Melga*, their  
Cruelty to the Virgins that accompanied  
*Ursula*. V. 16. they invade and grievou-  
sly oppress *Britain*. *Ibid.* are forced by  
*Gratian Municeps* to fly over to *Ireland*.  
*Ibid.* they a second Time oppress *Britain*,  
and are driven out by a *Roman* Legion.  
VI. 1. they a third Time most grievously  
oppress *Britain*. VI. 3.
- Guendolana* Wife of *Loerin* being divorced,  
makes War against him and kills him. II.  
5. her Cruelty to *Estrildis*, *Ibid.*
- Guerthaeth* K. of *Venedotia*, an Attendant on  
*Cassibellaun*. IV. 3.
- Guethelin* Archbishop of *London*, his Speech  
to the *Britains*. VI. 2. desires Succours  
for the *Britains* of *Aldroen* K. of *Armorica*.  
VI. 4. his Expressions of Joy upon  
his Success. *Ibid.*
- Guicthlac* K. of *Dacia* in a Sea-Fight seizes  
the Wife of *Brennius*. III. 2. is taken  
Prisoner by *Belinus*. *Ibid.* his Release. III. 4.
- Guiderius* refusing to pay Tribute to the Ro-  
mans occasions the Invasion of *Claudius*  
*Cesar*. IV. 12. is killed in Battle by the  
Treachery of *L. Hamo*. IV. 13.
- Guillamurius* K. of *Ireland* attempting to  
relieve the *Scots* and *Picts* is repulsed by  
*Arthur*.

---

The INDEX.

---

- Arthur*. IX. 6. is again Defeated by him and taken Prisoner. IX. 10.  
*Guitard*, Commander of the *Pictavians*, is Defeated by *Hoel*. IX. 11. sustains the *Britains* against the *Romans*. X. 5.  
*Guithelin* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 13.  
*Gunfalus* K. of the *Orkneys* makes his Submission to *Arthur*. IX. 10.  
*Gurgintius*, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.  
*Gurgunt Brabtruc* K. of *Britain*, his Character. III. 11. he reduces *Dacia* that had refused to pay him Tribute. *Ibid.* his Kindness to *Partholoin* and other *Spaniards*. III. 12.  
*Gurgustius* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. II. 16.

H.

- L** *Hamo* Commander of *Claudius Caesar's* Army besieges *Portcestre*. IV. 12. treacherously Kills *Guiderius*. IV. 13. is killed by *Arviragus* at *Hamo's* Port. *Ibid.*  
*Hedelbert* K. of *Kent* stirs up the *Saxon* Kings against the *Britains*. XI. 13.  
*Helena* a most accomplished *British* Lady, Wife of *Constantius* and Mother of *Constantine* the Great. V. 6.  
*Helena* Neice of *Hoel* is stolen away by a *Spanish*

---

The INDEX.

---

nish Giant. X. 3. has a Mausoleum erected for her upon M. Michael. *Ibid.*

Heli K. of Britain Father of Lud, Cassibellann, and Nennius. III. 20.

Hengist and Horsa arrive with the Saxons in Britain. VI. 10. Hengist gives Vortegirn an Account of the Occasion of their coming, and of the Religion of their Countrymen. *Ibid.* by a crafty Petition gets Leave of Vortegirn to build a Castle. VI. 11. in Consideration of giving him his Daughter Rowen, obtains the Province of Kent. *Ibid.* by his Authority over him invites over more and more Saxons, to the Terrour of the Britains. VI. 13. brings from Germany a vast Army of them. VI. 15. by his Treachery causes a Massacre of the Britains. *Ibid.* encourages his Men to stand a Battle with Aurelius Ambrosius. VIII. 4. being overthrown by him he flies to Kaerconan, where he loses a second Battle, and is taken Prisoner by Eldol. VIII. 5, 6. is beheaded by Eldol. VIII. 7.

Hemlinus D. of Cornwall joins with Maglaunus to Depose Leir their Father in Law. II. 12.

Hider sustains the Britains when pursued by the Romans. X. 4.

Hirelgas Bedver's Nephew revenges his Death on Boccus K. of the Medes. X. 9.

Hi-

---

The INDEX.

---

*Hirelgas* Nephew of *Cassibellann* killed by *Evelinus*. IV. 8.

*Hoel* K. of *Armorica* brings Forces to assist *Arthur* against the *Saxons*. IX. 2. by *Arthur's* Command reduces *Aquitain* and *Gascony*. IX. 11. his Speech to *Arthur* upon the *Romans* demanding Tribute. IX. 17. Sustains the *Britains* when near vanquished by the *Romans*. X. 9.

*Holdin* K. of the *Ruteni* killed in Battle by the *Romans*. X. 9.

*Horsus* Brother of *Hengist* killed by *Catigern* in an Encounter. VI. 13.

*Hudibras* K. of *Britain* composes a civil Disfention, and builds several Towns. II. 9.

*Humber* K. of the *Huns* kills *Albanact*. II. 1. is defeated by *Locrin* and drowned in the River that bears his Name. II. 2.

I.

**J**AGO one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. II. 16.

*Idwallo* a just K. of *Britain*. III. 19.

*Jeffrey* of *Monmouth's* Epistle Dedicatory to *Robert* Earl of *Gloucester*. I. 1. his Preface to *Merlin's* Prophecy. VII. 1. his Letter to *Alexander* Bishop of *Lincoln*. VII. 2. his Conclusion of the History. XII. 20.

---

The I N D E X.

---

- Igerna* a Wife of *Gorlois*, her Beauty captivates *Uther Pendragon*. VIII. 19. being deceived by the false shape he put on, she admits him to her Embraces. *Ibid.* Marries him after the Death of *Gorlois*. VIII. 20.
- Ignoge* Daughter of *Pandrasus* is married to *Brutus*. II. 11. her sorrow at departing from Greece. *Ibid.*
- Inbertus* Ambassador of *Goffarius Picus* is killed by *Corineus*. I. 12.
- Inbaltus* Commander of the Gauls killed in Battle with *Maximian*. V. 12.
- Isembard* joins with *Gormund* and renounces the Christian Faith to gain the Kingdom of Gaul. XI. 8.
- Julius* a British Martyr in *Dioclesian's* Persecution. V. 5.
- Ivor* and *Inz* in vain attempt the Restauration of the Britains. XII. 19.

K.

- K**AERBADUS built by *Bladud*, its Baths and wonderful Fire. II. 9.
- Kamber* Son of *Brutus* gives Name to *Kambria*. II. 1.
- Kimarus*, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 14.
- Kinmarcus*, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. II. 16.

*Kinocus*

---

The INDEX.

---

*Kinocus* is made Archbishop of *Legions*.

XI. 3.

*Kymbelinus* K. of *Britain* maintains Friendship with the *Romans*: IV. 11. in his Time our Blessed Saviour was Born. *Ibid.*

L.

**L**ABIENUS a Roman Tribune killed by *Nennius*. IV. 3.

*Legions* made an Archiepiscopal See. IV. 19. the great Magnificence of that City. IX. 12. it is chosen by *Arthur* for the Place of his great Solemnity. *Ibid.*

*Leil* a good K. of *Britain* builds *Kaerleil*. II. 9.

*Leir* K. of *Britain* builds *Kaerleir*. II. 11. having no Male Issue he divides his Kingdom between his two Eldest Daughters. *Ibid.* his Resentment of his Daughter *Cordeilla's* plain Dealing. *Ibid.* is deposed by his two Sons in Law, and ungratefully used by his Eldest Daughters. II. 12. his grievous Distress and Complaint. *Ibid.* he is honourably received by *Cordeilla*. II. 13. regains his Kingdom. II. 14.

*Marius Lepidus*, a Roman Senator killed in Battle with *Arthur*. X. 10.

*Linligwan*, the Wonders of that Pond. IX. 6.

*Lacrina*

---

The INDEX.

---

*Loegrin* Eldest Son of *Brutus* gives Name to *Loegria*. II. 1. defeats *Humber K.* of the *Huns*. II. 2. falls in Love with *Estrildis* his Beautiful Captive. *Ibid.* Marries *Guendolena*, but carries on a private Amour with *Estrildis*. II. 4. is killed in Battle with *Guendolena*. I. 5.

*London* so called from *Lud* by whom it was Beautified. III. 20. is made an Archiepiscopal See. IV. 19.

*Lot* commands the *British* Army against the *Saxons* with various Success. VIII. 21. is made Consul of *Londonesia* by *Arthur*. IX. 9. is advanced by him to the Kingdom of *Norway*. IX. 11.

*Lucius* the first K. of *Britain* that embraced the *Christian* Faith IV. 19. is a Benefactor to Churches. V. 1.

*Lucius Tiberius's* Letter to *Arthur*. IX. 15. Summons all the Eastern Kings to his Assistance against *Arthur*. X. 1. for Fear of *Arthur* enters *Lengria* with his Army. X. 6. his Speech to his Commanders before his Battle with *Arthur*. X. 8. draws out his Army in Order of Battle. *Ibid.* his Encounter with *Walgan*. X. 11. is slain in a great Battle with *Arthur*, by an unknown Hand. *Ibid.*

*Lud* Beautifier of *London*, and Builder of other Cities, is Buried at *Ludgate*. III. 20.

*Lumond*, the Wonders of that Lake. IX. 6.

*Lupus*

---

The INDEX.

---

*Lapus* Bishop of *Troyes* restores the Purity of Faith when corrupted in *Britain*. VI. 13.

M.

**MADDAN** is advanced to the Throne by his Mother *Guendolana*. II. 6.

Magicians foretel the Birth and Success of *Brutus*. I. 3. advise *Vortegirn* to build a Tower for his Security. VI. 17.

*Maglaunus* Duke of *Cornwal* assists in deposing *Leir* his Father in Law. II. 12.

*Malgo* a K. of *Britain* of great accomplishments, but guilty of *Sodomy*. XI. 7.

*Malim* is Treacherously Murdered by his Brother *Menpricius*. II. 6.

*Marcellus Mutius* killed by *Walgan*. X. 4.

*Margadud* K. of *Demetia*, his Advice to *Cadwallo*. XII. 12.

*Margan* and *Cunedagius* take *Cordeilla* Prisoner. II. 5. they divide the Kingdom between them. *Ibid.* *Margan* is routed and killed by *Cunedagius*. *Ibid.*

*Margan* K. of *Britain*, his good Reign. III. 19.

*Marius* K. of *Britain* defeats and kills *Rodric* K. of the *Picts*. IV. 17. his good Character. *Ibid.*

*Martia* Queen of *Britain*, Author of the *Martian* Law. III. 13.

*Mangantius*

---

The INDEX.

---

*Maugantius* a Philosopher, his Speech to *Vortegirn* concerning *Merlin's* Birth. VI. 18.

*Mauricius* is sent to *Maximian* to offer him the Kingdom. V. 9. his Advice to *Maximian* when in Fear of the *Britains*. V. 10. his Apology for *Mauricius* to *Conan Meriadoc*. *Ibid.*

*Maxentius's* Tyranny over the *Romans*. V. 7.

*Maximian* is invited to take the Crown of Britain. V. 9. his Policy to prevent a War with the *Britains*. V. 10. is made K. of Britain. V. 11. his War and Reconciliation with *Conan Meriadoc*. *Ibid.* conquers *Armorica* and gives it to *Conan*. V. 12. subdues *Gaul* and *Germany* and gains the Empire from *Gratian* and *Valentinian*. V. 14. is killed at *Rome* by *Gratian's* Friends. V. 16.

*Maximianns Herculus* a Persecutor of the *Christians* in Britain. V. 5.

*Mempricius* advises the *Trojans* to depart from *Greece*. I. 10.

*Menpricius* Murders his Brother *Malim* and obtains the Government. II. 6. his Tyrannical Reign and untimely End. *Ibid.*

*Merianus* one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.

*Merlin's* wonderful Birth. VI. 17, 18. his Conference with *Vortegirn* and his Magicians.

---

The INDEX.

---

- gicians. VI. 18. he discovers the Reason why *Vortegirn's* Tower would not stand. *Ibid.* his Prophecy. VII. 3, 4. he foretells *Vortegirn* his sad Fate. VIII. 1. his Discourse with *Aurelius Ambrosius* concerning the *Giants Dance* in Ireland. VIII. 10, 11. by his wonderful Skill in Mechanics, he removes and brings to Britain the *Giants Dance*. VIII. 12. prognosticates *Uther's* Success by the Appearance of a Comet. VIII. 15. transforms *Uther Pendragon* into the Shape of *Gorlois* to gain him Access to *Igern*. VIII. 19.
- Micipsa* K. of *Babylon* killed in Battle with *Arthur*. X. 9.
- Quintus Milvius* a Roman Senator killed in Battle with *Arthur*. X. 9.
- Modred* *Arthur's* Nephew is made Governor of Britain by him, during his Wars with the Romans. IX. 20. he usurps the Crown and marries *Guanhumara* in *Arthur's* Absence. X. 13. being defeated by *Arthur* he flies to *Winchester*. XI. 1. he is a second Time defeated by him and flies into *Cornwal*. XI. 2. loses a third Battle and is killed. *Ibid.*
- Molmutine* Laws first instituted by *Dunwallo Molmutius*. II. 17. are revived by *Belinus*. III. 5. are translated into English by K. *Alfred*. *Ibid.*

---

The INDEX

---

*Morvid* Consul of *Gloucester*, his great Service to *Arthur* towards the total Defeat of the *Romans*. X. 11.

*Morvidus* a most cruel Tyrant of *Britain* is devoured by a Monster. III. 15.

N.

**N**ENNIUS quarrels with *Lud* for changing the Name of *Trinovantum*.

I. 17. encounters with *J. Caesar* and wrests his Sword from him. IV. 3. kills *Labiennus* and many others. *Ibid.* his Death and pompous Funeral. IV. 4.

O.

**O**CTA Son of *Hengist*, after his Fathers Defeat retires to *York*. VIII. 6. being besieged there he surrenders himself to the Mercy of *Aurelius*. VIII. 8. raises fresh Disturbances and besieges *York*, where he gains a Victory over the *Britains*. VIII. 18. is afterwards defeated by a Stratagem of *Uther Pendragon*, and taken Prisoner. *Ibid.* He and *Eosa* escaping out of Prison, they renew the War with the *Britains*. VIII. 21. by their Contempt of the *Britains* they let them gain great Advantages over them. VIII. 23. are at last totally defeated and killed by *Uther Pendragon*. *Ibid.*

*O. Favius*

---

The INDEX.

---

*Octavius* rebels against the *Roman* Proconsuls, and gains the Kingdom. V. 8. his War with *Trabern*. *Ibid.* consults about his Successor in the Kingdom. V. 9. bestows his Kingdom and Daughter on *Maximian*. V. 11.

*Oenus*, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

*Olbrict* K. of *Norway* killed in Battle with *Modred*. XI. 2.

*Ofric* K. of *Northumberland* killed in Battle with *Cadwallo*. XII. 9.

*Oswald* K. of *Northumberland* routs *Peanda* at the second Battle of *Hevesfeld*. XII. 10. but is afterwards killed by him in a Battle with *Cadwallo*. *Ibid.*

*Oswin* Successor of *Oswald* makes his Submission to *Cadwallo*. XII. 11. kills *Peanda* in Battle. XII. 13.

P.

**P**ANDRASUS K. of *Greece* is by Surprise routed by *Brutus*. I. 5. besieges *Sparatinum*. I. 6. is taken Prisoner by *Brutus*. I. 5. his Speech to the *Trojans*. I. 11. Furnishes them with Necessaries for their Voyage, and is set at Liberty. *Ibid.*

*Partholoim* a *Spaniard* by Leave of *Gurgunt* *Brabtruc* settles in *Ireland* III. 12.

---

The INDEX.

---

*Pascentius* Son of *Vortegirn* brings in the Saxons and is defeated. VIII. 13. enters into Alliance with *Gillomanius* K. of Ireland, and again infests Britain. VIII. 14. encourages *Eopa* to Poison *Aurelius Ambrosius*. Ibid. is routed by *Uther Pendragon* and killed. VIII. 16.

*St. Patrick* Founder of an Abbey at *Menevia*. XI. 3.

*Peanda* K. of the *Mercians* besieges *Exeter*. XII. 7. being routed by *Cadwallo* he becomes his Auxiliary. XII. 8. is defeated by *Qswald* in the Battle of *Hevesfeld*, but kills him in another Battle. XII. 10. endeavours to incense *Cadwallo* against *Ofwin*. XII. 11. is Slain in Battle by *Ofwin*. XII. 13.

*Pelagian* Heresy destroy'd in Britain by the Preaching and Miracles of *German* and *Lupus*. VI. 13.

*Pellitus* a Southsayer gives *Edwin* Notice of *Cadwallo's* Attempts against him. XII. 4. is killed by *Brian* in the Habit of a Beggar. XII. 7.

*Peredure* and *Vigenius* depose *Elidure*, and divide the Kingdom between them. III. 18. by the Death of *Vigenius*, *Peredure* gains the whole Kingdom. Ibid.

*Petreius Cotta* forces the Britains to retreat when in Pursuit of the Romans. X. 4. is taken Prisoner by *Boso*. Ibid.

---

The INDEX.

---

*Picts* by Permission of *Marinus* inhabit *Albania*. IV. 17. their Treachery to *Bassianus*. V. 3. they endeavour to revenge the Injury of their Countrymen on *Vortegirn*. VI. 9. they are defeated by him. VI. 10.

*Pir* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

*Polytetes* K. of *Bithynia* killed in Battle by *Arthur's* own Hand. X. 11.

*Porrex* K. of *Britain* procures Aid of *Suard* and kills his Brother *Ferrex*. II. 16. is tore to Pieces by his Mother *Widen*. *Ibid.* IX.

*Porrex*, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

*Porfena* a *Roman* Consul killed in Battle with *Belinus* and *Brennius*. III. 9.

Princes, their Names that attended at *Arthur's* Solemnity at *Legions*. IX. 12.

*Priven*, the Name of *Arthur's* Shield. IX. 4.

*Pyramus* *Arthur's* Chaplain made Archbishop of *York*. IX. 8.

Q.

C. *Quintilianus* for reflecting on the *Britains* is killed by *Walgan*. X. 4.

R.

---

The INDEX.

---

R.

*R*ederchius, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.

*Redion*, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.

*Redonum*, taken by *Maximian*. V. 13.

*Regan's* flattering Answer to her Father *Leir*. II. 11. her Barbarous Ingratitude to him. II. 12.

*Riculf* K. of *Norway* defeated and slain by *Arthur*. IX. 11.

*Ritho* the Giant, a ridiculous Story of his Encounter with *Arthur*. X. 3.

*Rivallo* K. of *Britain*, a great Mortality happened in his Reign. II. 16.

*Robert* Earl of *Gloucester*, his Praise. I. 1.

*Rodric* K. of the *Picts* invades *Britain*, and is defeated and killed by *Marius*. IV. 17.

*Romans* pay Tribute to *Belinus* and *Brennius*. III. 9. are twice defeated by them.

*Ibid.* take their Farewel of the *Britains*.

VI. 2. after a total Overthrow by *Arthur*, surrender themselves for Slaves.

X. 12.

*Rome* taken by *Belinus* and *Brennius*. III. 9.

*Ron*, the Name of *Arthur's* Lance. IX. 4.

*Rowen* Daughter of *Hengist*, having captivated *Vortegirn* with her Beauty, is married to him. VI. 12. poisons *Vortimer* her

Son

---

The INDEX.

---

Son in Law. VI. 14. sends Intelligence to her Father of the Designs of the *Britains* VI. 15.

*Rudaucus* K. of *Kambria* killed in Battle by the Policy of *Dunwallo Molmutius*. II. 17.

*Runno* one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

S.

**S**ABRE Daughter of *Estrildis* being thrown into the *Severn* gives Name to that River. II. 5.

*Salomon* K. of *Armorica*, his Speech to *Cadwallo*. XII. 5.

*Samuilpenissel*, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

*Sanxo* made Archbishop of *York*. VIII. 12.

*Saxons*, their first Arrival in *Britain* and Reception by *Vortegirn*. VI. 10. they assist him in the Conquest of his Enemies. *Ibid.* more of them come over upon *Vortegirn's* Invitation. VI. 12, 13. after Loss of four Battles they are driven back by *Vortimer* into *Germany*. VI. 13. their Massacre of the *Britains*. VI. 15. they seize the Fortifications in *Britain*. VI. 16. retire beyond the *Humber* for Fear of *Aurelius Ambrosius*. VIII. 3. Treacherously Poison *Uther Pendragon* and others. VIII. 24. are reduced to  
be

---

The INDEX.

---

be Tributaries to *Arthur*. IX. 3. break Treaty with him, and cruelly infest the *Britains*. *Ibid.* are overthrown by *Arthur* at *Badon*. IX. 4. are defeated by *Wortiporius*. XI. 6. invite over *Gormund* K. of the *Africans* against the *Britains*. XI. 8. gain the Possession of *Loegria*. XI. 10. possess themselves of the Island when it was deserted by the *Britains*. XII. 16. their full Establishment in the Island. XII. 10.

*Scæva* Son of *Androgeus* sent Hostage to *J. Cæsar*. IV. 9.

*Seginus* D. of the *Allobroges*, his Kindness to *Brennius*. III. 6.

*Sertorius* K. of *Libya* killed by *Arthur's* own Hand. X. 11.

*Severus* is sent to reduce *Britain* under the *Roman* Power. V. 2. his War with *Fulgenius*. *Ibid.* builds a Wall between *Deira* and *Albania*. *Ibid.* is killed in Battle with *Fulgenius*. *Ibid.*

*Sisilius*, three of this Name Kings of *Britain*. II. 16. III. 14. III. 19.

*Sparatinum* a Town in *Greece* besieged by *Pandrasus*. I. 6.

*Staterius* K. of *Albania* killed in Battle by the Policy of *Dunwallo Molmutius*. II. 17.

*Suard* K. of the *Franks* assists *Porrex* against his Brother *Ferrex*. II. 16.

*Sylvius*.

---

The INDEX.

---

*Sylvius* Father of *Brutus* marries a Neice of *Lavinia*. I. 3. is accidentally Slain by *Brutus* in hunting. *Ibid.*

*Syrens* Surround the *Trojan* Ships. I. 12.

T.

**T***ENUANTIUS* made D. of *Cornwal* by *Cassibellaun*. III. 20. Succeeds *Cassibellaun* in the Kingdom. IV. 11.

*Thong-Castle* in *Lincolnshire*, whence so called. VI. 11.

*Tintagol* in *Cornwal*, the great Strength of that Place. VIII. 19.

*Totness* the Place of *Brutus's* Arrival. I. 15.

*Tours* in *France* built by *Brutus*. I. 14. whence so called. I. 15.

*Trabern* Uncle of *Helena* sent by *Constantine* to reduce *Octavius*. V. 8. is killed by a Conspiracy. *Ibid.*

*Tremounus* Archbishop of *Legions* recommends *Merlin* to *Aurelius Ambrosius*. VIII. 10.

*Triers* made the Imperial Seat of *Maximian*. V. 14.

*Trinovantum*, the ancient Name of *London*, built by *Brutus*. I. 17.

---

The INDEX.

---

*Turonus*, Nephew of *Brutus*, kills in one Day six hundred Men with his own Hand. I. 15.

V.

*V E N E D O T I A N S* make a general Slaughter of the *Romans* in *London*. V. 4.

*Vespasian* is sent to *Britain* against *Arviragus*. IV. 16. his Reconciliation with him. *Ibid*.

*Vigenius* and *Peredure* imprison their Brother *Elidure*, and divide the Kingdom between them. III. 17.

*Ulfen* of *Ricaradock's* Advice to *Uther Pendragon* upon his Love to *Igernæ*. VIII. 19.

*Vortegirn* promotes *Constans* the Monk to be K. of *Britain*. VI. 6. his Management of him when King. VI. 7. with a Treasonable Design invites some *Picts* into his Service. *Ibid*. his crafty Speech to incense them against *Constans*. *Ibid*. is suspected to be the Contriver of his Assassination. VI. 8. upon the Murder of *Constans* he usurps the Crown, and is distressed with Fears on every Side. VI. 9. his Discourse with *Hengist* and the *Saxons* at their first Landing. VI. 10. defeats the *Picts* by

---

The I N D E X.

---

by the Assistance of the Saxons. *Ibid.*  
after a Conference with *Hengist* gives  
him Leave to build a Castle. VI. 11.  
being entertained at a Banquet by *Hengist*  
he falls in Love with his Daughter *Rowen*. VI. 12. displeases his Sons  
and Nobility by Marrying her. *Ibid.*  
for adhering too much to the Saxons  
is deserted by the Britains. VI. 13.  
being restored again to his Kingdom  
he invites *Hengist* and the Saxons  
to return to Britain. VI. 15. is  
in a Treaty with *Hengist* betray'd and  
taken Prisoner. *Ibid.* retires into *Cambria*.  
VI. 16. by the Advice of Magicians  
builds a Tower for his Defence.  
VI. 17. discourses with *Merlin's* Mother  
concerning the Birth of her Son.  
VI. 18. enquires of *Merlin* the Time  
of his own Death. VIII. 1. is burnt  
in a Tower by *Aurelius Ambrosius*.  
VIII. 2.  
*Vortimer* Son of *Vortegirn* gains four  
Victories of the Saxons, and forces them  
back to Germany. VI. 13. is Poisoned  
by his Stepmother *Rowen*. VI. 14.  
his Magnanimity at his Death. *Ibid.*  
*Urian* is honoured by *Arthur* with the  
Sceptre of *Mureif*. IX. 9.  
*Urianus*, one of the ancient Kings of  
Britain. III. 19.

---

The INDEX.

---

*Ursula* and the Virgins with her, in their Voyage to *Armorica*, are all Drowned, Murdered, or made Slaves. V. 16.

*Uther Pendragon* routs *Gillomanius* and brings to *Britain* the Giants Dance. VIII. 12. gains a complete Victory over *Gillomanius* and *Pascentius*. VIII. 16. is advanced to the Kingdom. VIII. 17. the Reason of his being Surnamed *Pendragon*. *Ibid.* after being defeated by *Offa* and *Eosa*, he gains a Victory of them by surprizing their Camp. VIII. 18. his Severe Administration of Justice among the *Scots*. VIII. 19. he summons his Nobility to a Festival at *London*, where he falls in Love with *Igernia*. *Ibid.* his Resentment at *Gorlois* her Husband, and Invasion of his Provinces. *Ibid.* by *Merlin's* magical Operations he is transformed into the Shape of *Gorlois*, and enjoys *Igernia*. *Ibid.* resumes his former Shape and returns to his Army. VIII. 20. Marries *Igernia* by whom he has *Arthur*. *Ibid.* falls into a lingering Distemper. VIII. 21. reproves his Nobility for their Pride and Cowardice. VIII. 22. is carried in a Horse-Litter to fight the *Saxons*. VIII. 23. besieges them in *Verolam*. *Ibid.* entirely  
ly

---

The INDEX.

---

ly defeats them and kills *Osta* and *Eofa*. *Ibid.* dies upon drinking Spring-Water Poisoned by the *Saxons*. VIII.

24.

*Vulteius Catellus* a Roman Commander killed in Battle by the *Britains*. X. 5.

W.

**W**ALGAN Arthur's Nephew by killing *C. Quintilianus* occasions a Skirmish between the *Britains* and *Romans*. X. 4. kills *Marcellus Mutius*. *Ibid.* his noble Exploits against the *Romans*. X. 9, 10. his Encounter with *Lucius Tiberius*. X. 11. is slain in Battle with *Mordred*. XI. 1.

A Wall built between *Deira* and *Albania* for the Defence of the *Britains*. VI. 1.

*Walter* Archdeacon of *Oxford* desires *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth* to translate the *British History*. I. 1. brought over this History from *Armorica*. XII. 20.

*Wednesday*, so called from the *Saxon* God *Woden*. VI. 10.

*Westmarland* whence so called. IV. 17.

*Widen* tears to Pieces her Son *Porrex*. II. 16.

*Wulfred* K. of the *Mercians* by *Cadwallo's* Command makes Peace with *Oswin*. XII. 13.

*Wor-*

---

The INDEX.

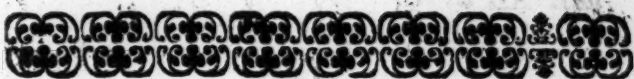
---

*Wortiporius* K. of *Britain* conquers the Sax-  
ons. XI. 6.

Y.

**Y**MNER K. of *Loegria* killed in Bat-  
tle by *Dunwallo Molmutius*. II. 17.  
*York* is made an Archiepiscopal See. IV.  
19.





## Errata.

### *In the Preface.*

**P**AGE VIII. line 26. read *decisively*. p. XXIII. l. 9. *Huntington*. p. XXX. l. 26. *Jeffrey's*. p. XXXI. l. 15. *Guillim Bach*. l. 19. *Repulse*. p. XLIV. l. 13. *their*. p. LXXIX. l. 24. *reasonably*.

### *In the History.*

**P**AGE 4. line 17. read *Vengeance*. p. 10. l. 19. *Fight*. p. 25. l. 9. *to the Philenean*. p. 121. l. 2. *Claudius*. p. 127. l. 22. *Receipt*. p. 175. l. 1. *for was r. were*. p. 181. l. 1. *Place*. p. 229. l. 5, 6, 7. *dele* ". p. 236. l. 29. *marshalling*. p. 272. l. 8. *self without the*. p. 301. l. 8. *Legecester*. p. 335. l. 14. *Legecester*. p. 377. l. 23. *Pellinus*. p. 401. l. ult. *Princes, I have*.



THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO  
1215 EAST 58TH STREET  
CHICAGO, ILL. 60637  
U.S.A.

1968

